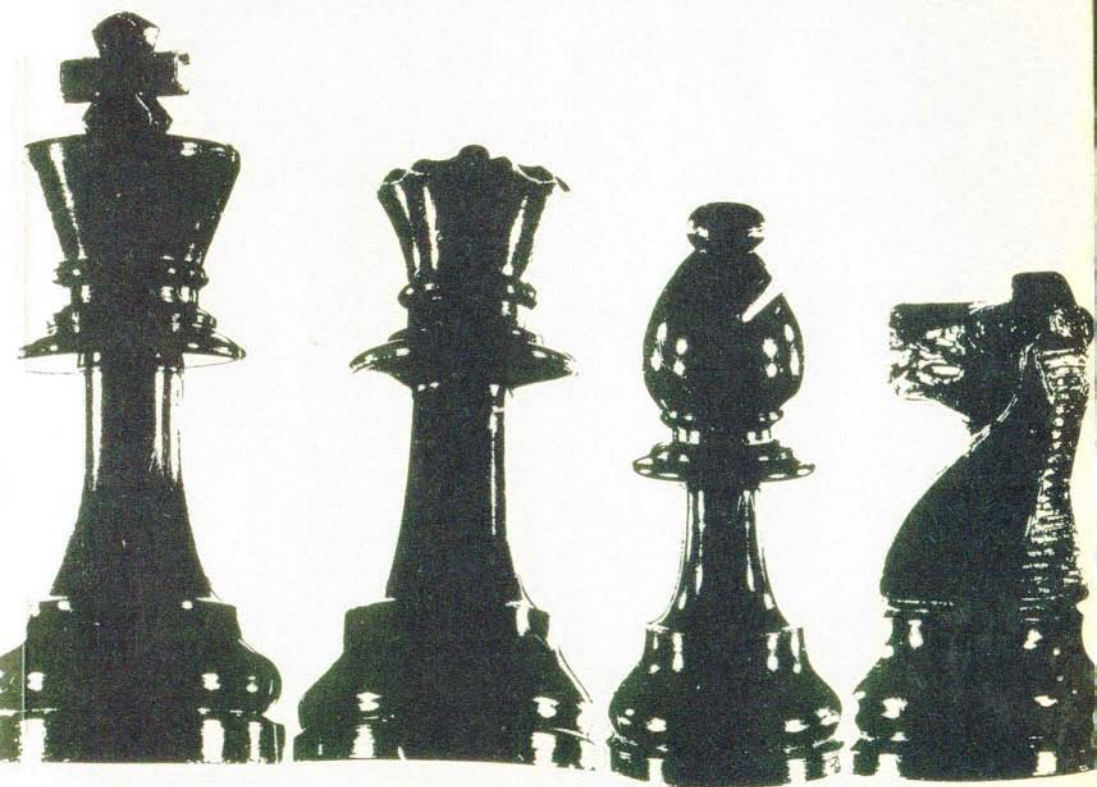


# **Play the French**

**John L. Watson**



**Pergamon Press**



Hello everybody!!

We are a group of chess fans who are producing new chess material. We have members from all around the world, belonging to different cultures and speaking different languages, all of us joined by our common love for chess! We hope you will enjoy our work!

If you are interested in joining us, or send any comments drop us an email at: [caissa\\_lovers@yahoo.com](mailto:caissa_lovers@yahoo.com).

Best regards!!

Hola a todos!

Somos un grupo de fanáticos del ajedrez, que estamos tratando de producir nuevo material como este, desarrollando diferentes proyectos e ideas. Tenemos miembros de diferentes partes del mundo, provenientes de diferentes culturas, hablando diferentes lenguas, unidos por nuestra pasión por el ajedrez!. Esperamos que disfruten de esta muestra de nuestro trabajo!.

Si alguien estuviese interesado en unirse al grupo nos pueden escribir a: [caissa\\_lovers@yahoo.com](mailto:caissa_lovers@yahoo.com).

Saludos!

Caissa Lovers

**PERGAMON CHESS OPENINGS**

*General Editor:* Craig Pritchett  
*Executive Editor:* Catherine Shephard

**BASMAN, M.**  
Play the St. George

**ESTRIN, Y. B. & GLASKOV, I. B.**  
Play the King's Gambit  
Volume 1 — King's Gambit Accepted  
Volume 2 — King's Gambit Declined

**GLIGORIC, S.**  
Play the Nimzo-Indian Defence

**MAROVIC, D.**  
Play the King's Indian Defence

**SHAMKOVICH, I. & SCHILLER, E.**  
Play the Tarrasch

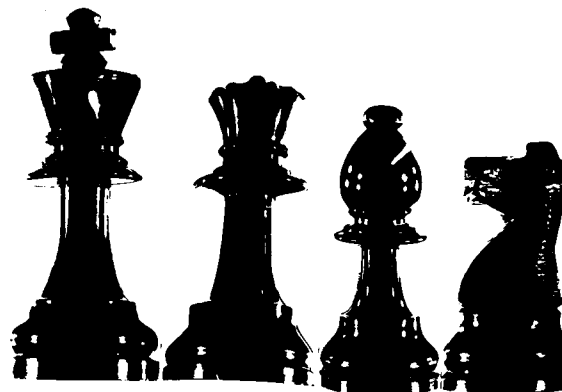
**TAULBUT, S.**  
Play the Bogo-Indian

**VARNUSZ, E.**  
Play the Caro-Kann

**WATSON, J. L.**  
Play the French

# Play the FRENCH

**JOHN L. WATSON**  
International Master



**PERGAMON PRESS**

OXFORD · NEW YORK · BEIJING · FRANKFURT  
SÃO PAULO · SYDNEY · TOKYO · TORONTO

U.K.	Pergamon Press, Headington Hill Hall, Oxford OX3 0BW, England
U.S.A.	Pergamon Press, Maxwell House, Fairview Park, Elmsford, New York 10523, U.S.A.
PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA	Pergamon Press, Qianmen Hotel, Beijing, People's Republic of China
FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY	Pergamon Press, Hammerweg 6, D-6242 Kronberg, Federal Republic of Germany
BRAZIL	Pergamon Editora, Rua Eça de Queiros, 346, CEP 04011, São Paulo, Brazil
AUSTRALIA	Pergamon Press Australia, P.O. Box 544, Potts Point, N.S.W. 2011, Australia
JAPAN	Pergamon Press, 8th Floor, Matsuoaka Central Building, 1-7-1 Nishishinjuku, Shinjuku-ku, Tokyo 160, Japan
CANADA	Pergamon Press Canada, Suite 104, 150 Consumers Road, Willowdale, Ontario M2J 1P9, Canada

Copyright © 1984 John L. Watson

*All Rights Reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means: electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without permission in writing from the publishers.*

First edition 1984

Reprinted with corrections 1986

#### Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data

Watson, John L.

Play the French.

(Pergamon chess openings)

Bibliography: p.

Includes index

1. Chess-Openings. I. Title. II. Series.

GV1450.2.W377 1985 794.1'22 84-10990

#### British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Watson, John L.

Play the French. — (Pergamon chess openings)

1. Chess — Openings

I. Title

794.1'22 GV1450.2

ISBN 0-08-029716-1 Hardcover

ISBN 0-08-026929-X Flexicover

## Contents

### List of Symbols

### Introduction

	vi
Introduction	vii
1. Advance Variation	1
2. Exchange Variation	27
3. King's Indian Attack	36
4. Tarrasch: 3 ... Nf6 with 5 Bd3	47
5. Tarrasch: 3 ... Nf6 with 5 f4	76
6. Tarrasch: 3 ... c5 with 4 ... Qxd5	91
7. Winawer: Various 4th Moves	104
8. Winawer: Various 5th Moves	130
9. Winawer: Main Line with 7 Qg4	148
10. Winawer: Positional Main Lines	165
11. Winawer: 4 e5 Qd7	185
12. Second Move Odds and Ends	199
Bibliography	209
Index of Variations	211

## List of Symbols

Ch	= championship	$\pm$ ( $\bar{\pm}$ )	= Some advantage to White (Black)
corres	= correspondence game	(!)	= Probably a good move
+	= check	(?)	= Probably a bad move.
!	= good move		
?	= bad move		

## Introduction

With the recent explosion in chess theory, a complete volume covering all variations of the French Defence would require some 1500 pages at the least. As similar situations exist for most major openings, chess authors are turning to highly specialized books on sub-variations, or to books on the general ideas of an opening (of the “How to Play” variety). The former books are admirable, but tend to drive the cost of knowing a whole opening beyond the average player’s reach. Also, there will inevitably be some variations for which no such specialty book exists. The latter type of book, dealing with general ideas, is often merely a rehash of some well-known games which can have little or nothing to do with gaining a genuine understanding of an opening. At best, such examples are too particular to provide the reader with something he himself can apply in a

game; certainly there is not much in the way of feedback, so that, for example, a player can compare what he did at the club or tournament with his source book.

The repertoire book offers a third possibility, ideally combining in-depth analysis with a recommendation for whatever sideline the reader might face. Unfortunately, repertoire books have also had their problems. In a few cases authors have presented a slew of highly tactical, sometimes unsound, lines, with the intention of impressing the customer rather than improving his chess. A different kind of problem stems from the fact that a repertoire book typically offers just one line versus each system. If that line is refuted or found wanting, the book has nothing to offer in its place.

I have tried to put together a flexible sort of repertoire, one in which the reader is given two

or more systems to play against each main line, with numerous alternatives in the notes. For me, the French Defence is the ideal opening to recommend in this regard. I have not only played hundreds of games with it over the course of 17 years, but have also experimented with a number of options at key junctures. I believe, furthermore, in the essential validity of the French, such that Black is generally *not* forced to walk a particular tightrope versus any given variation.

Apart from a general limitation to specific defensive systems, I have tried to treat this material with all possible depth. Sometimes the analysis may seem dense, but there are always options if the reader dislikes forcing lines. Also, I have included my own games rather extensively. This reflects not just my healthy ego, but the lack of examples for certain parts of the repertoire as well.

The French has a proven reputation for adaptability and soundness attested to by those who have championed it, including Botvinnik, Bronstein,

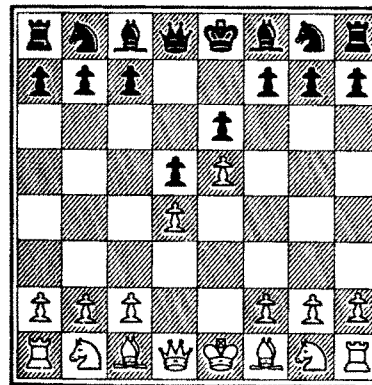
Petrosian, Ivkov and Korchnoi. If anything, its following has increased in recent years, with Andersson, Vaganian, Gulko, Hübner, Seirawan and Farago among the many using 1 ... e6. Special tribute, however, should be offered to the premier French Defence players of all time: Nimzowitsch and Uhlmann. It was Nimzowitsch who discovered how to play the defence in an original and profound manner. His games established the French as an aggressive, counterattacking defence and have contributed much to its enduring appeal. Uhlmann has played 1 ... e6 exclusively for 30 years, time and again providing key new moves and ideas to revive lines which had appeared to be refuted. His uniquely dominant role in French theory has no parallel in all of modern praxis.

Writing this book was an enjoyable challenge. I hope that it will help you to play and understand one of the great chess openings.

John Watson  
Fairfax, California, 1983

# 1 Advance Variation

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5



It is historically appropriate to begin our investigation with the Advance and Exchange Variations, as these were the most popular responses when the French first began to appear in the late 1800s. 3 e5, the Advance Variation, has long been the most popular alternative to 3 Nc3 and 3 Nd2. While it has never commanded the

spotlight among anti-French systems, the Advance Variation has consistently attracted adherents and continues to appear regularly in international play. Its theory, initiated by the researches of Nimzowitsch, has not achieved much depth in spite of reams of analysis. Perhaps this factor accounts for much of the appeal of 3 e5.

The recommended defences begin with:

3 ... e5

There is nothing wrong with 3 ... b6 followed by an early ... Ba6 to solve the problem of the light-squared bishop. On the other hand, the systems with 3 ... c5 create more dynamic positions full of attacking chances. Since the immediate push of the c-pawn is both sound and enterprising, I see no reason to settle for the rather prospectless 3 ... b6.

Now White has four main choices: 1.1 4 dxc5; 1.2 4 Qg4; 1.3 4 Nf3; 1.4 4 c3.

Others are weaker:

(a) 4 f4?! Nc6 (4 ... cxd4 5 Nf3 Nc6 6 Nbd2 — 6 Nxd4 Qb6 — 6 ... Qb6 7 Nb3 Bc5 is another good method of play) 5 c3 Qb6 6 Nf3 Nh6 and White's position is already poor.

(b) 4 Nd2?! Nc6 5 Ngf3 Qb6, and already 6 dxc5 is necessary: 6 ... Bxc5 7 Qe2 Qc7 (or 7 ... f6) 8 Nb3 Bb6 9 Bd2 Bd7 10 g3 Nge7 11 Bg2 a5! B Balogh-Rittner, *corres* 1958.

(c) 4 Bf4 neglects d4. Harding gives 4 ... cxd4 5 Nd2 Qb6 6 Nb3 Bb4+, and 4 ... Qb6! is obviously good too.

## 1.1

### 4 dxc5

White's idea is to create some open lines and a strongpoint at e5, rather than be tied down to defending a pawn on d4. But after the non-developing 3 e5, bringing out a black piece to an active post with tempo is a considerable price to pay.

### 4 ... Nc6

4 ... Bxc5 5 Qg4 is complex, so Black attacks the e-pawn first.

## 5 Nf3

An instructive game was Velimirovic-Holmov, USSR-Yugoslavia 1975: 5 Bf4!? Bxc5 6 Bd3?! (Overcommittal, although it succeeds. Taulbut gives 6 Nf3 Qb6 — 6 ... Nge7 7 Bd3 is the game — 7 Bg3 Qxb2 8 Nbd2 Qb6 9 Bd3 Nge7 10 0-0 “with some compensation”, although Black can curl up with ... Qd8, ... Bb6-c7, ... Ng6 and ... f6) 6 ... Nge7!? (Alright, but Harding gives 6 ... Qb6! and 7 Nc3 Qxb2 8 Nge2 — 8 Nb5 Nxe5! 9 Nc7+ Kd8 10 Nxa8 Nxd3+ wins — 8 ... Qb6 9 Rb1 Qd8 10 0-0 “and now maybe 10 ... g5 11 Bg3 h5”; but 10 ... Nge7 is also ... Or, after 6 ... Qb6, 7 Nf3 Bxf2+ 8 Ke2 Nge7 9 Rf1 Bc5) 7 Nf3 Ng6 (7 ... Qb6 8 0-0 Qxb2 9 Nbd2 with plenty of compensation) 8 Bg3 0-0 9 0-0 (9 h4 — Taulbut; but 9 ... f5! 10 h5 — what else? — 10 ... f4 11 hxg6 fxc3 12 gxh7+ Kh8 is ... 9 ... f5 10 exf6 Qxf6 11 c4?! (Sunder is 11 Nc3, when Todorcevic-van Setters, Nice 1974, went 11 ... Kh8!? 12 Ne2 Bb6 13 Bxg6! Qxg6 14 Nf4 with a little edge. Among other moves, simply 11 ... Nf4 is at least equal) 11 ... Qxb2 12 Bxg6 hxg6 13 cxd5! (The point. 13 Nbd2 Qf6 14 Nb3 Bb6 15

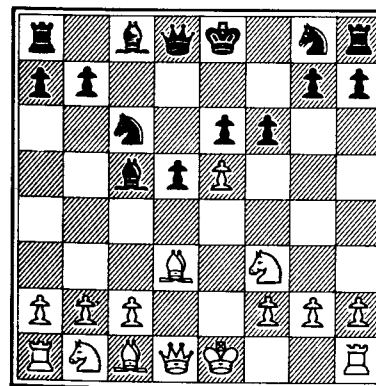
cxd5 exd5) 13 ... Qxa1 14 dxc6 Qxa2! 15 Ne5 Qd5 16 Qc2 Bd4! 17 Nxc6 Re8 18 Rd1 Qf5!? (Possibly 18 ... e5(!), e.g. 19 Bxe5? Bg4! 20 Rxd4 Qxd4! or 19 Nc3 Qc4 or 19 Nd2? Bg4 or 19 Nxe5! Be6 20 cxb7 Rad8 21 Nc6 Bf5! etc.) 19 Qb3 Qxg6!? (19 ... Bf6; 19 ... Bb6 *Chess Player*) 20 Rxd4 bxc6 21 h3 Qf5 (? 21 ... a5! intending ... Ra7 and/or ... a4 still looks good) 22 Nd2 c5 23 Rg4. White had achieved a strong attack and won!

### 5 ... Bxc5

### 6 Bd3

6 Bf4 Nge7! (*ECO*); then 7 Bd3 gives us the last note. Taulbut's 6 ... Qb6 (see 6 Nf3 Qb6 in that note) also looks good.

### 6 ... f6!



Active and logical. 6 ... f5 7 0-0 Nge7 8 a3 a5 is unclear, and 6 ... Nge7 7 Bf4 enters Velimirovic-Holmov again. Since that is objectively good for Black, White may try 6 ... Nge7 7 0-0 Ng6 8 Re1, but Black equalizes easily, e.g. 8 ... Qc7 (or 8 ... Bd7 9 c3 Bb6! 10 Na3 a6!? 11 Nc2 Bc7 = Nimzowitsch-Alekhine, *St. Petersburg* 1914; 10 ... Bc7!?) 9 Qe2 Bd7 (9 ... Nd4 of Bebcuk-Belinkov, USSR 1967, is also okay for Black, but not very interesting) 10 c3 0-0-0 11 b4!? (Black is ready for ... f6) 11 ... Bb6 12 a4 Qb8 and 13 b5 Na5 or 13 a5 Bc7 with good play.

## 7 Qe2

Not 7 Bb5? Qb6 or 7 exf6 Nxf6 8 0-0 0-0, e.g. 9 Re1 e5! or 9 c4 Qd6 10 Nc3 a6 11 Bg5 Ng4 Camilleri-Debarnot, *Malta* 1980.

The only reasonable alternative is 7 Bf4, when the books give 7 ... fxe5 8 Nxe5 Qf6! (based upon Klein-Darga, 1950). But obviously better is 8 Bxe5, when Black should avoid 8 ... Nxe5? 9 Nxe5 Nf6 (9 ... Qf6 10 Qe2 Bxf2+? 11 Kd1) 10 0-0; instead, 8 ... Nf6 9 0-0 0-0 is fine, since 10 ... Ng4 is a threat and 10 h3 Ne4! is awk-

ward, e.g. 11 Qe2 Rxf3! 12 gxf3 Qg5+ 13 Kh1 Nxf2+ etc.

7 ... fxe5  
8 Nxe5 Nf6

Also 8 ... Nxe5 9 Qxe5 Qf6! is good, e.g. 10 Qe2 (10 Bf4 Ne7 or 10 ... Bd4 — Harding; 10 Bb5+ Bd7 11 Bxd7+ Kxd7 12 Qe2 unclear — Bickford. Here 10 ... Kf7 is a reasonable alternative) 10 ... Ne7 11 Nd2 0-0 12 0-0 Nc6 13 c3 e5 14 Bc2 Be6 ♯ Zubarev–Grigoriev, Moscow 1923.

#### 9 Bf4

9 0-0?! Nxe5 10 Qxe5 0-0 11 c4 Qb6! 12 Qe2 (12 Nd2? Bxf2+!) 12 ... Bd7 13 Nd2 Rac8 ♯ Makropoulos–Hug, Nice 1974.

9 ... 0-0  
10 0-0 Ne4!?

Never commented upon, although Black accedes to equality thereby. Why not mix things up, e.g. 10 ... Nd4 11 Qd1 Qe8! 12 c3 Nf5 intending ... Nh5?

11 Nxc6 bxc6  
12 Be3 Bxe3

Becker–Maroczy, Karlovy Vary 1929. After 13 Qxe3 Nf6 14 Nd2, Becker gives 14 ... Qb6! = (15 Qe5 Ng4 16 Qh5 Nf6 =).

## 1.2

### 4 Qg4

Nimzowitsch's most radical idea in the Advance Variation. White abandons d4 utterly, in order to overprotect e5 by means of, for example, Nf3, Qg3 and Re1. Black's kingside may prove difficult to develop, and h4–h5 can be useful attacking motif.

4 Qg4 looks anti-positional, however, as it commits the queen very early in the game with potential loss of time (both ... f5 and ... h5 can be helpful moves for Black). Moreover, White's queenside can come under fire (c2 is vulnerable), and Black can immediately destroy the base of White's centre. 4 Qg4 is not so bad as it looks, but that is probably its chief virtue.

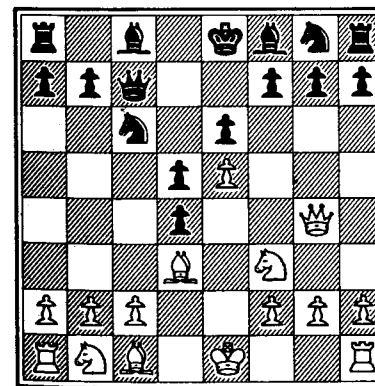
4 ... Nc6

Black's problem is to find something which puts pressure on d4 and e5. An interesting sideline is 4 ... f5 5 Qg3 cxd4 6 Nf3 Ne7!? 7 a3!? (7 Bd3 Nd7 8 0-0 Nec6 9 c3 — else ... Nc5 ♯ — 9 ... Nc5 10 Rd1 dxc3 11 Nxc3 is held to be unclear by theory, but after 11 ... Bd7 and, for example, ... Qb6 with

... 0-0-0, the burden of proof is on White, who is a pawn down and can be attacked on the kingside. 7 Bd3 Nbc6 8 0-0 Qc7 is fully playable as well) 7 ... Qc7 8 Bb5+ (8 Bd3 Nec6 9 0-0 Nd7 10 Re1 Nc5 ♯) 8 ... Nec6 (or 8 ... Bd7, e.g. 9 Bd3 Nbc6 10 0-0 h6 11 h4 Rg8 with good attacking chances) 9 0-0 Nd7 10 Re1 Nc5 11 Nbd2 Vasyukov–Savon, USSR Ch 1974, and now 11 ... Bd7 12 Bxc6 bxc6 13 Nxd4 0-0-0 with a complex struggle in which Black intends ... Rg8 and ... g5.

5 Nf3 cxd4  
6 Bd3 Qc7!

A clean way to play it. 6 ... Nge7!? 7 0-0 Ng6 8 Re1 Qc7 is unclear after 9 Qh5 (Keres).



7 0-0!?

If 7 Qg3, 7 ... f6! 8 exf6 (8 Bf4 g5! 9 Bd2 Nxe5 ♯ Araiza–Fine, Syracuse 1934; 8 Bxh7 Nxe5! 9 Bg6+ Kd8 ♯ Blohm–Peizer, 1967) 8 ... Qxg3 9 f7+ Kxf7 10 hxg3 e5 ♯ (Fine). 11 Bxh7 is answered by 11 ... Nge7! threatening ... g6.

7 Bf4 is logical, but Black seems to have two good replies. One is 7 ... Nb4, e.g. 8 Nxd4? (8 0-0 Nxd3 9 cxd3 Qc2!) 8 ... Nxd3+ 9 cxd3 Qb6! 10 Nb3 Qb4+! 11 Nld2 g5! and Black wins a piece (Belavents!) The other is 7 ... Nge7, as illustrated in Holford–Heidenfeld, South African Ch 1947: 8 0-0 Ng6 9 Re1 (9 Bg3 h5 10 Qg5 Be7 11 Qd2 Ngxe5 Harding) 9 ... Nxf4 10 Qxf4 f6! (♯) 11 Qg3 fxe5 12 Bxh7 Bd6 13 Na3 a6 14 Rad1 Kf8 15 Qg6 Qf7 and Black stands to win.

7 ... Nxe5!?

Not well tested, but this appears safe enough. Keres gives 7 ... f6 8 Bf4! (8 Bxh7!? Nxe5 9 Nxe5 fxe5 10 Bg6+ Kd8 11 h3 Nf6 12 Qd1 Bd6 13 c3 dxc3 14 Nxc3 Bd7 ♯ Smyslov–Lisitsin, Moscow 1942) 8 ... fxe5 9 Nxe5 Nxe5 10 Qh5+, but here 9 ... Nf6! looks quite satisfactory (10 Bg6+ Kd8, e.g. 11 Qg3 hxg6 12 Nxg6 e5), so perhaps 7 ... f6 is also good.

## 8 Nxe5

8 Bf4 Nxc4 9 Bxc7 Bd7 (Taulbut) favours Black.

8 ... Qxe5  
9 Bf4 Nf6!

Rather than 9 ... Qf6 10 Bg5 with a draw by repetition. After 9 ... Nf6!, White has 10 Bxe5 Nxc4 11 Bxd4 Bd6 ♖ or 10 Qxc7 Bxc7 11 Bxe5 Nh5 ♖, or 10 Qg3 Qh5 (Pachman), when Black has two pawns and can develop by ... Be7 and ... 0-0. Even after 10 Bb5+ Bd7 11 Bxd7+ Kxd7 12 Qg3, Black has 12 ... Qf5! (13 Qb3? Qxf4! 14 Qxb7+ Qc7 15 Qxa8 g6 ♖), and the threat of ... Nh5 is too strong.

## 1.3

## 4 Nf3

The best of White's alternatives to 4 c3. The idea, again Nimzowitsch's, is to guard e5 with pieces, so that the pawn cramps Black's game or, should Black exchange on it, e5 will become a powerful outpost.

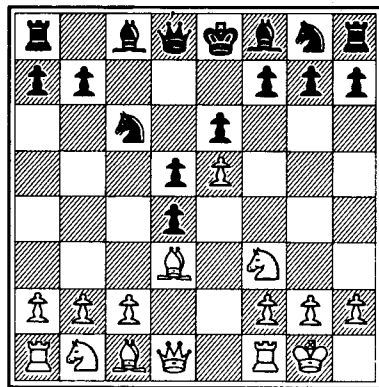
4 ... Nc6

Logical. Black is not afraid of 5 c3 (see 1.4) or 5 dxc5 (see 1.1).

## 5 Bd3!?

The only worthwhile deviation, since 5 Bb5 Qb6! either leads to 6 Bxc6+ bxc6 7 0-0 (else ... Ba6) 7 ... cxd4 ♖ with a central pawn mass, or to 6 Qe2 cxd4, which wins the pawn favourably, e.g., 7 0-0 Bd7 8 Bd3 f6! etc.

5 ... cxd4  
6 0-0



6 ... f6

A thematic move, decimating the centre. Otherwise, 6 ... Nge7 is worth looking into: 7 Bf4 Ng6 8 Bg3 Qb6! (or 8 ... Be7 =) 9 Nbd2!? (*ECO* gives 9 Qc1 Bd7!? 10 Nbd2 Rc8 11 a3 a5 12 Re1 Bc5 13 Rb1 0-0 14 h4 "±" of Welsh-Dunning, USA 1968, although 14 ... f6 15 exf6 gxf6 16 h5 Nge7 17 c4 was unclear. The immediate 9 ... f6! seems to improve, however,

e.g. 10 Bxc6+ hxc6 11 Nbd2 g5! ♖ Bickford) 9 ... Qxb2 (risky) 10 h4 (10 Re1?! Bb4! 11 h4 Bc3 12 Rb1 Qxa2 13 Ng5 Bxd2 14 Qxd2 Qa5 led to a win for Black and Wise-Lightfoot, British Ch 1976; 10 Nb3!?) 10 ... Bc5!? (10 ... Qb6 unclear — Bickford; 10 ... Be7!?) 11 h5 Nge7 12 Nb3 Bb6 13 Bf4 ± Bickford-McSorley, corres 1973. 6 ... Nge7 7 Nbd2!? Ng6 8 Re1 Qc7 9 Bxc6 fxc6! 10 Nb3 Be7 = Skrobeek-Uhlmann, Warsaw 1983.

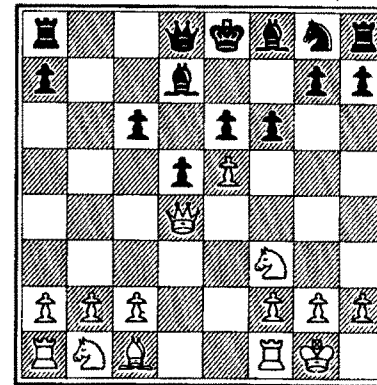
## 7 Bb5

Alekhine's move, preventing the immediate breakup of the centre. 7 Bf4? is punished by the immediate 7 ... g5! 8 Bg3 g4 9 Nh4 fxe5 ♖, and 7 Re1? loses the centre to 7 ... fxe5 8 Nxe5 Nxe5 9 Rxe5 Nf6 followed by ... Bd6 (10 Bb5+ Kf7 ♖).

7 Qe2 is solid, but little more after 7 ... fxe5 8 Nxe5 Nxe5! (Simpler is 8 ... Nf6!, and after 9 Bg5, not 9 ... 0-0 10 f4 ±, but 9 ... Nxe5! 10 Qxe5 Bd6, e.g. 11 Bxf6? Bxe5 12 Bxd8 Kxd8 ♖ or 11 Bb5+ Kf7 12 Qxd4 Qc7 or 12 ... Qa5, or 11 Qxd4 0-0 = intending ... Qc7) 9 Qxe5 Nf6 10 Bb5+!? (More critical is 10 Bf4!?, e.g. 10 ... Bc5 11 Nd2 0-0 12 Bg3 Bickford, although this is not very clear after 12 ... g6 13 Nb3 Bb6, e.g. 14 h3

Nh5 15 Nxd4 Nxc3 16 fxc3 Bd7! etc.) 10 ... Kf7 11 Qxd4 Bd6 ("=" *ECO*) 12 Bg5 (12 f4? Qa5! intending ... a6 and ... Bc5; 12 Bf4 Ne4 13 Bxd6 Qxd6 — or 13 ... Nxd6 intending ... Qf6 — 14 f3 Qc5 =) 12 ... Qc7 (or 12 ... Qa5!? intending ... e5) 13 Qh4 Qxc2 14 Nd2 h6 15 Rfd1!? Bd7 16 Bxf6 Bxb5 17 Bc3 Qg6 ♖ Pachman-Duckstein, Munich 1958.

7 ... Bd7  
8 Bxc6 bxc6  
9 Qxd4



9 ... c5

9 ... f5 10 c4 (There is nothing better, e.g. 10 Bg5 Qb6 or 10 Nbd2 c5 11 Qf4 Rb8 or 11 ... a5) 10 ... c5 11 Qf4 transposes, and here 11 Qd1 d4 12 Bf4 is no improvement for White.

The other try is 9 ... Qb6!?, but after 10 Qf4, 10 ... f5! unclear (Keres) is better than 10 ... Qb4 11 c4! ±.

10 Qf4 f5  
11 c4

Otherwise Black has it easy with two bishops and a nice centre.

11 ... d4  
12 Nbd2

12 b4!? is well answered by 12 ... cxb4, e.g. 13 Qxd4 (13 Nxd4 Ne7 ♖) 13 ... Ne7 14 Bf4 Nc6 15 Qe3 Be7 16 Nbd2 a5 with good play.

12 ... a5!

Rather than 12 ... Ne7 13 b4, as given by Bickford.

13 b3 Be7

Arnason–Watson, Gausdal 1978. Black has a solid position. The game continued 14 Ne1 g5!? (14 ... Nh6! intending ... Nf7 is ♖) 15 Qf3 h5 16 Nd3 Qc8 17 Qe2 Bc6 18 Nf3 f4 with complications.

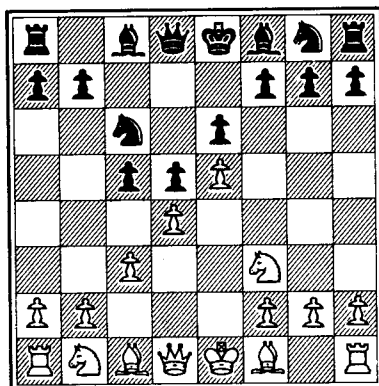
## 1.4

4 c3

If this did not seem logical before, it should after a study of

1.1 to 1.3. All those attacks with ... f6 would not mean much if White still had a pawn on d4, so why not defend it directly?

4 ... Nc6  
5 Nf3



Consistent. Others include 5 Qg4? cxd4 (or 5 ... Ne7 6 Nf3 cxd4 7 cxd4 Nf5 ♖) 6 cxd4 Qb6 7 Nf3 Nh6! 8 Qf4 (8 Bxh6? Qxb2) 8 ... Nf5 ♖ Weiss–Halberditz, corres 1933, and 5 f4?! Qb6 6 Nf3 Nh6 ♖, which is the note on 4 f4 at the beginning of the chapter.

But an independent order would be 5 a3!?, hoping for 5 ... Qb6 6 Nf3, discussed in 1.422 below. To cross White's intentions, Black can play 5 ... f6!? 6 Nf3 (6 f4? cxd4 7 cxd4 fxe5 8 fxe5 Qh4+) 6 ... Qc7 (or 6 ... Bd7), e.g. 7 Bf4 cxd4 8 cxd4 g5 9 Bg3 g4, or

perhaps 5 ... a5!?. On the other hand, 5 ... Qb6 6 a3 is nothing to fear, as we shall see.

From the diagram, I recommend one of two courses: 1.41 5 ... Bd7; 1.42 5 ... Qb6.

## 1.41

5 ... Bd7

It is hard to credit anyone in particular with this move (Harding calls it “Euwe’s recommendation”), but in the past few years 5 ... Bd7 has attracted the notice of a number of players including Balashov, Gulko, Larsen and Vaganian. The idea behind 5 ... Bd7 is simply that White must commit himself to a plan. If, for example, he plays 6 a3, Black may try to do without ... Qb6. Similarly, on 6 Be2, Black can hit the front of the pawn chain with 6 ... f6 (whereas 5 ... f6 6 Bb5! would have been strong). The entire strategy is relatively fresh, and yet apparently sound, which makes it a perfect practical tool for the second player.

We shall consider: 1.411 6 dxc5; 1.412 6 a3; 1.413 6 Be2.

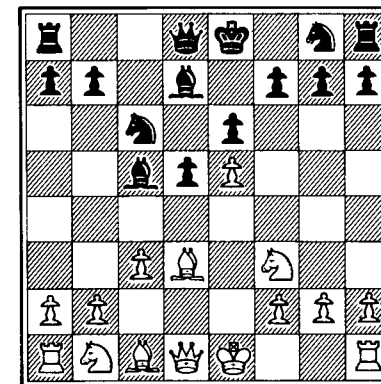
(a) 6 Bd3 has been met by 6 ... Rc8!?, e.g. 7 a3 cxd4 8 cxd4 Qb6 9 0–0 Nxd4 10 Nxd4

Qxd4 11 Nc3 unclear Klauner–Rivas, Marbella 1982, and 6 ... Qc7 might be reasonable, since 7 a3 c4! intends ... 0–0–0 with a good game. But I recommend 6 ... cxd4 7 cxd4 Qb6! with transposition into the Milner–Barry Gambit of 1.421.

(b) 6 Na3 f6 (6 ... cxd4 7 cxd4 Bxa3!? unclear) 7 Nc2 fxe5 (or 7 ... Qb6 intending ... 0–0–0) 8 dxe5 Qc7 9 Bf4 Nge7 10 h4 h6 11 Qe2 0–0–0 unclear, Balinas–Espig, Odessa 1976.

## 1.411

6 dxc5 Bxc5  
7 Bd3



Developing. 7 b4!? Bb6 8 Bd3 f6!? (8 ... Nge7 =, e.g. 9 b5 Na5 10 0–0 Rc8 11 a4 Ng6 12 Re1 Nc4 ♖ Cordon–Webb, British Ch 1978) 9 Bf4? fxe5 10

Nxe5 Qf6! (10 ... Nf6  $\bar{\text{f}}$ ) 11 Nxd7 Bxf2+ 12 Kxf2 Qxf4++ 13 Ke1 Kxd7 14 Rf1 Qe3+ 15 Be2 Nf6  $\bar{\text{f}}$  was Lee-Cooper, British Ch 1978. Better 9 b5! intending 9 ... Nxe5? 10 Nxe5 fxe5 11 Qh5+; 9 ... Nce7 10 Ba3 Rc8 intending ... Bc5 is unclear.

7 ... Nge7

Safest. Playable too is 7 ... f6 (7 ... f5!?) 8 b4 Be7 (8 ... Bb6!? 9 b5 is the last note) 9 b5 Nxe5 10 Nxe5 fxe5 11 Qh5+ Kf8 (11 ... g6!? Gufeld) 12 Qxe5 Bf6 (12 ... Qb8!?) 13 Qd6+ (13 Qg3 e5 14 0-0 Ne7 15 Bg5  $\pm$  Savon; but here 14 ... e4 15 Be2 Ne7 is hardly clear, e.g. 16 Qd6 Bf5! 17 Qb4 d4 or 16 f3 Qb6+ 17 Kh1 Nf5 etc.) 13 ... Ne7 14 0-0 e5 15 Ba3 Kf7 16 Nd2 Re8 = Sveshnikov-Savon, Lvov 1978.

8 0-0

Now 8 b4?! Bb6 9 b5 Na5 is not very logical: 10 0-0 Rc8 11 a4 Ng6 12 Ba3 Bc5 13 Bxc5 Rxc5  $\bar{\text{f}}$  intending ... Nc4 Sveshnikov-Balashov, Lvov 1978. White has weakened his queenside for naught. Nor is there any future in 8 Bf4 Ng6 9 Bg3 (Harding) due to 9 ... 0-0 10 0-0 f5! 11 exf6 Qxf6. Hard-

ing also suggests 8 Qe2, but Formanek-Phadeev, Stara Zagora 1977 went well for Black after 8 ... Ng6 9 b4 Be7!? (9 ... Bb6 =) 10 b5 Na5 11 Nbd2? (But 11 0-0 0-0 12 Re1 Rc8 or 11 g3 0-0 12 h4 f6! are not promising) 11 ... Nf4 12 Qf1 Qc7 13 Nb1 Nxd3 14 Qxd3 Nc4 15 0-0 Bxb5 etc.

8 ... Ng6  
9 Re1 Qc7  
10 Qe2

10 Bxg6? fxc6! 11 Bf4 0-0 12 Bg3 Ne7 13 Nbd2 Nf5 14 Nb3 Ba4!  $\bar{\text{f}}$  Sveshnikov-Balashov, USSR Ch 1976. The f-file and bishops proved very troublesome.

10 ... 0-0!

Why not? The old move is 10 ... f6!? 11 exf6 gxf6 12 c4! d4 (unclear — ECO) 12 a3 Pachman-Voicelescu, Bucharest 1953, and instead of 13 ... 0-0-0 14 b4 Bb6 15 c5  $\pm$ , Black could play simply 13 ... a5 with prospects for both sides (14 Nbd2? Nf4 15 Qf1 Rg8 16 g3 e5 intending ... Bh3).

11 b4

11 Ng5 Nxe5 is unsound, and here even 11 ... Qxe5!? 12

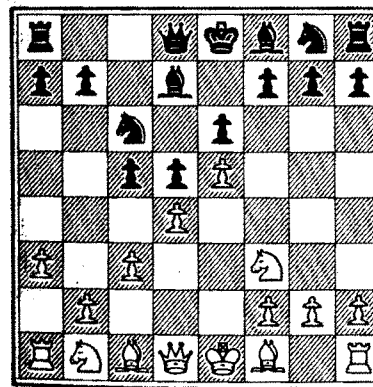
Bxg6 fxc6! 13 Qxe5 Nxe5 14 Rxe5 Rxf2 15 Be3 Re2 can be played. But 11 h4 f6! exploits Black's superior development, and 11 Nbd2 Nf4 or 11 g3 f6 is still worse.

11 ... Bb6

And White still has to complete his development in the face of ... f6, since 12 a4 a5 13 b5 Ne7 and now 14 Ba3 Bc5 or 14 h4 f6! achieves nothing.

1.412

6 a3



Here White intends 7 b4, both gaining space and constricting Black's queenside. If White achieves this, he also makes the defence of his d-pawn easier, and can turn his attention to the enemy king. Therefore the normal reply is:

6 ... c4

But others are interesting, too:

(a) 6 ... cxd4 7 cxd4 Na5!? 8 b4 Nc4 9 Bxc4 dxc4 10 d5 exd5 11 Qxd5 Bc6! is a recommendation by Euwe. However sound this is, it may be irrelevant due to 8 Nd2 Rc8 9 b3, e.g. 9 ... Qc7 (else 10 Bd3 and 11 0-0) 10 Bb2 Qc2 11 Qxc2 Rxc2 12 Rb1 with the better ending following Bd3, Ke2, Rfc1, etc.

(b) 6 ... a5!? should be compared with 5 ... Qb6 6 a3 a5, to which it may transpose. An interesting independent line would be 6 ... a5 7 Bd3 c4!? 8 Bc2 b5 intending an early ... b4, although this probably favours White somewhat.

(c) 6 ... Qc7!? was seen in Goryachov-Phadeev, USSR 1978: 7 Be2 (7 Bd3 is the next note) 7 ... f6 8 exf6 (8 Bf4!?) 8 ... Nxf6 9 0-0 Bd6!? (9 ... cxd4 intending ... Bd6) 10 dxc5 Bxc5 11 c4! 0-0 12 Nc3 dxc4 13 Bxc4 Ng4 14 h3 Nce5! 15 Nxe5 Nxf2! 16 Qxd7 Ne4+ 17 Kh2 Bg1+! 18 Kxg1 Rxf1+ 19 Bxf1 Qc5+ 20 Kh2 Qxe5+  $\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$ .

(d) 6 ... f6!? is the main option: 7 Bd3 Qc7 8 0-0 (8 exf6?! Nxf6 9 0-0 c4!? — 9 ... Bd6 or 9 ... cxd4 — 10 Bc2 Bd6 11 Re1 0-0-0 12 Qe2 Rdf8 13 Ne5 Be8 14 f4 g5! 15 fxc5 Bxe5 16 dxe5

Bh5 ♭ Branford–Martin, Westergate 1982; 8 Bf4 Qb6 9 b4 cxd4 10 cxd4 g5!? 11 Be3 or 10 ... 0–0–0 unclear) 8 ... 0–0–0 (8 ... fxe5!?) 9 Re1 c4 10 Bf1 Nge7 (10 ... fxe5 11 Nxe5 Nxe5 12 Bf4! Qb6 13 Bxe5 Qxb2 14 Nd2 Samarian–Voicescu, Romania 1955, and here 14 ... Qb6! was best — Harding — but White has pressure) 11 Nbd2 (11 exf6 gxf6 12 g3 e5) 11 ... fxe5 12 Ng5! (12 Nxe5 =) 12 ... exd4 13 Nf7 dxc3 14 bxc3 Ng6 15 Nxb8 Nxb8 ♭/unclear, Genin–Epishin, Leningrad 1980.

## 7 g3

Harding gives 7 b4 as the main line, but 7 ... cxb3 8 Qxb3 Qc7! (instead of 8 ... Na5 9 Qc2 Ne7 — 9 ... Rc8!? — 10 Bd3 h6?! 11 0–0 Nf5 12 h3 Be7 13 Nbd2 ± Polugayevsky–Simagin, USSR Ch 1956) gives Black good play on the queen-side, e.g. 9 Bd3 f5! 10 0–0 (10 exf6 Nxf6 11 Bg5 Bd6!) 10 ... Nge7 11 a4 Na5 12 Qc2 Gurevich–Watson, New York 1980 and now 12 ... Nc8! 13 Ba3 Nb6 ♭ or here 13 Na3 a6 ♭ was best.

7 Bf4, played by Sveshnikov versus Gulko in the 1981 USSR Ch, ran into 7 ... Qb6 8 Qc2 f6 9 Nbd2?! (9 exf6; 9 h4 Gulko) 9 ... g5! 10 Bg3 g4 11 Nh4 fxe5

12 dxe5 Nh6! 13 Be2 Bg7 14 h3? (14 Bxc4! Nxe5! 15 Be2 0–0 ♭ Gulko) 14 ... Bxe5 ♭.

## 7 ... Qc7

There are many moves here, including just 7 ... Qb6, which is 1.422. In Stengle–Watson, Philadelphia 1978, I tried 7 ... Na5 8 Nbd2 Bc6!? (8 ... Be7!?, intending 9 Bh3 h5 or 9 Bg2 f5) 9 Bh3 Be7 10 0–0 h5 11 Rb1 Qd7! (planning ... Ba4–c2) 12 b4? (12 Ne1 g5!? 13 f4 — 13 g4 f5!? — 13 gxf4 14 gxf4 f5! 15 exf6 Nxf6 16 Qe2 Ng4 unclear) 12 ... cxb3 13 Nxb3 Ba4 14 Nfd2 Nc4 15 Ra1 g5 16 Re1 Rc8 17 Qc2 Nh6 18 Qa2 g4 19 Bf1 Nb6 ♭. The idea of ... Bc6 and ... Qd7 is sometimes used in the main 5 ... Qb6 6 a3 line, but at the cost of two tempi due to ... Qb6–c7–d7.

## 8 Bh3

One idea after 8 Bf4 is 8 ... Nge7, e.g. 9 h4!? Ng6 10 Bc1 f6 11 h5 Nge7 12 Bf4 g5!; and 8 Nbd2 f6 or 8 Bg2 f6! 9 exf6 gxf6 equalizes (or here perhaps even 9 ... Nxf6!?, due to Black's lead in development).

## 8 ... f6

The most consequent. 8 ... h6 and 9 ... 0–0–0 is also reasonable.

## 9 0–0

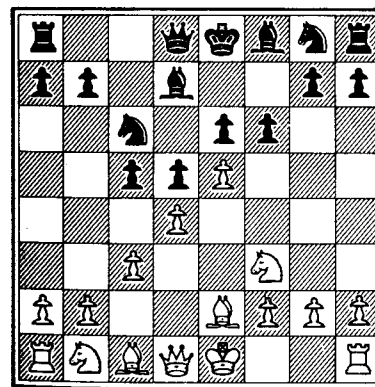
9 exf6 gxf6 10 0–0 (10 Bf4 Bd6) 10 ... 0–0–0 11 Re1 e5 is equal, e.g. 12 Bxd7+ Rxd7 13 dxe5 fxe5 14 Ng5 Nf6 15 Ne6 Qd6 or 12 Bg2 Bg4! 13 h3 Bh5 etc.

## 9 ... 0–0–0

Or 9 ... fxe5. After 9 ... 0–0–0 10 Re1 Nge7, 11 Nbd2 fxe5 or 11 exf6 gxf6 12 Bf4 Qb6 (13 Qc2 Ng6 14 Be3 Bd6) is equal.

## 1.413

## 6 Be2 f6



The move that most clearly differentiates 5 ... Bd7. Now that White has committed his bishop to blocking the e-file, Black attacks the head of the pawn chain. 6 ... Nge7 7 Na3 cxd4 8 cxd4 Nf5 9 Nc2 Nb4 has

achieved equality in several games, most prominently Spassky–Korchnoi, match (18) 1978. After 7 0–0 instead, Larsen's 7 ... Ng6 intending ... Be7, ... 0–0, and ... f6 may be best, but I suspect that White has a small edge.

Worth noting is 6 ... Qc7!?, e.g. 7 0–0 f6 8 Re1 (8 Bf4 Nge7 9 Bg3 Nf5 10 exf6 Nxf6 11 fxf6 12 Nh4 0–0–0! ♭) 8 ... fxe5 (or 8 ... 0–0–0!? 9 Bf1 Nge7!; here 9 Bf4 Nge7 10 Qd2 Ng6 11 Bg3 Qb6 is unclear) 9 Nxe5 Nxe5 10 dxe5 0–0–0 unclear (11 Bg4!?).

## 7 0–0

7 exf6 Nxf6 is easy for Black, and 7 c4!? failed to 7 ... cxd4! 8 cxd5 exd5 9 exf6 Nxf6 10 Nxd4 Bc5 in Kupreichik–Dolmatov, USSR Ch 1980/81: 11 Nxc6?! (11 Nb3? Bxf2+ 12 Kxf2 Ne4+ Dolmatov; probably true, in view of lines like 13 Kf1 Qb6 14 Qe1 0–0+ 15 Bf3 Rxf3+; best 11 Be3 Qb6 ♭) 11 ... Bxc6 12 0–0 0–0 13 Nd2 Qb6 14 Qb3 Rae8! 15 Qxb6 Bxb6 16 Bd3 Ng4 17 Nf3 Rxf3! 18 gxf3 Ne5 19 Be2 d4 and Black won shortly.

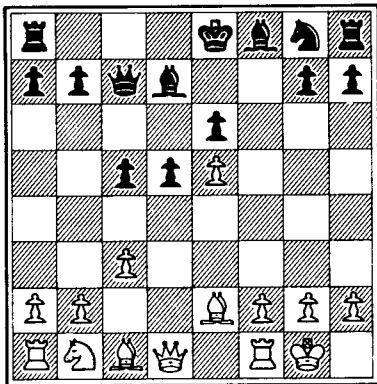
## 7 ... fxe5

7 ... Qc7!? 8 Re1 transposes to 6 ... Qc7, and is a valid alternative.

## 8 Nxe5

Best. 8 dxe5 gives White problems in supporting e5, e.g. 8 ... Qc7 9 Na3!? (9 Re1 intending c4 — Hartston; but 9 ... 0-0-0 10 Bf1 — 10 Bd3 Nh6 is similar — 10 ... Nh6! is strong, e.g. 11 Bxh6!? gxh6 12 Nbd2 Bg7 13 Qe2 Be8! — intending ... Bh5 — 14 h3 Bh5 15 g4 Bg6 with the ideas ... Rdf8, ... Rf7, ... Rhf8 and/or ... h5. Here 11 Bf4 Nf7 12 Nbd2 Be7 with the idea ... g5, ... h5, ... g4, etc., also favours Black) 9 ... a6 10 Bf4 Nh6! 11 Nc2 Nf7 12 c4 d4 13 Bd3 Be7 14 Qe2 g5! 15 Bg3 0-0-0 16 b4 h5 ♯ Kupreichik–Gulko, USSR Ch 1976. A fairly typical case where the necessity of defending e5 exposes White's pieces to tempo-gaining pawn advances.

8 ... Nxe5  
9 dxe5 Qc7



A crucial position. White has some extra space and prospects of queenside attack if Black castles on that side; on the other hand, Black has satisfactory development, a share of the centre, and pressure on White's kingside and e5. White's next tries to upset the balance:

## 10 c4!?

One opponent of mine played 10 f4!?, after which 10 ... Nh6 11 Na3 a6 intending ... 0-0-0 and perhaps ... Nf7, ... Be7, ... g5 was double-edged. The other known move is 10 Bf4: 10 ... Ne7 (or 10 ... 0-0-0, reserving the possibility of ... Nh6) 11 Re1 0-0-0 12 Bd3 Be8! 13 Nd2 Bg6 14 Nf3 Bxd3 15 Qxd3 Ng6 16 Bd2 Be7 17 b4 Rhf8 = Jamieson–Tal, Australia–USSR corres 1977.

## 10 ... Qxe5

Consistent. Black subjects himself to attack but in the process rids himself of the pawn around which White has built his game. In Zaitsev–Tarjan, Quito 1977, Black played 10 ... d4, but after 11 Bf4 Ne7! 12 Nd2 Nf5 13 Bd3 Be7 14 Ne4 0-0? (14 ... 0-0-0 ±) 15 Qg4!, he stood poorly. Instead of 11 ... Ne7, 11 ... Bc6!? and 12 Bf3 0-0-0, 12 Nd2 0-0-0 13

Bg4 Qf7 14 Bg3 Nh6, or 12 Bg4 Qf7 13 Qd2 Ne7 appears a better way to bring the forces out.

## 11 cxd5 0-0-0

Ugrinovic gives 11 ... Qxd5 12 Qc2 =/unclear. White's easy development (control of e4) and the weak black e-pawn definitely compensate for his material deficit.

## 12 Nc3

Whereas after 12 dxe6 Bxe6, Black's development and attack (... Bd6) give him the advantage.

## 12 ... exd5

## 12 ... Nf6!?

## 13 Qxd5 Bd6!?

More interesting is 13 ... Qc7, and 13 ... Qxd5 14 Nxd5 Be6! 15 Nf4 Bf5. After 13 ... Bd6, Sax–Vaganian, Tallin 1979, continued 14 Qxe5 Bxe5 15 Ne4 b6 16 Re1! Re8 17 Ba6+ Kd8 18 Bg5+ Nf6 19 Rad1 Kc7 20 Nc3 Bd4 21 Bf4+!? Kd8 22 Nb5 ½-½ (22 ... Rxe1+ 23 Rxe1 Bxb5 24 Bxb5 Bxb2 25 Rd1+ Bd4=).

Thus 5 ... Bd7 does what a good defensive system should,

i.e. it provides equality without sacrificing active counterplay.

## 1.42

## 5 ... Qb6

For our alternative system, we look at the old main line, which puts immediate pressure on d4.

White has three main replies: 1.421 6 Bd3; 1.422 6 a3; 1.423 6 Be2.

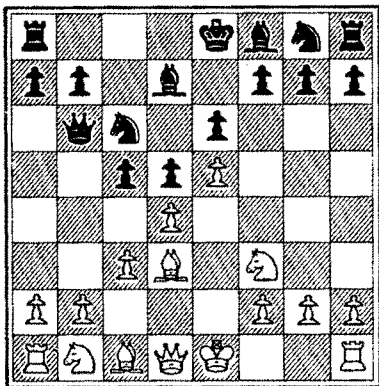
Weak are 6 Na3? cxd4 7 cxd4 Bb4+ 8 Bd2 Bxa3 ♯ and 6 dxc5? Bxc5 7 Qc2 f6 (or 7 ... Qc7 ♯) 8 Bd3 fxe5 9 Bxh7 e4 ♯ Tolush–Rauzer, USSR 1935, e.g. 10 Bg6+? Kf8 11 Ng5 Nce7 ♯♯. Here 8 exf6 Nxf6 is at least ♯, e.g. 9 Bf4 0-0 10 Bd3 e5!.

The only other serious move is 6 g3, when Popovych–Fargago, Novi Sad 1979, went 6 ... cxd4 7 cxd4 Nh6 8 Bh3! Qa6!? (8 ... Nf5 9 Bxf5 exf5 unclear) 9 Nc3 Bb4 10 Bxh6 gxh6 11 Bf1 (11 Qe2!?) 11 ... Qb6 12 Qd2 Bd7 (unclear — ECO). A more thematic approach would be 6 ... f6(!), e.g. 7 Bg2 cxd4 8 cxd4 Bb4+ 9 Kf1 (9 Nc3 fxe5 10 dxe5 d4 11 a3 dxc3 — or 11 ... Ba5 12 b4 Nxb4 — 12 axb4 cxb2 13 Bxb2

Qxb4+ ♣) 9 ... fxe5 10 dxe5  
Ne7 with an excellent game.

1.421

6 Bd3



We look at this first because it leads to the Milner–Barry Gambit, which is part of our main repertoire with 5 ... Bd7 (via 5 ... Bd7 6 Bd3 cxd4 7 cxd4 Qb6).

6 ... cxd4  
7 cxd4 Bd7  
8 0–0

A gambit, as Black's 7 ... Bd7 threatened 8 ... Nxd4 without a final check on b5. Here 8 Nc3 Nxd4 9 Nxd4 Qxd4 10 0–0 transposes, and 8 Bc2?! Nb4! works out poorly: 9 Nc3 (9 0–0 Nxc2 10 Qxc2 Rc8 11 Nc3 transposes; 9 Ba4 Qa6!; 9

Bb3 Qa6 Harding) 9 ... Nxc2+ 10 Qxc2 Rc8 11 0–0 Ne7 (or 11 ... Bb4) 12 Be3 (12 Rd1 Nc6 13 a4 Na5 ♣ Basjouni–Uhlmann, Prague 1954) 12 ... Nc6 13 Qd2 (13 Rac1 Na5 ♣ Steinitz–Burn, Vienna 1898) 13 ... Bb4! 14 a3 Stadler–Ilchmann, corres 1958–9, and best was 14 ... Bxc3 15 bxc3 Na5 ♣ (Heemsoth).

The other move is 8 Be2, a tempo down on 6 Be2 cxd4 7 cxd4. Simplest then would be 8 ... Nh6! 9 b3 Nf5 10 Bb2 Bb4+ 11 Kf1 0–0 or here 11 ... Be7; compare 1.423.

8 ... Nxd4  
9 Nxd4

9 Ng5! (Keogh) 9 ... Nc6 10 Nxb7 Be7 or 10 Bxb7 Nh6 (Harding); Black is better.

9 ... Qxd4  
10 Nc3

(a) 10 Re1 Ne7 (10 ... Bb4!? intending ... Ne7) 11 Nc3 a6 12 Ne2?! Qxe5 13 Bf4 Qf6 14 Qb3, given as unclear by *ECO*, is already lost for White after 14 ... Bc6 (Estrin). Here 12 Qf3 Nc6 13 Qg3 0–0–0 14 Bf1 Be7! ♣ of Lundquist–Dijkstra, corres 1962, and 12 Be3 Qxe5 13 Qf3 Bc6 (Messere) are equally poor.

(b) 10 Qe2 (“?” Harding) has two replies: 10 ... f6 (“!”

Keres) 11 exf6 Nxf6 12 Rd1 Qh4 or here 12 Nc3 Bd6!? (12 ... a6) 13 Nb5 Qe5 etc.; and 10 ... Ne7 11 Kh1 (11 Nc3 Nc6 12 Be3 — 12 Nb5 Qxe5 ♣ — 12 ... Qxe5 13 f4 Qd6 14 Nb5 Qb8 15 f5 e5 ♣ Sturm–Schmid, corres 1954–6) 11 ... Nc6 (11 ... Qh4!?) 12 f4 Nb4 13 Bb5 0–0–0! ♣.

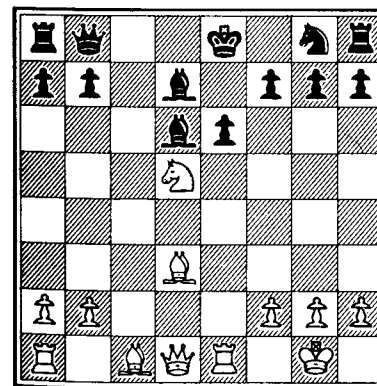
10 ... Qxe5(!)

10 ... a6 is at least equal, but the text is clearer and more forthright. Why not eliminate the pawn which defines White's central advantage?

11 Re1 Qb8  
12 Nxd5

12 Qf3 Bc6 13 Nxd5 Ne7 ♣ (Harding).

12 ... Bd6



13 Qg4!?

(a) 13 g3 is best met by 13 ... Kf8 14 Nf4 Nf6 and White is running out of ideas.

(b) 13 Qh5! failed in Bisguier–Westerinen, Netanya 1971, after 13 ... Kf8 14 Nc3 Nf6 15 Qh4 Bc6!? 16 Bg5!? (16 Bh6 Be7! — 16 ... Be5? 17 Bxg7ch! — 17 Bf4 Qe8 ♣) 16 ... Be5 ♣, and now Bisguier's 17 Bb5 can be met calmly by 17 ... h6, whereas 17 f4!? Bd4+ 18 Kh1 h6 (intending ... Bf2) 19 f5 Kg8 20 Be3 Bxe3 21 Rxe3 exf5 22 Bxf5 g5(!) seems to consolidate.

Since this is all somewhat loose, I played 15 ... h6! in Whitney–Watson, Winterhaven 1981: 16 Bd2 Bc6 17 f4 (? But White is short of ideas, e.g. 17 Rad1 Be7 18 Bf4 Qe8!) 17 ... Bc5+ 18 Be3 Qd6 19 Kh1 Bxe3 20 Rxe3 Qd4 21 Rh3 Rd8 ♣ intending ... Ke7 and ... g5.

13 ... Kf8  
14 Bd2

“Unclear” (*ECO*). Most other moves allow either 14 ... f5 or 14 ... Bxh2+ and 15 ... Be5.

14 ... h5!

Now 14 ... f5? 15 Qf3 exd5?? 16 Bxf5 is crushing for White.

15 Qh3

Otherwise 15 ... exd5.

15 ... Bc6

Another good move is 15 ... Nh6, e.g. 16 Bc3 Ng4!

16 Nb4 Bd7!?

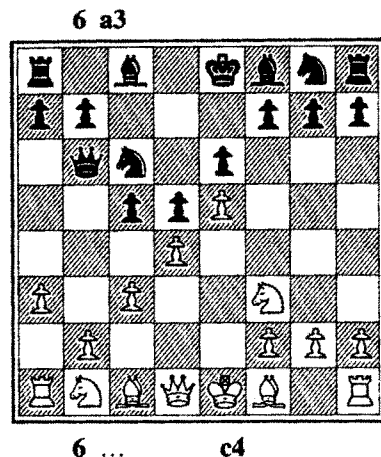
To see what White is up to. Now 17 Bc3 Ne7 gets the knight out. In Messere-Endzelins, corres 1975-77, Black got a draw out of 16 ... Nf6 17 Nxc6 bxc6 18 Bc3 Ng4 19 g3 Qb6 20 Re2 Rd8 21 Be4 with some complications.

17 Nd5 Bc6  
18 Nb4 Be8!

Burnett-Watson, Los Angeles 1982. Now 19 ... Nf6 is threatened, but 19 Bc3 Ne7 ♣ threatens ... a5 and ... Nd5 (looking at c3 and f4) with a queenside advance or centralization (... Be5, ... Qd6) in store. So White tried 19 Bc4!? Nf6 20 Nd3 Ng4 21 g3 b5 22 Bb3 Bc6! 23 Nf4 Qb6 24 Be3 Bc5 25 Bxc5 Qxc5 26 Re2 Re8 27 Rc2 Qb6 28 Rac1 Ba8 29 Rc5 Qb7 30 Qg2 Qd7! 31 Qf1 h4 32 Qd1 hxg3! 33 fxg3 Rxh2 0-1.

This completes the analysis you need for 5 ... Bd7. What follows pertains solely to 5 ... Qb6.

1.422



As with 5 ... Bd7 6 a3, 6 ... f6!? is an option: 7 Bd3 (7 exf6!? Nxf6 8 b4 cxd4 9 cxd4 Bd6 10 Bb2 0-0 =) 7 ... c4!? (7 ... cxd4 8 cxd4 Bd7 9 b4 of Nilsson-Thorbergson, Munich 1958, is called "±" by both *ECO* and Harding, but after 9 ... 0-0-0, it is not clear that Black is worse at all, e.g. 10 Bb2 Nh6 or 10 Qc2 Kb8 11 Bf4 Ka8 etc.) 8 Bc2 Bd7 9 0-0 0-0-0 with counterplay, e.g. Black can meet a b3 break with ... cxb3, ... Kb8, ... Na5, and ... Rc8 if necessary.

6 ... a5 is considered ± after 7 Bd3, but Dowden-Belyavsky, Lucerne 1982, went 7 ... Bd7 8 0-0 a4(!) 9 dxc5!? Bxc5 10 Nbd2 f6 11 Qe2 Neg7! with complications.

After 6 ... c4, White has two strategies, one involving Nbd2 and Be2, the other involving g3 and Bg2 or Bh3: 1.4221 7 Nbd2; 1.4222 7 g3.

(a) 7 h4? is rather slow: 7 ... Bd7 (or 7 ... f6) 8 g3 f6! 9 Bh3 fxe5 10 dxe5 Bc5 11 0-0 Nge7 12 Qc2 0-0-0 ♣ intending ... Ng6 and/or ... Rdf8 Novak-Vogt, Stary Smokovec 1979.

(b) After 7 Ng5!?, Keres analyses 7 ... Bd7 8 Qh5 Nh6 9 Nh3 g6!. Also plausible looks just 7 ... h6 and 8 Qh5 g6 9 Qh3 Bg7 10 Nf3 Bd7 (with the idea ... 0-0-0 and ... f5) or 8 Nh3 Bd7 9 Be2 0-0-0 10 0-0 f6.

(c) 7 Be2 is sometimes played, but generally in conjunction with Nbd2. An independent order was 7 Be2 Bd7 8 0-0 f6!? (8 ... Nge7 9 Nbd2 Na5 transposes to 1.4221) 9 Nbd2 Bastrikov-Zurakhov, USSR 1955, and now 9 ... Nh6 with the idea ... Nf7 improves upon 9 ... fxe5 10 Nxe5 Nxe5 11 dxe5 0-0-0 12 a4 Ne7!? 13 b3! ±, as played.

1.4221

7 Nbd2 Bd7

Probably the main move, although sometimes 7 ... Na5 is played first (and not 7 ...

Nge7? 8 Bxc4!). But for one thing, White can consider 7 ... Na5 8 b4!? cxb3 9 Bb2 Bd7 10 c4! (Keres). Also, 7 ... Na5 takes pressure off the centre; thus White has the possible plan 8 h4!? Bd7 9 h5 h6 10 g3, e.g. 10 ... Ne7 11 Bh3 Nb3? (11 ... 0-0-0) 12 Nxb3 Ba4 13 Nfd2 Nc6 14 0-0 Na5 15 f4 Nxb3 16 Nxb3 Bxb3 17 Qe2 ± Bronstein-Mestel, London 1976.

A more dynamic solution is 7 ... f6!?, as in 7 g3 f6 below. Enders-Uhlmann, E. German Ch 1978, went 8 b3?! fxe5 9 bxc4 e4 10 Nh4 Nf6 11 g3 Be7 12 Rb1 Qc7 13 Be2 0-0 14 0-0 Na5 and Black was better. Uhlmann mentions 8 exf6 Nxf6 9 g3 =, when 9 ... Bd6 renders White's position harmless at best. Critical after 7 ... f6 would be 8 Nh4!?, which looks unclear but difficult after 8 ... fxe5!? 9 Qh5+ Kd8 10 dxe5 (10 Ng6 Nf6 11 Qh4 Rg8 unclear) 10 ... Ne7 11 Ndf3 or 8 ... Nge7?! 9 exf6 gxf6 10 Qh5+. But 8 ... Qc7 improves (9 Qh5+ Qf7 10 Qxf7+ Kxf7 11 f4 g5!), or 8 ... Nh6!? planning ... Nf7. Finally, 7 ... f6 8 Be2 Qc7!? (or 8 ... Bd7 =) 9 0-0!? was Casper-Uhlmann, East Berlin 1982: 9 ... fxe5 10 Nxe5 Nxe5 11 dxe5 Ne7 (11 ... Qxe5 may be better, giving f6 to his

knight) 12 b3! cxb3 13 c4 Qxe5 14 Rb1 with a promising attack. In general, 7 ... f6 looks too difficult to assess without further tests.

8 Be2

8 g3 is 1.4222

8 ... Na5

Now 8 ... f6 is safer than in the last note, and perhaps preferable.

9 0-0 Ne7

10 Rb1

10 Ng5 h6 11 Nh3 0-0-0 12 Nf4 g6 13 Rb1 Kb8 = Zaitsev-Petrosian, USSR Ch 1969.

10 ... 0-0-0

Consistent, although not the only move. Keres suggested 10 ... Bc6!? 11 b4 cxb3 12 c4 dxc4 13 Bxc4 h6 =, and Timman-Liberzon, Venice 1974, went 10 ... h6 11 Nh4 0-0-0 12 g3 Kb8 (12 ... f5!? 13 exf6 gxf6 14 Bg4 Zaitsev-Farago, Szolnok 1975, and now 14 ... Kb8 unclear — Haag) 13 Bh5!? (13 Ng2!? intending f4 and Ne3) 13 ... g6 14 Be2 Qc7 15 Ng2 Bc6 16 h4!? Qd7 = with the idea ... Ba4 and eventually ... f6.

11 b4 cxb3

12 Bb2

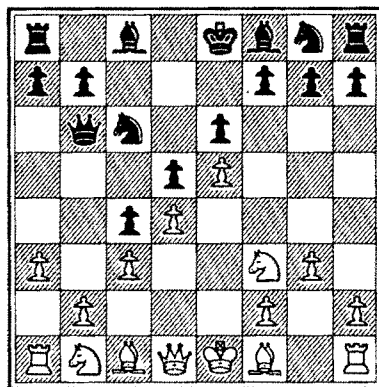
12 c4 Ba4 13 c5 Qc7 14 Bb2 Nec6 15 Re1 Rg8! and Black went on to attack with ... g5 in Lebedev-Petrosian, USSR 1958.

12 ... h6

Or 12 ... Qc7. If 12 ... Ba4, 13 Ng5 is bothersome. After 12 ... h6, Zinn-Hamman, Lugano 1968, went 13 c4 Ba4 14 c5 Qc7, and Uhlmann suggests 15 Bc3! Nec6 16 Ne1 b6 17 Nd3 =.

1.4222

7 g3



7 ... f6!?

The most topical move in this line, which follows the recently-acquired wisdom that perhaps Black should not be in too much of a hurry to play ... Na5. The latter move draws the

knight away from the centre with sometimes imaginary benefits. Aside from 7 ... f6, 7 ... Bd7 is important, when 8 h4 f6! is rather slow for White, and 8 Bg2 might tempt Black into one of the "old" lines with 8 ... Na5 (or of course 8 ... f6) 9 Nbd2 h6, e.g. 10 0-0 0-0-0 11 Re1 (11 Ne1 f5! 12 exf6 gxf6) 11 ... Ne7 12 Nf1 Nf5 (12 ... Nb3!?) 13 Ne3 (13 g4!?) 13 ... Nxe3 14 Rxe3 Be7 15 Re1 Qb3! 16 Qe2 Ba4! ♣ Clarke-Petrosian, Munich 1958. Here 12 Qe2 g5!? 13 Nf1 Ng6 14 N3d2 Be7 = Casper-Knaak, East Berlin 1982.

So the main reply to 7 ... Bd7 is 8 Bh3 and now 8 ... Be7!? is quite interesting: 9 0-0 (9 Nbd2 0-0-0!? 10 Nf1 f5 11 exf6 Jezek-Lindquist, corres 1956-9, and now 11 ... gxf6!? is unclear, e.g. 12 Ne3 Bd6 13 0-0 Ne7 14 Ng4 Rdf8 15 Bh6 Rf7 16 Qe2 Nf5 =. Or here 9 ... Na5 10 0-0 10 Rb1 0-0-0! — 10 ... h5 11 Ne1 g5!? 12 Bg2! 0-0-0! with a complex position, and not 12 Nc2? Ba4 13 Rb1 g4 Blatny-Drvota, Decin 1978, or 12 f4?! g4 13 Bg2 Nh6 14 Qe2 Nf5 ♣ Sorm-Caper, Decin 1978) 9 ... 0-0-0 10 Ne1 g5! 11 f4 gxf4 12 gxf4 f5! 13 Kh1 h5 14 Bg2 Nh6 15 Bf3 Rdg8 16 Nd2 Na5 17 Ng2 Nb3! 18 Nxb3 Ba4 ♣ Mak-

ropoulos-Gavrilakis, Greek Ch 1976.

The whole ... Be7 idea deserves a closer look.

8 exf6

Again 8 Nh4 is interesting: 8 ... fxe5!? (8 ... Qc7 is more solid) 9 Qh5+ g6!? 10 Nxc6 Nf6 11 Qh4 Rg8 12 Qxf6! Rxc6 13 Qh4 exd4 14 Be2! dxc3 15 bxc3 (15 Nxc3 Nd4!) with continuing pressure. That this has not been tried seems strange; perhaps most players consider 8 ... Qc7 adequate.

8 ... Nxf6

9 Bg2

(a) 9 Nbd2 allows Black to develop quickly: 9 ... Bd6 10 Bg2 0-0 11 0-0 Bd7 12 Qe2 Qc7 (12 ... Kh8!?) 13 Re1 Kh8 14 Ne5 Be8 15 f4 Bh5 = Rättsch-Franz, Germany 1958.

(b) 9 Bh3 Bd6! (or 9 ... Na5!? 10 Nbd2 Bd6 11 0-0!? 0-0 12 Ne5 — 12 Re1 Kh8 13 Ne5?! Bxe5 14 Rxe5 Nc6 15 Re1 e5! 16 Bxc8 Raxc8 17 Nf4 Ne4 ♣ Goichberg-Butterill, London 1978 — 12 ... Bxe5! 13 dxe5 Nd7 14 Nf3 Nb3 15 Be3 Ndc5 ♣ Botto-Butterill, Llanelli 1977) 10 Qe2 (If 10 0-0 0-0 11 Re1!?, 11 ... e5! 12 Bxc8 Raxc8 13 dxe5 Ng4! etc.) 10 ... 0-0 11 Bxe6+ Kh8 ♣ (Uhlmann). Better here 11 0-0

Kh8 12 Nbd2, when 12 ... Bd7 13 Re1(?) Rae8! 14 Ne5 Bxe5 15 dxe5 Ne4! favours Black.

9 ... Bd6  
10 0-0 0-0

10 ... Na5!? (or 9 ... Na5 10 Nbd2 Bd6) 11 Nbd2 0-0 12 Rb1?! (12 Qe2; see the note to Black's 11th) 12 ... Kh8 13 Qe2 Bd7 14 Re1 Be8! 15 Nh4 (15 Qxe6 Bg6 and 16 ... Rae8) 15 ... Bh5 16 Bf3 Bf7 17 Nf1 Nb3 18 Bg5 Rae8 ♣ Lejeune-Botto, Glorney Cup 1977.

### 11 Qe2

Best. 11 Re1 Ne4! 12 Nbd2 Nxd2! ♣ (Uhlmann), in view of 13 Bxd2? Qxb2, 13 Nxd2 e5, or 13 Qxd2 Na5.

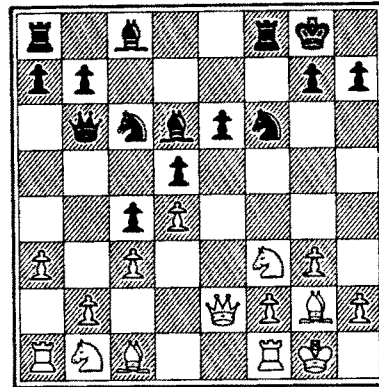
11 Nbd2 e5! 12 dxe5 Bxe5! 13 Nxe5? (13 Qc2 = Uhlmann, but 13 ... g6! looks better for Black) 13 ... Nxe5 14 Qe2?! (14 Nf3 Bg4 ♣) 14 ... Re8 15 Nf3 Bg4 16 Qd1 Rad8 17 Be3 Qxb2 18 Bd4 b6! ♣ Przewoznik-Uhlmann, Poland-E. Germany 1980.

(see following diagram)

11 ... Kh8!?

Of the three good moves here, this is the most often played:

(a) 11 ... Bd7!? is tricky: 12 Ne5 Be8? 13 Nxc4! Nxd4



(13 ... dxc4 14 Qxe6+) 14 cxd4 dxc4 15 Nc3 ± Alexander-Uhlmann, Munich 1958. But 12 ... Rae8! improves: 13 Bf4 Bxe5 14 dxe5 Ne4! 15 Bxe4 dxe4 unclear (Uhlmann); here 13 Nxd7 Nxd7 14 Be3 looks more critical, and yet 14 ... Na5 ties White down.

(b) 11 ... Na5(!) 12 Nbd2 Bd7 is fully playable, since 13 Ne5 Be8! threatens ... Bh5 and ... Rae8. Otherwise, 13 Re1 Rae8 14 Ne5 gives Black a choice between 14 ... Bxe5 15 dxe5 Ng4! 16 Rf1 Nh6, which looks better for him, or even 14 ... Ba4(!) 15 Ndf3 (15 ... Bc2 is threatened) 15 ... Nb3 16 Rb1 Nxc1 17 Rexc1 Ne4.

### 12 Ne5

Now instead of 12 ... Bxe5!? 13 dxe5 Nd7 14 Be3 Qa5 15 f4 Nc5 16 Nd2 Bd7 (which is probably ± but not really clear

after 17 Nf3 Rae8! intending ... Re7 and ... Be8 Botterill, or 17 Rad1 Nd3!, e.g. 18 Nf3 Rae8 19 Ne1 Nc5), Uhlmann recommends 12 ... Nd7! 13 f4 (13 Nxc6 Qxc6 14 Qxe6 Nf6 intending ... Bf5 with compensation; or 13 Nxd7 Bxd7 14 Be3 Be8! intending ... Bg6) 13 ... Ndx5 14 fxe5 Rxf1+ 15 Kxf1 (15 Qxf1 Nxe5 ♣) 15 ... Be7 =.

Black can apparently play any of his three 11th moves and look forward to an auspicious middlegame, which should surprise no one in view of White's queenside problems and lagging development.

### 1.423

#### 6 Be2

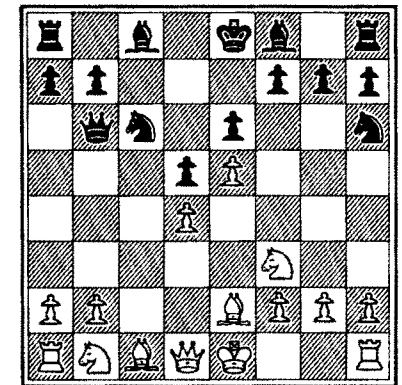
The old-fashioned and still popular move. White tries to hold d4.

6 ... cxd4

A very important alternative is 6 ... Nh6!?, when 7 b3 cxd4 8 cxd4 Nf5 is the main line below and 7 Kf1!? cxd4 8 cxd4 Nf5 9 Nc3 is 8 Nc3 Nf5 9 Kf1!? below, but in either case Black has avoided 8 Nc3 Nf5 9 Na4! (see the note to 8 b3). So critical is 7 Bxh6 gxh6 (7 ... Qxb2? 8 Be3! Qxal 9 Qc2 is held to be winning for White because of

9 ... cxd4 10 Nxd4 or even 10 Bxd4!) 8 Qd2! (8 b3? cxd4 9 cxd4 f6! 10 exf6 Bb4+ 11 Kf1 0-0 ♣ with a strong attack, Karlsson-Helmers, Reykjavik 1982) 8 ... Bd7 9 0-0 Bg7 10 Na3 0-0 11 Nc2 Sveshnikov-Filipenko, USSR 1975, and instead of 11 ... cxd4 12 cxd4 f6 13 Bd3!, Black should consider just 11 ... Kh8 or 11 ... f6!? (12 Bd3?! c4! 13 Be2 fxe5 14 Nxe5 Nxe5 15 dxe5 Rf5 or 15 ... Be8; 12 exf6 Rxf6). If Black is okay here, 6 ... Nh6 is at least as good as 6 ... cxd4.

7 cxd4 Nh6



### 8 b3!?

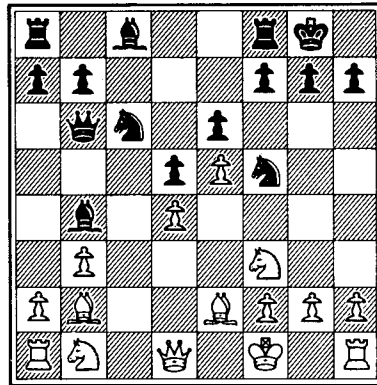
Played in a majority of games (8 Bxh6? Qxb2 is now good), but probably better, at least in practical terms, is 8 Nc3 Nf5 and now two moves are interesting:

(a) 9 Kf1!? Be7 (9 ... N (either)xd4?? 10 Na4; 9 ... Bd7!? 10 Na4 Qa5 11 Bd2 Qd8 12 Bf4 Be7 unclear and maybe even ♭ was Möhring-Uhlmann, E. Germany 1982) 10 h4 (10 Na4 Qd8 11 a3 0-0! 12 b4 Lepeshkin-Golovin, USSR 1975, and now 12 ... f6! is promising, e.g. 13 b5 Na5 14 g4!? Nxd4! 15 Nxd4 — 15 Qxd4 Nb3 — 15 ... fxe5 16 Nc2 Bh4 17 f3 b6! with attack) 10 ... Bd7! (Threatening d4. Not 10 ... 0-0? 11 g4 or 10 ... h5?! 11 g3 ± of Hecht-Pietzsch, 1964) 11 Na4 Qd8 12 g3 0-0 13 Kg2 f6 with good play.

(b) 9 Na4! (this move is not possible if Black plays 6 ... Nh6 before ... cxd4) 9 ... Qa5+ (or 9 ... Bb4+, since 10 Kf1 Qd8 11 a3 Be7 12 b4 0-0 13 Rg1 f6! or 13 h4 f6! has won two nice games. 10 Bd2 transposes) 10 Bd2 (10 Kf1 b5 11 Nc3 b4 12 Bb5 Bd7 13 Bxc6 Bxc6 14 Ne2 Bigot-Schmid, corres 1954, and 14 ... Bb5 or 14 ... Rc8 15 g4 Ne7 is comfortable) 10 ... Bb4 11 Bc3 b5 12 a3 Bxc3+ 13 Nxc3 b4 14 axb4 Qxb4 15 Bb5! Bd7 16 Bxc6 (16 0-0? Nxe5) 16 ... Bxc6 17 Qd2 0-0 18 0-0 Rfb8 19 Rab1. From this position two games have gone 19 ... a5 20 g4 Ne7 21 Qe3 a4 22 Rfd1. Black drew and won (unconvincingly) following

22 ... Be8 and 22 ... Rc8. It might be logical to anticipate g4 by 19 ... Qe7!?, e.g. 20 g4 Nh4 21 Ne1 Rb3 22 f4 Rab8 23 Qf2 Bb5 etc.

8 ... Nf5  
9 Bb2 Bb4+  
10 Kf1 0-0!



Here 10 ... h5 and 10 ... Be7 are good alternatives with excellent pedigrees, and 9 ... Be7 was also possible. If you are dissatisfied with 10 ... 0-0, refer to other French books. But the text is more fun!

### 11 g4!?

(a) 11 Nc3 f6! (or even 11 ... Bxc3!? 12 Bxc3 Bd7 ♭ Holmov-Petrosian, USSR Ch 1949) 12 Na4 Qd8 13 a3 Be7 14 b4 fxe5 15 dxe5 Bd7 ♭ Sorokin-Sokolsky, USSR 1951. Lines like 11 a3 Be7 12 b4 f6 and 11 Kg1 f6 are similar.

(b) A very pretty game resulted from 11 Bd3 f6! in Nicolieris-Tsouros, Greece 1973: 12 Bxf5 fxe5!! 13 Bc2 (13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg8 15 Qh5 Qb5+ and ... Qd3 ♭; 13 Bh3 e4 14 Ne1 e5! 15 Bxc8 Raxc8 ♭ Tsouros, e.g. 16 Nc2 Nxd4! 17 Nxd4 — 17 Nxb4 Qxb4 18 Nc3 e3! 19 f3 Rxc3 etc. — 17 ... exd4 18 Bxd4 Rc1! 19 Qxc1 Qxd4 ♭) 13 ... e4 14 Ne1 e5! 15 a3 Bd6 16 b4 exd4 17 Bb3 Be6 18 f3 exf3 19 Nxf3 Rxf3+! ♭ ♭.

11 ... Nh6  
12 Rg1

12 g5 Nf5 ♭. 12 h3!? Bd7 (or 12 ... f6) 13 a3 Be7 14 b4 f6! 15 exf6 Rxf6 and:

(a) 16 Kg2 (16 g5? Rxf3 17 Bxf3 Bxg5 ♭; compare the text) 16 ... Raf8 17 Nbd2 Nf7 18 b5 (18 Rf1 *Chess Player*; but 18 ... e5!) 18 ... Na5 19 a4 Ng5! 20 Rf1 Nxf3 21 Nxf3 Nc4 22 Bc1 Bd6 ♭ Bönsch-Thormann, E. Germany 1975.

(b) 16 Nc3!? Raf8 17 Na4 Qc7 18 Rc1 (? 18 Kg2, but Black can be satisfied after 18 ... Nf7 threatening ... Ng5 and ... Qf4) 18 ... Rxf3! 19 Bxf3 Qf4 20 Kg2 Nxd4 21 Bxd4 Bxa4 22 Qd3 Bc6! 23 Qe3 Qf7 24 Rfe1 (24 b5 Bg5! and ... Bxb5) 24 ... e5! 25 b5 exd4 26 Qb3 d3 27 Re3 d4 28 Qxf7+

Kxf7 29 Rxe7+ Kxe7 30 bxc6 bxc6 ♭ Frankle-Treffler, New York 1975.

12 ... f6!  
13 exf6 Rxf6  
14 g5

14 Nc3!? was tried in Frankle-Root, telephone match 1978: 14 ... Bxc3 15 Bxc3 Bd7!? (perhaps 15 ... Nf7, since now 16 g5 Rxf3 17 Bxf3 Nf5 18 Rg4 looks speculative) 16 b4!? a6 17 a4 Nf7 18 g5? Rf4 19 b5 axb5 20 axb5 Rxa1 21 Qxa1 Nd8 22 Ba5 Qa7 23 Qc3 b6 24 Bb4 e5! and Black got active play (... Qa4 follows). Also the immediate 14 ... Nf7!? should be considered. If White still goes for the exchange, e.g. by 15 g5 Rf4 16 Na4 Qc7 17 Bc1? Re4 18 Bd3?, 18 ... e5! 19 Bxe4 Bh3+ 20 Ke2 dxe4 21 Nxe5 Nxe5 22 dxe5 Rd8 wins. Otherwise 15 Na4 Qc7 16 Rc1 (16 Nc5 e5!) 16 ... Bd7 (or 16 ... Bd6) 17 Ne5 Raf8 is a plausible continuation.

14 ... Rxf3

An idea which originated with Nimzowitsch, although White is better poised to meet it after 12 Rg1 than after some waiting move.

15 gxh6!?

Another critical line is 15 Bxf3 Nf5 16 Rg4 Bd7 17 Nc3! (Games with 17 Kg2 Rf8 and 17 a3 Bd6 18 Kg2 Rf8 have demonstrated Black's more-than-ample play for the exchange). The idea is supposed to be 17 ... Ncxd4 18 Nxd5! (Schwarz), when Harding gives 18 ... Qb5+ 19 Kg2 Nxf3 20 Nc7 Nfh4+ 21 Kh3 ±±. However, 20 ... Qc6! is a big improvement, e.g. 21 Qxf3 Qxc7, threatening ... Bc6 and ... Nh4+, keeps a material advantage (22 Rc1 Bc5); so 21 Rc1! Ne1+ 22 Kg1 (22 Kh3?? Qh1!) 22 ... Nf3+ etc. is forced. If Black wants more, there is an alternative in 17 ... Rf8!?, e.g. 18 Na4 Qb5+ (or 18 ... Qd8) 19 Kg2 (19 Qe2?? Ne3+!; 19 Be2 Ne3+ 20 Kg1 Nxd1 and ... Nxf2 with compensation) 19 ... Be8 intending ... Bh5.

### 15 ... Rf7

White has got rid of some material, but he is still faced with a strong attack after ... e5: 16 Bd3 (16 Qd3? Ne5! ♣ was Levin–Hasin, Leningrad 1954; 16 Bh5 g6! Botterill, intending 17 Bxg6 hxg6 18 Rxg6+ Kh8 19 Qg4 Bd7 20 Rg7 Raf8 ♣) 16 ... e5 (or 16 ... g6 Botterill) 17 Qh5 (stops ... Bh3+; 17 Bxh7+? Kxh7 18 Qh5 Qa6+!) 17 ... e4 18 Be2 Be6! (18 ... g6! ♣ Botterill) 19 Nc3 Bxc3 20 Bxc3 Nxd4!? 21 Qe5! Nf5! 22 Bh5 Re7 23 Bg4 ½–½(?) Botterill–Ligterink, London 1978; 23 ... d4! 24 Ke1 Bf7 25 Qxf5 e3!! 26 f4 dxc3 27 Qg5 Qf6 ♣ (Botterill).

The Advance Variation with both 5 ... Bd7 and 5 ... Qb6 appears fully satisfactory for Black, and in many cases quite unsatisfactory for White.

## 2 Exchange Variation

### 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5

3 exd5 characterizes the Exchange Variation, by which White releases the tension in the centre with a view to avoiding early complications. Now is as good a time as any to look at irregular third moves:

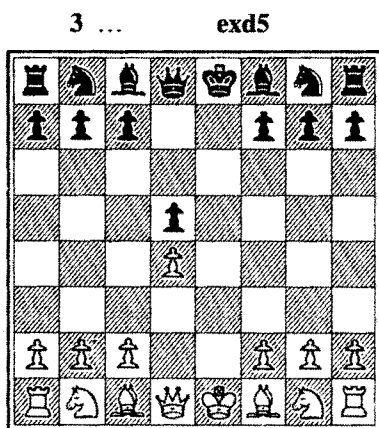
(a) 3 Be3 dxe4 4 Nd2 Nf6! (or 4 ... f5! 5 f3 Nc6 6 Bb5 Nf6 ♣ Keres) 5 c3 (5 f3? Nd5! ♣; 5 Ne2 b6 6 a3 Bb7 7 c4 c5 ♣ Keres; 5 Bc4?! Nc6 6 Ne2 e5 7 c3 exd4 8 Nxd4 Ne5 9 Qb3 Bd6 ♣ Edvardson–Watson, Gausdal 1980) 5 ... b6 6 g3 Bb7 7 Bg2 Mieses–Janowski, Budapest 1896, and now Black could try 7 ... c5!? 8 dxc5! (8 Qc2 cxd4 9 Bxd4 Nc6 ♣; 8 Ne2 cxd4 9 Nxd4 Nbd7 10 Qc2 Nc5 ♣) 8 ... Bxc5 (8 ... Nbd7!?) 9 Bxc5 bxc5 10 Qc2 Qd5!? 11 Ne2 Nbd7 unclear, perhaps ♣. But 4 ... f5! looks best.

(b) 3 c4?! is an unsound gambit: 3 ... dxe4 4 Nc3 Nf6!

(4 ... f5 5 f3!? =/unclear ECO, although 5 ... Nf6 6 fxe4 fxe4 is probably ♣, e.g. 7 Bg5 Be7 8 Ne2 c5 9 dxc5 Qa5) 5 Bg5 (ECO gives 5 a3 c5! ♣ and 5 f3 c5 6 d5 exd5 7 cxd5 exf3 8 Nxf3 Bd6 ♣) 5 ... Be7 6 f3 (6 Ne2 c5 ♣) 6 ... exf3? (6 ... Nc6! is very good, and 7 Nge2 exf3 or 7 d5 exd5 8 cxd5 Nxd5) 7 Nxf3 b6 (7 ... Nc6! ♣ ECO, but I do not believe it after 8 Qd2! and 8 ... h6 9 Bf4 or 8 ... 0–0 9 0–0–0 or 8 ... e5 9 dxe5 Qxd2+ 10 Kxd2! unclear) 8 Bd3 with good attacking prospects, Guala–Shainswit, USA 1958. Hence: 6 ... Nc6!.

(c) 3 Bd3 dxe4 4 Bxe4 Nf6 only makes sense if White plays 5 Bf3, trying to hold down Black's queenside (5 Bg5 Be7 — or 5 ... c5 — 6 Bxf6 Bxf6 7 Nf3 c5 8 c3 cxd4 9 cxd4 0–0 ♣ Sifers–Walbrodt, Berlin 1897; 5 Bd3 c5 6 Nf3 Nc6 7 c3 Be7 — or 7 ... cxd4! — 8 dxc5 Bxc5 = Tartakower–Trifunovic, Salts-

jöbaden 1948). But 5 Bf3 is slow after 5 ... c5 6 c3 (6 Ne2 Nc6!? 7 Be3 Qb6, or just 6 ... Nbd7) 6 ... Nbd7 (6 ... cxd4 =) 7 Ne2 Be7 8 0-0 0-0 9 Be3 cxd4 10 cxd4?! Nb6 11 Nc3 Qd7! 12 Rc1 Rd8 ♣ Gotschall-Nimzowitsch, Hanover 1926.



Some players feel squeamish about playing the French Defence due to the Exchange Variation. If White can draw at will, they reason, why allow him the option? This is a form of classical chess thinking, i.e. that if there exists only one open file and even development, the best posts for the rooks and queen on either side are on that open file. These opposing heavy pieces will be exchanged, leading to drawish positions with best play.

But there is a huge hole in this reasoning: in most cases

neither side's rooks belong on the e-file. Why? Because there will be no points of penetration available for them along the file, e.g. squares like e2, e3 and e4 for White and e7, e6 and e5 for Black will customarily be covered 2 or 3 times by that side's pawns, knights and bishops; moreover, only one such defender is really necessary. So if, for example, White doubles or triples on the e-file while Black is blithely mounting a kingside pawn storm (backed by the rooks and queen, of course), the second player has every chance of winning.

What is more, Black can always make the struggle an imbalanced one if he chooses. This has been pointed out by perceptive players, beginning with Nimzowitsch and Alekhine, and has been demonstrated time and again in the modern era by Korchnoi and Uhlmann among others. It is actually difficult for White to even *waste* a move without effect, e.g. a3 or h3 will discourage him from castling on the wing where he has made that advance.

My own record after 15 years against the Exchange Variation is much better than against any other line. At least as far as I

can remember, I have never even drawn a rated game, much less lost one. On an international level it is closer, but I believe Black wins more often and certainly the nice wins are his. Of course it is generally the weaker player who uses the Exchange Variation as White, but that is not all there is to it. I think anyone who tries 3 exd5, even if he thinks he is playing for a win, assume a psychological burden. White has already ceded the advantage of the first move, and he knows it, whereas Black is challenged to find ways to seize the initiative.

Let us see how he might do that. By far the most important moves 2.1 4 Nf3; 2.2 4 Bd3.

Others:

(a) After 4 Nc3, I recommend 4 ... Bb4, transposing to Chapter 7, section 7.6. That line is full of life, and this eliminates the necessity of learning two variations.

(b) A move like 4 c3 looks non-committal, but guarantees Black an unbalanced game. While something like 4 ... c5 could be tried, best seems 4 ... Bd6 (or 4 ... Nc6!?. Black may not like 5 Bb5, but c3 does not fit in very well with that move), and now if 5 Bd3, 5 ... Nc6! (which is 4 Bd3 Nc6 5 c3 Bd6 below). On 5 Nf3,

5 ... Bg4 or 5 ... Nc6 6 Bb5 Bg4 assures a two-edged game. Compare the main lines.

(c) 4 Be3 is passive. Then 4 ... Nf6!? 5 Bd3 Bd6 6 Nc3 c6 7 Qd2 0-0 (=) of Mieses-Maroczy, Barmen 1905 is adequate, but 4 ... Ne7 intending ... Nf5 and 4 ... Bd6 5 Nc3 Ne7 are more dynamic.

(d) 4 Qf3!? has several "unbalancing" replies, including the standard 4 ... Bd6 and on 5 Bf4, 5 ... Nf6, or on 5 c3, 5 ... Ne7. Gusev-Muratov, USSR 1968, saw 4 ... Nf6 5 Nc3 Nc6 (or simply 5 ... Be7) 6 Bb5 Be7 7 Nge2 0-0 8 a3 Bg4 9 Qd3 Na5!? 10 h3 Bd7 11 Bxd7 Qxd7 =.

(d) 4 c4 immediately (as opposed to 4 Nf3 Bd6 5 c4 — see 2.1) is the best option to the main moves. It can hardly be bad for White, but is also committal, as the examples show. There are two lines: 4 ... Nf6 5 Nc3 (the 5 Nf3 Bd6!?. line of ECO is instructive after 6 c5?! Be7 7 Nc3 b6 8 cxb6 axb6 9 Bd3 0-0 10 0-0 Bg4 ♣ of Tartakower-Botvinnik, Groningen 1946, as well as after 6 Nc3 dxc4 7 Bxc4 0-0 8 0-0 Bg4 unclear ECO. Of course 5 ... Be7 6 Nc3 0-0 is fully playable too. But a more aggressive reply is 5 ... Bb4+ 6 Nc3 — 6 Bd2 is bad because of White's pros-

pective isolani — 6 ... 0-0, e.g. 7 Be2 dxc4 8 Bxc4 Nbd7 =, or 7 a3 Bxc3+ 8 bxc3 Re8+ (̄) 5 ... Be7 (5 ... Bb4!? or 5 ... c6 6 Nf3 Bg4 7 Qb3 Qb6 8 cxd5 Qxb3 9 axb3 Bxf3 = ECO) 6 Nf3 (6 cxd5 0-0 7 Bd3 Nbd7 8 Nf3 Nb6 led to Black's advantage in Przewoznik-Knaak, Poland-E. Germany 1980) 6 ... 0-0 7 Be3 (7 Qb3 dxc4 8 Bxc4 Nc6 9 Ne5 — 9 Be3 Na5 ̄ — 9 ... Nxd4! ̄ Reti-Fahrni, San Remo 1911; 7 cxd5!? Nxd5 8 Bc4 — ECO — allows 8 ... Nb6 9 Bb3 Bg4 with good play) 7 ... c6 8 Bd3 dxc4 9 Bxc4 Nbd7 10 0-0 Nb6 11 Bb3 Velimir-ovic-Uhlmann, and 11 ... Nbd5 12 Ne5 Be6 was equal, according to ECO. Here 11 ... Bg4 is also possible. The important thing is that all these positions are full of chances.

The other promising sequence after 4 c4 is 4 ... Bb4+!? 5 Nc3 Ne7: 6 Nf3 (6 a3!? ECO; then 6 ... Bxc3+ 7 bxc3 0-0 8 Nf3 Nc6 intending ... Na5 and possibly ... Bg4 gives fine prospects) 6 ... Bg4 (early pins with the bishops tend to be quite useful in the Exchange French!) 7 a3 (7 Be2 dxc4 8 0-0 0-0! ̄ ECO) 7 ... Bxc3+ 8 bxc3 “unclear” (ECO). Now 8 ... Nc6! 9 Bg5!? (9 a4 Na5 ̄; 9 Be2 dxc4 ̄; 9 cxd5 Nxd5! 10 Bd2 — 10 c4

Bxf3 11 Qxf3 Nxd4 ̄ — 10 ... Qe7+ 11 Qe2 Bxf3 12 Qxe7+?! 13 gxf3 Ng6 ̄) 9 ... 0-0! and 10 cxd5 Qxd5 or 10 Be2 f6 11 Bd2 Na5 with good play.

## 2.1

### 4 Nf3 Bd6

Black immediately challenges symmetry; his king's knight will go to e7. A challenging (more committal) side line is 4 ... Bg4 5 Be2 (5 h3 Bh5 6 Be2 Nc6 7 0-0 Bd6! 8 Nc3 Nge7 9 Be3 Marshall-Capablanca, St. Petersburg 1914, and now instead of 9 ... f6?! 10 Qd2 Bf7!? ±, 9 ... 0-0! with the idea ... f5 or even 9 ... Bg6 was promising) 5 ... Nc6 (or 5 ... Bd6 6 0-0 Ne7, e.g. 7 Bg5!? f6 8 Bh4 Nf5 9 Re1 0-0 10 Bg3 Nhg3 11 hxg3 Re8 with excellent play, Ramsingh-Short, Belfort 1983) 6 Bf4 Bd6 7 Qd2!? (But after 7 Bxd6 Qxd6, Black is better developed) 7 ... Nf6 8 Qe3+?! (8 0-0 ̄) 8 ... Ne4! 9 Nbd2 0-0 10 Nxe4 dxe4 11 Ne5 Nb4!? (or 11 ... Bb4+!, with the idea 12 c3 Nxd4!) 12 Qd2 Bxe2 13 Qxe2 f6 14 Qc4+ Kh8 15 Bd2 fxe5 16 dxe5 Nxc2+ ̄ Omtvedt-Myr-eng, Norway 1982.

### 5 c4

Paulsen's move, given “±” in the old books; this is a sort of turnabout on Korchnoi's 4 Bd3 c5!? (see 2.2). 5 Bd3 will usually transpose to 4 Bd3, and 5 Nbd2 Ne7 6 Be2 Nc6! intending ... Bf5 is more interesting than 5 ... Nf6 6 Be2 0-0 7 0-0 Re8 8 Re1 of Blackburne-Tietjen, London 1900.

### 5 ... c6!

A good alternative to 5 ... Nf6, analysed in the note to 4 c4 above. White cannot now avoid an imbalance, and if two isolated d-pawns face each other, Black's knight on e7 will be better than its counterpart on f3.

### 6 Nc3

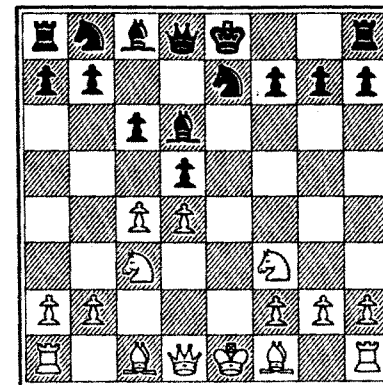
6 cxd5 cxd5 7 Nc3 will transpose to the next note, and here 7 Bg5 f6! only helps Black.

### 6 ... Ne7

(see following diagram)

### 7 Bd3!?

7 Be2 dxc4 will transpose. An intriguing game resulted from 7 cxd5 cxd5 8 Nb5?! 0-0 (or 8 ... Bb4+ =, or 8 ... Nbc6 =) 9 Nxd6 Qxd6 10 Be2 Bg4! 11 0-0 Nbc6 (intending ... Nf5) 12 h3 Bh5 (12 ... Bxf3 13 Bxf3 Nf5



14 Be3 Rfe8 15 Qb3 Rad8 16 Rad1! = Renman) 13 b3? (but 13 Be3 f5! 14 g3 Ng6 ̄ or 13 g4 Bg6 14 Nh4 f5! 15 f4 fxe4 16 hxe4 Be4 with advantage — Renman) 13 ... Rfe8 14 Bb2 Ng6! 15 g4 (What else? Renman gives 15 g3 Qe6! and 15 Bc1 Rxe2! 16 Qxe2 Nxd4 17 Qd2 Nxf3+ 18 gxf3 Nh4 etc.) 15 ... Nf4 16 Ne5 Bg6 17 Bf3 Nxe3+ 18 Kh1 Be4 ̄̄ intending ... Qh6 Johansson-Renman, Sweden 1982. The central pawns after 7 cxd5 are static, which resulted in the knights being at least the equal of the bishops.

### 7 ... dxc4

Or 7 ... 0-0 8 c5!? (8 0-0 dxc4) 8 ... Bc7 9 Qc2 h6 = Hall-Watson, New York 1981.

### 8 Bxc4 0-0

### 9 0-0

9 Be3?! Nd7 10 Qd2 Nb6 11 Bb3 Nbd5 12 0-0-0 a5! 13 Nxd5 Nxd5 14 Bxd5? (but ... a4-a3 was threatened, among other things) 14 ... cxd5 15 Kb1 Bb4! 16 Qe2 b6 17 Ng5 a4 18 Qh5 Bf5+ 19 Ka1 a3 ♣♣ Jellison-Watson, Denver 1974.

9 ... Nd7  
10 Bg5 Nb6  
11 Bb3

11 Bd3 f6! ♣.

11 ... Kh8  
12 Qd2 f6  
13 Bf4 Bb4!?

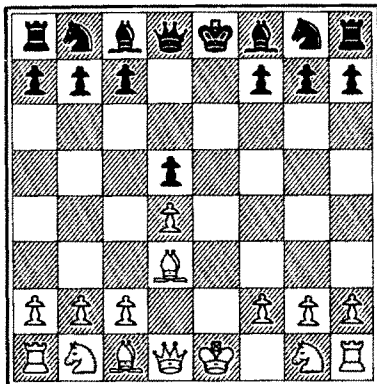
Increasing the pressure, although 13 ... Bxf4 is probably ♣ too. After 13 ... Bb4, Frederick-Watson, New York 1981, went 14 a3 Ba5 15 h3 (15 Ba2 Nbd5 ♣) 15 ... Ned5 16 Bg3 Be6 17 Ba2 Na4! (♣) 18 Qe2 Bxc3 19 Qxe6 Re8 20 Qf5 Bxb2 21 Rae1 Nac3 22 Bc4 Bxa3 23 Nh4 Re7! ♣♣.

## 2.2

4 Bd3

(see following diagram)

The main try. Now some hundreds of games have gone 4 ... Bd6 with e.g. 5 Ne2 Ne7 6 0-0 0-0 7 Bf4 Bf5 =, or some



such sequence leading to an early agreed draw (yet not by force; one can certainly play 4 ... Bd6 to win). Here I recommend other courses which do not even allow White to imitate Black if he wants to.

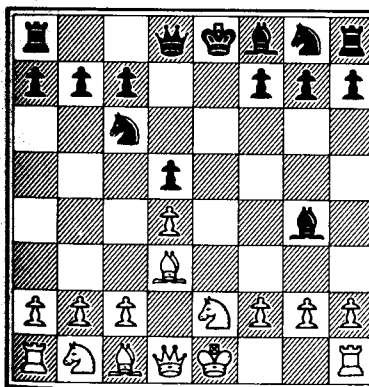
4 ... Nc6

Recently quite a few games have gone 4 ... c5!?, with the idea that the d3 bishop is not well placed to exploit an isolated pawn on d5, or even that ... c4 may be good at some point. The inspiration for this strategy comes from Tatai-Korchnoi, Beersheva 1978: 5 Nf3 (5 dxc5 Bxc5 6 Nf3 Nf6 7 0-0 0-0 8 Bg5 h6 9 Bh4 Nc6 10 Nc3 Be6 = was Spassky-Bronstein, Moscow 1981) 5 ... Nc6 (or 5 ... c4!?, e.g. 6 Be2 Bd6 7 0-0 Ne7 8 b3 cxb3 9 axb3 Nbc6 10 c4 0-0 11 Nc3 Bf5!? 12 Bg5 f6 13 Bh4 ½-½ Mencinger-

Jelen, Ljubljana 1981. Interesting! 11 ... Bg4!? or 11 ... h6 were complex options) 6 Qe2+!? (6 dxc5 Bxc5 7 0-0 = ECO) 6 ... Be7 7 dxc5 Nf6 8 h3? (to avoid 8 0-0 Bg4, but then 9 c3 is okay. Otherwise, 8 c3 0-0 9 0-0 =) 8 ... 0-0 9 0-0 Bxc5 10 c3? (Anyway! But now it is too timid:) 10 ... Re8 11 Qc2 Qd6 12 Nbd2 Qg3! 13 Bf5 Re2 14 Nd4 Nxd4 0-1.

5 c3

After 5 Ne2, ECO gives 5 ... Nb4 6 0-0 Nxd3 =, which is dull at best. More pointed is 5 ... Bg4(!)



and:

(a) 6 c3 Bd6!? (6 ... Qd7) 7 Qb3 Nge7 8 Na3?! a6 9 f3 Bf5! 10 Bxf5 Nxf5 11 0-0 0-0 12 Qc2 Qf6 ♣ Lau-Watson, Philadelphia 1978. 8 Qxb7 gives Black a lot of development after 8 ... Rb8 9 Qa6 0-0 10 0-0 Rb6

11 Qa4 Ng6!, but it is a pawn and very unclear.

(b) 6 f3 Bh5 7 c3 (7 Nf4 Bg6 8 Nc3 Bb4 or here 8 0-0 Nf6 or even 8 ... Bd6!?) intending 9 Nxd5 Bxh2+ is possible. Since exchange on g6 is very bad, the knight tends to interfere with White's game. Another idea is 7 Ng3 Qh4!? 8 0-0 Bd6 9 Qe1+ Kd7! 10 f4 Re8 planning ... Nf6-g4.) 7 ... Bd6 8 Bf4 (8 0-0 Qf6!?) with the idea ... Nge7, or just 8 ... Bg6, e.g. 9 f4 f5! and ... Nf6-e4) 8 ... Nge7 9 0-0 Bg6 10 Bxd6 Qxd6 11 f4 Qe6! (♣) 12 Rf3 Nf5! (12 ... Be4!?, 12 ... Bh5! ♣) 13 Kf2 Nd6 14 Re3 Be4 15 Ng3 f5 16 c4 0-0 17 Nc3 dxc4 18 d5 Qh6 19 Bxe4 fxe4 20 Nge2 Rxf4+ 21 Nxf4 Qxf4+ 22 Ke2 Rf8 23 Qg1 Nd4+ 24 Kd1 Qf1+ 0-1 Sollid-Watson, Gausdal 1981. Typical light-square domination.

5 ... Bd6  
6 Nf3

Most often played. Two other moves:

(a) 6 Ne2 Qh4 (Not necessary, but good. 6 ... Qf6!? — Alekhine — is also logical, 6 ... Nge7 is equal, and 6 ... Bg4!?) 7 Qb3 Nge7 would be the gambit in note (a) to 5 c3) 7 Nd2 (7 Na3 a6 8 Qd2 Nge7!? 9 Nc2 — 9 Qg5?! Qxg5 10 Bxg5

Bxa3! — of Seidman–Byrne, US Ch 1962 can be met by 9 ... h6, preventing 10 Qg5, or earlier 8 ... Nf6 is interesting. 7 g3 Qh3!? 8 Nf4 Bxf4 9 Bxf4 Qg2 10 Rf1 is unclear, but 7 ... Qh5 8 Bf4? Bg4! 9 Bxd6 cxd6 is better for Black, who intends ... 0–0–0 and kingside attack; 8 Nf4 should be tried) 7 ... Bg4! 8 Qc2 (8 Qb3 0–0–0 9 Qxd5? Nf6 ♯ *ECO*; 8 Nf1 Nge7 9 Ne3 Be6 10 Ng1 Qf6 11 Nf3 0–0–0 12 Bd2 Rhe8 13 Qc2 Ng6 ♯ intending ... Nf4 Damjanovic–Ivkov, Yugoslav Ch 1962) 8 ... Nf6!? (or 8 ... 0–0–0 9 Nf1 g6! 10 Be3 Nge7 11 0–0–0 Bf5 ♯ Winter–Alekhine, Nottingham 1936) 9 Nf1 0–0 10 Be3 Bh5 11 Nge3?! Bxg3 12 Nxxg3 (12 fxg3 Qg4! 13 Bf5 Bg6 ♯ Bednarski) 12 ... Bg6 13 h3 Rae8 14 Nf1 Bxd3 15 Qxd3 Ne4 ♯ Ledwon–Bednarski, Poland 1975.

(b) 6 Qf3 prepares Bf4 and keeps an eye on f5: 6 ... Nge7!? (6 ... Be6 7 Ne2 Qd7 or 7 Bf4 Nge7 is dull and equal. 6 ... Nce7!? succeeded brilliantly in Kovacs–Korchnoi, Sarajevo 1969: 7 Bf4?! Nf6 8 h3 — 8 Ne2 — 8 ... Bxf4 9 Qxf4 0–0 10 Ne2 Ng6 11 Qh2?! Re8 12 0–0 Bf5! ♯. Universally recommended is 7 Ne2 and on 7 ... Nf6, 8 Bg5; but then 8 ... Bg4 9 Qe3 Qd7 is extreme-

ly complicated. After 10 Bxf6 gxf6, Black castles long and plays for attack with his two bishops) 7 Bf4 Ng6 8 Bxd6 Qxd6 9 Ne2, and here Pogats–Florian, Hungary 1955, went 9 ... Nh4 10 Qg3 Qh6! 11 0–0 0–0 =. Another idea would be 9 ... Nce7!? and 10 g3 0–0 planning ... f5–f4 or 10 Qg3 Qb6! or 10 0–0 Be6 11 Nd2 0–0–0 unclear.

6 ... Bg4

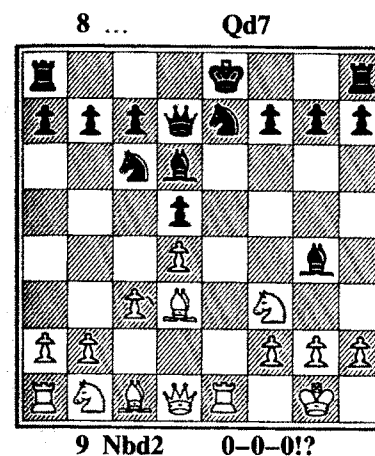
6 ... Nge7 7 Bg5!? Bg4 8 Nbd2 Qd7 9 Bh4 h6!? (9 ... Ng6 or 9 ... 0–0–0 followed by ... f6 and ... g5) 10 Bg3 0–0–0 11 Qc2!? Qe6+ 12 Kd1 f5 13 Re1 Qd7 14 Bxd6 Durham–Remlinger, Los Angeles 1981, and now 14 ... Qxd6 15 h3 Bxf3+ 16 Nxf3 g6 = (Beelby).

7 0–0 Nge7

8 Re1

8 Bg5!? Qd7 (or 8 ... f6 9 Be3!) 9 Nbd2 f6 10 Be3! (10 Bh4 0–0–0 11 Bg3 g5! ♯ with attack; a position from Randvir–Bondarevsky, Parnu 1947, and from two games of the author's) 10 ... 0–0–0 11 c4!? (11 b4 Rdg8 12 Nb3 Nd8! and on 13 Nc5, 13 ... Qe8 ♯ both watches a4 and threatens ... Qh5) 11 ... Nb4 12 Be2 dxc4 13 Nxc4 Nbd5 14 Qb3 Be6 15

Rfcl Kb8 16 Nfd2 Nf4! 17 Bf3 Bd5 18 Ne4 Ne2+! ♯ P. Marcal–Watson, St. Paul 1982.



An all-out move. Good is 9 ... 0–0 10 h3 Bf5 11 Nf1 Rae8 Tal–Korchnoi, USSR 1955, when White tried 12 Bxf5!? (12 Bg5 = *ECO*, although perhaps Black is slightly better here also, e.g. 12 ... h6 13 Bh4 Ng6 14 Bg3 Nf4) 12 ... Qxf5 13 Ne3 Qd7 14 Bd2 Nd8 15 Qc2 c6 ♯.

After 9 ... 0–0–0!?, 10 b4 is supposed to be in White's favour, but 10 ... Ng6 11 Nb3 Rde8 of Spielmann–Maroczy, Sliac 1932, is double-edged,

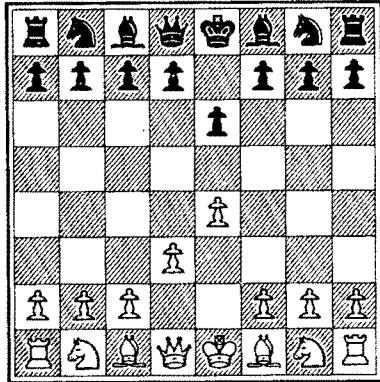
since, for example, 12 Bd2? fails to 12 ... Nh4 with the idea 13 Be2 Rxe2! 14 Qxe2 Bxf3 and ... Qh3, whereas 13 Be3 (as played) invites two possible attacks from Black: 12 ... f5!? intending ... f4 and then ... Nh4 etc., or even 12 ... Nh4(!), e.g. 13 Be2 Nf5 14 Bd2 Rxe2! 15 Qxe2 Nh4 ♯ Havski–Vladimirov, USSR 1956. *ECO* gives this last position as unclear (with Black's rook on d8 instead of h8), but it seems that White cannot defend adequately against the threat of ... Bxf3 and ... Qh3.

Having only scratched the surface of the Exchange Variation, we have seen some concrete variations, ready to employ, and enough examples to indicate the type of play required. Objectively, of course, the assessment has to read "equal"; but in all of the above examples and analysis, there is ample leeway for the better player to develop his forces, outthink his opponent, and win. Which is what chess is all about!

## 3

## King's Indian Attack

1 e4 e6 2 d3



The King's Indian Attack was used in the fifties and sixties by Petrosian and (later) by Fischer, but has not since posed a serious threat to the French Defence. At least four systems, including the old main line, grant Black equal play. None of them are much better than any other, however, due to the basic solidity of 2 d3. I will recommend here two lines, one with ... d5 (solid) and one with

... c5 (which can be rather volatile). They both grant the defender active counterplay and yet yield flexible positions not at all exhausted by theory. They begin with: 3.1 2 ... c5; 3.2 2 ... d5.

## 3.1

2 ... c5  
3 Nf3

Nc3 here or on the next several moves gives a Closed Sicilian. Black has full equality by ... Nc6, ... g6, ... Bg7, ... Nge7, ... d6 etc. (see Closed Sicilian theory; this is quite easy to play); or, if Nc3 is played before ... g6, Black can choose ... d5 with immediate equality due to the misplaced knight on c3.

3 g3 and 3 Nd2 can lead to independent lines, e.g. 3 g3 Nc6

4 Bg2 g6 5 Ne2!? Bg7 6 0-0 Nge7 7 c3 0-0 (7 ... e5 is also playable) 8 Be3 (8 d4 cxd4 9 cxd4 d5! — 9 ... Qb6 10 d5 Bxb2 11 Bxb2 Qxb2 12 dxc6! — 10 e5 f6 11 f4 fxe5 12 fxe5 Rxf1+ 13 Kxf1 Nf5 14 Nbc3 Qb6 15 Na4 Qb5 unclear/?) 8 ... b6 9 d4 cxd4 10 cxd4 d5 11 Nbc3 dxe4 12 Bxe4 Bb7 13 Qa4 a6 14 b4(?) b5 15 Qb3 Nf5  $\bar{\text{f}}$  Spivak-Watson, Los Angeles 1981.

Or 3 Nd2 Nc6 4 g3 g6 5 Bg2 Bg7 6 f4!? Nge7 7 Nf3 (7 e5!? Browne, but 7 ... d6 8 exd6 Qxd6 is  $\bar{\text{f}}$  — 9 Ne4 Qc7!) 7 ... d6 (or just 7 ... 0-0 = with 8 g4 f5 or 8 e5 d6) 8 g4!? (8 0-0 f5! Browne) 8 ... f5!? (Queried by Browne; true, 8 ... 0-0! intending ... f5 is equal, but the move played is probably okay too) 9 gxf5 gxf5?! (9 ... exf5! =) 10 Nf1 Ng6? (Last chance; it is not clear that 10 ... 0-0 11 Ng3 Qe8 is bad) 11 exf5 exf5 12 Ng3 with White advantage, Browne-Paolozzi, Lone Pine 1979.

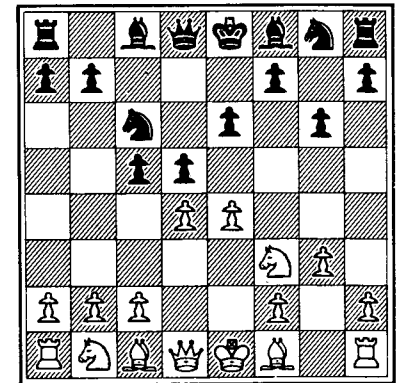
3 ... Nc6  
4 g3 g6!

A dynamic system to cut across White's plan of advancing with e5 and attacking the kingside. Of course 4 ... d5 is also fine (see 3.2). If 4 ... d5, 5 Qe2!? lets Black enter the old

main line with 5 ... Be7 6 Bg2 Nf6, the more so since White's queen should not be committed too early to e2; or he can play 5 ... Nge7 6 Bg2 g6 7 0-0 Bg7 8 e5 Qc7 9 Re1 0-0 10 c3 b5! with counterplay, Rossetto-Cobo, Havana 1964.

## 5 Bg2

A difficult alternative is 5 d4!?, with the idea that ... g6 and ... e6 do not coordinate well after 5 ... cxd4 6 Nxd4, and in fact 6 ... a6 7 Nc3 (or 7 Nxc6 bxc6 8 Bg2  $\pm$  Vasyukov-Tal, USSR 1974) 7 ... Bg7 8 Be3 Nge7 9 Bg2  $\pm$  is not easy for Black. But in Fedorowicz-Watson, New York 1977, I found what I feel is a complete answer to 5 d4, namely 5 ... d5!.



Now 6 Bb5 only helps Black after 6 ... Qb6, and if 6 dxc5 Bxc5 7 Nd2 (or 7 exd5 exd5 8 Nbd2 Nf6, transposing; here 8

Bd3? 0-0 9 0-0 Bh3 10 Re1 Ng4 is worse), 7 ... Nf6! 8 exd5 exd5 9 Nb3 (9 Qe2+? Be6 ♣) 9 ... Bb6 10 Bg2 (10 Bg5? Bxf2+; 10 Nfd4 Bg4!) 10 ... Ne4 11 0-0 (11 Nfd4? Nxf2!) 11 ... 0-0 and now, for example, 12 Bh6 Re8 13 c3 Bxf3! 14 Bxf3 (14 Qxf3 Ne5 15 Qd1 Nc4) 14 ... Qf6! threatening ... g5 and ... Ne5 with ... Rad8 etc.

So the game went 6 exd5! exd5 7 Bg2 (7 Bg5 Qb6! and 7 Be3 Bg4 8 Be2 Nge7! with the idea 9 dxc5 Nf5 are not as good) 7 ... Bg4 8 c3!? (8 dxc5 Bxc5 9 0-0 Qd7! 10 Re1+ Kf8!? intending ... h5 and, after h4, ... Nf6 is promising for Black; of course 10 ... Nge7 is playable too) 8 ... cxd4 9 0-0 Bg7 10 Qb3! and now I tried 10 ... dxc3!? 11 Qxb7 Nge7 12 Nxc3 Rb8 13 Qa6 0-0 with a complex but satisfactory game (after 14 h3!?, 14 ... Bc8! and 15 Qe2 d4 16 Ne4 Qb6 prepares ... Ba6, or 15 Qa4 d4 16 Rd1!? dxc3! etc. gives good play). The simple course was 10 ... Bxf3 11 Bxf3 Nge7 12 Qxb7 0-0, e.g. 13 Rd1 Qd6! (threatening ... Na5, or ... Ne5 and ... Rfb8) 14 Bf4? Qf6 15 Bg2 Rfb8! 16 Bxb8 Rxb8 17 Qa6 Rxb2 18 Rf1 dxc3 etc.

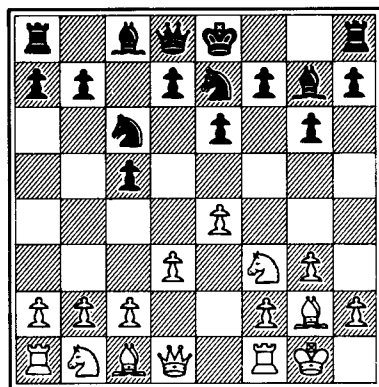
Treacherous paths in such an innocent opening!

5 ... Bg7

6 0-0

6 c3 e5 7 0-0 Nge7 transposes to 3.12 (note to 7 ... 0-0; here 7 Be3 d6 8 d4? exd4 9 cxd4 Bg4! in no way helps White), and 6 c3 Nge7 7 d4 cxd4 8 exd4 d5 will either transpose to 3.12 below, or be even better for Black, who might do without ... 0-0 to play a quicker ... f6.

6 ... Nge7



Here we have another split: 3.11 7 Re1; 3.12 7 c3.

7 Nc3 is another Closed Sicilian, but Black's set-up has been very successful against it; see, for example, the last two Spassky-Portisch Candidates matches.

7 Nbd2 is the other, fairly neutral, try: 7 ... d6!? (Note that 7 ... 0-0 8 c3 e5! discourages 9 Nb3 due to 9 ... b6 10 d4 exd4 11 cxd4 Ba6 12 Re1 Nb4!

and 13 Bf1 Bxf1 14 Kxf1 c4! with ... Nd3. But 7 ... 0-0 8 Nb3 b6 9 d4 cxd4 — 9 ... b6!? — 10 Nfxd4 a6 is unclear) 8 c3 (8 Re1 transposes to 3.11) 8 ... 0-0 (or 8 ... e5!) 9 Nb3 (9 Nh4 Rb8! 10 a4 e5! 11 f4 exf4 12 gxf4 f5 13 Nc4 Be6 14 Ne3 Qd7 15 Nd5 fxe4 ♣ P. Whitehead-Watson, Berkeley 1976) 9 ... e5 (9 ... a5 10 a4 b6, about equal) 10 d4 Na5!? 11 Nxa5 (11 dxc5!?) 11 ... Qxa5 12 dxe5 dx5 13 Qd6 Nc6 14 Be3 c4 15 Qd2 Rd8 = Tringov-Vranesic, Amsterdam 1964.

### 3.11

7 Re1 d6

Or 7 ... 0-0, and if 8 e5!?, 8 ... d6 9 exd6 Qxd6 10 Nbd2 b6 =.

8 c3

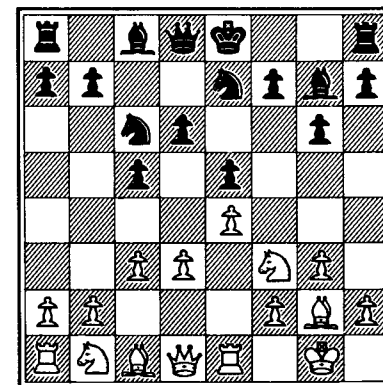
Now 8 Nbd2 is anemic, e.g. 8 ... 0-0 9 a4 (9 a3 a6!? 10 Rb1 b5 11 b4 cxb4 12 axb4 Bb7 = was Csom-Ivkov, Esbjerg 1981; more energetic would be 9 ... a5 10 a4 e5 or 9 ... h6) 9 ... h6! 10 Nc4 e5 11 Bd2 (11 Nh4 Kh7 12 f4 exf4 13 gxf4 f5 or here 13 ... Ng8 14 Nf3 Bg4) 11 ... Be6 12 Qc1 Kh7 13 h3 Qd7 14 Kh2 f5!? ♣ Williams-Watson, New York 1980.

White has no real plan here, so 14 ... f6 intending ... Rf7, ... Raf8, and ... f5 or ... d5 in some cases, was also good.

8 ... e5

Or 8 ... 0-0, in view of 9 d4?! cxd4 10 cxd4 Qb6! 11 d5 Bxb2 12 Bxb2 Qxb2 13 dxc6 (13 Nbd2 Na5 ♣ Hübner) 13 ... Qxa1 14 Qb3 (14 cxb7 Bxb7 15 Qb3 Bd5! 16 exd5 Rab8 17 Qd3 Nxd5 ♣ Hübner) 14 ... Nxc6 15 Nc3 Nd4 16 Rxa1 Nxb3 17 axb3 Bd7 ♣ Ljubojevic-Hübner, Buenos Aires 1978.

After 8 ... 0-0, 9 Na3 e5 transposes to the next note, as does 9 Be3 e5.



9 a3!?

This move has a good reputation, but it may be overrated, as b4 is no great achievement. Another approach is 9 Na3 0-0 10 Nc2, and now Weinstein-

Tapper, Boston 1972, went 10 ... h6!? 11 d4 cxd4? (11 ... exd4! Weinstein) 12 cxd4 Kh7 13 d5 ±. Actually, White's manoeuvre invites 10 ... d5! with space and a good game. A similar idea, 9 Na3 0-0 10 Be3!?, is the same as 9 Be3 0-0 10 Na3 (and not here 10 d4? exd4 11 cxd4 Bg4! with a beautiful game for Black) 10 ... b6 (intending 11 ... d5) 11 d4 exd4 12 cxd4 Bg4 13 Nc2 “=” (ECO). A complicated position; Black might try 13 ... Qd7!? 14 d5 Ne5 15 Nxe5!? Bxe5 unclear, or 13 ... Qc8, which prevents h3 and prepares ... Bh3 followed by ... f5 at some point.

9 ... 0-0

Or 9 ... a5 10 a4 0-0 =; Black plays ... h6 and ... Be6 with either ... Kh7 and ... f5 or ... b6 and ... d5 depending on what White attempts next.

10 b4 h6!?

The most ambitious move, although 10 ... b6 is playable, e.g. 11 Nbd2 Be6 12 Ng5 (12 b5!?) 12 ... Bd7 13 Nc4 h6 14 Nf3 Qc7 15 b5 Nd8! 16 a4 Rb8 17 Bd2 Be6 ♣ Britton-Watson, Philadelphia 1979.

11 Nbd2 Be6

A typical position. Now 12 Rb1 of Ivkov-Penrose, Nice 1974, can be answered by 12 ... Qd7(!) or by 12 ... cxb4 13 axb4 b5! =, the former offering more active chances. In Mercuri-Watson, Manchester 1980, White tried 12 Nb3!?, hoping for 12 ... b6 13 b5. The game continued 12 ... a5! 13 bxa5 (13 bxc5 a4 14 cxd6 Qxd6 15 Nbd2 Qxd3 ♣; 13 b5 a4! unclear, with ... f5 in the air) 13 ... Nxa5! (13 ... Qd7!?) 14 Nxa5 Qxa5 15 Bb2 (15 Qc2!?) 15 ... Nc6 16 Qc2, and instead of my 16 ... Ra7!? ♣, 16 ... b5! 17 Nd2 Qa4! keeps a clear edge.

### 3.12

7 c3

White reasons that in positions like those of 3.11, Re1 was not very useful, so why not skip that move?

7 ... 0-0!?

A change of strategy. Black allows d4 and then plans to assault that square as in the Advance Variation. It is worth noting that 7 ... e5, as in 3.11, is still reasonable, e.g. 8 Be3 d6 9 d4?! (9 h3 f5! 10 exf5 Nxf5 11

Bg5 Qb6 =; 9 Qd2 0-0 10 Na3 f5! 11 Bh6 f4! 12 Bxg7 Kxg7 13 d4 cxd4 14 cxd4 Bg4! ♣ Campo-Watson, Mexico 1976) 9 ... exd4 10 exd4 Bg4! 11 dxc5 dxc5! 12 Qc1 0-0!? (12 ... b6) 13 Nbd2 (13 Bxc5!?) 13 ... b6 ♣ Hug-Hort, Petropolis 1973.

8 d4

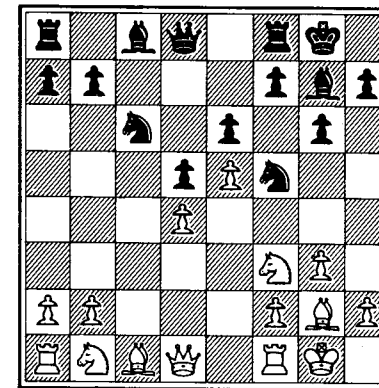
Critical. 8 Be3 b6 9 d4 cxd4 10 Nxd4!? Bd7 11 Nxc6 Bxc6 12 Qd6?! Nc8 13 Qd2 Qc7 14 Na3 Qb7! 15 Rfe1 b5 ♣ was Radulov-Taimanov, Leningrad 1973. Here 10 ... Ba6!? 11 Re1 Ne5 12 f4 Nd3 13 Re2 Nc5! 14 Rd2 Bb7 15 Qc2 a5 is also interesting. Instead of 10 Nxd4, 10 cxd4 was recommended, when White perhaps feared 10 ... d5 11 e5 Nf5, e.g. 12 Bg5 f6 or 12 Bf4 f6, although then 13 h4 is complex.

Another defensive formation would be 8 Be3 b6 9 d4 d6!?, e.g. 10 e5!? (10 Na3 Bb7 11 dxc5 dxc5 12 Nc4? Ba6! 13 Qa4 Na5 14 Nfd2 Qe8 etc.; 10 d5?! exd5 11 exd5 Na5!, e.g. 12 Na3 Bb7 13 Ne1 Ba6! etc.) 10 ... Ba6 11 exd6 (11 Re1? dxe5) 11 ... Nd5 12 Re1 cxd4 13 Nxd4 Qxd6 and 14 Qa4 Bb7 or 14 Nxc6 Qxc6.

8 ... cxd4  
9 cxd4 d5

Now 9 ... Qb6? is mistaken after 10 d5 Bxb2 11 Bxb2 Qxb2 12 dxc6 Qxa1 13 cxd7.

10 e5 Nf5



The key position, hardly explored. Black intends ... f6 and possibly ... Qb6/c7 to attack White's centre. I have played/analysed as follows from the diagram:

(a) 11 Na3!? (to guard d4 by Nc2) can be met violently by 11 ... f6! 12 g4 (12 exf6 Bxf6 13 Nc2 Qb6 ♣; 12 Re1!? Qb6 13 Nc2 Bd7 14 g4 Nfe7 or even 14 ... Nfxd4!?) 15 Ncx4 fxe5 16 Nxc6 bxc6 unclear) 12 ... fxe5!! 13 gxf5 e4 14 Ne5! (14 Ng5 Rxf5 15 f4 Bxd4+; 14 Bg5? Qb6 15 f6 exf3 16 fxg7 Rf5 ♣) 14 ... Nxe5! (14 ... Nxd4?! 15 Qxd4 Rxf5 16 Nac4 b5! with tremendous complications, Bonin-Watson, New York

1979) 15 dxe5 Bxe5, and with only two pawns for the piece Black has compensation, e.g. 16 f4!? exf3 17 Rxf3 Rxf5! 18 Rxf5 gxf5 makes it three pawns with a surprising attack still in the air (19 Qh5 Bd7! or 19 Nc4!? Bf6). Or 16 fxc6 Qh4 17 h3 Rf3 (or 17 ... Bd7!?), when Black at least draws: 18 gxh7+! Qxh7!? (18 ... Kxh7 19 Bxf3 Qxh3 20 Bxe4+ dxe4 21 f4 Qg3+ only draws as 21 ... Bd7 22 Qxd7+ Kh8 23 Kf2! escapes) 19 Qd2 (19 Bxf3? Qxh3; 19 Be3 Bd7 20 Re1 Raf8 or 20 Nc4 Bc7 21 Re1 Raf8 ♯) 19 ... Rxa3 and if 20 Qg5+, 20 ... Qg7 21 Qd8+ Kf7!? is a risky try. Black can always opt for 18 ... Kxh7 instead.

(b) 11 Nc3 f6 12 Re1! (The toughest. 12 Bf4 g5! 13 exf6 — 13 Bc1 g4 14 Ne1 fxe5 ♯ — 13 ... Bxf6 14 Be5 g4! 15 Bxf6 Qxf6 16 Ne5 h5!. Also, 12 g4!? was tried in Lombardy–Watson, Columbus 1977, and 12 ... Nh4!? 13 Nxh4 fxe5 14 Nf3 exd4 15 Ne2 e5 led to complications and finally a draw. Actually, just 12 ... Nfe7 13 exf6 Rxf6! 14 Bg5 Rf7 is fine; on 15 Qd2, for example, 15 ... Qf8! hits f3 and covers h6) 12 ... Qb6!? (12 ... fxe5? 13 dxe5 Bd7 14 Bf4 h6 15 h4 Be8 ± was slow in Timman–Ljubojevic, Hilversum 1973; but 12 ... h6 is

also interesting, e.g. 13 Bf4!? g5 14 exf6 Bxf6 15 Be5 g4 16 Nd2 Nfxd4 17 Qxg4+ Kh7, or 13 h4 Qb6! 14 Na4 Qc7 15 Bf4 g5 16 exf6 gxf4 17 fxg7 Qxg7 and Black looks better. The immediate 13 g4 is more of a problem, e.g. 13 ... Nfe7 14 exf6 Rxf6 15 g5 hxg5 16 Bxg5 Rf7 with a tough position) 13 Na4 (to defend the d-pawn) 13 ... Qc7, and now e5 is attacked, but 14 Bf4(?) g5! 15 exf6 gxf4 16 fxg7 Qxg7 or 14 exf6 Bxf6 and d4 will fall. So 14 g4 is apparently necessary, and yet 14 ... Nfe7 15 exf6 Bxf6 16 Bh6 Bg7 looks okay, while 14 ... fxe5!? 15 gxf5 e4 might be a try for attack.

Of course these are just ideas, and the whole variation is too complex to reach a definite conclusion. So much the better for over-the-board! If your tastes are more civilized, however, the 7 ... e5 option is a good bet, or you may wish to look into the line which follows:

### 3.2

2 ...	d5
3 Nd2	c5

I should also mention that the system with 3 ... Nf6 4 Ngf3 b6 has been doing well for Black.

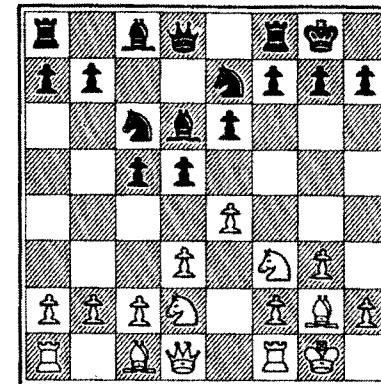
4 Ngf3	Nc6
5 g3	Bd6!?

Recommended as a second system because it is sound and still relatively unanalysed. For an alternate alternative (or when facing other move orders), there is 5 ... Nf6 6 Bg2 Be7 7 0–0 Qc7 8 Re1 b6, which has steadily gained popularity in international praxis. Black will usually follow up with ... Bb7 in conjunction with ... 0–0–0 and a kingside pawn storm.

6 Bg2	Nge7
7 0–0	0–0

Here Black has the opportunity to muddy the waters by playing 7 ... Qc7!? or 7 ... b6 with the idea of deferring castling and perhaps going queenside. On 7 ... Qc7!? 8 Nh4 (looks tempting, to play f4 and e5), 8 ... g5 (8 ... Be5!?, e.g. 9 f4 Bf6 to Nh3 g6, or 9 Ndf3 Bf6 10 Exd5 Nxd5) 9 Nf3 h6 is possible, with ... Bd7 and ... 0–0–0 to come. Or 7 ... Qc7 8 Re1 Bd7 9 Qe2 f6 is quite playable; compare 8 Re1 Qc7 below.

If 7 ... b6 8 Nh4, 8 ... Be5!? 9 f4 Bf6 10 Nh3 g6 11 e5 Bg7 seems more effective than 8



Nh4 Be5 below, because 12 c3 Ba6! prevents d4.

Black's strategy here is based on controlling e5, and to this end he is willing to play ... Qc7, ... Ng6, and/or ... f6 if necessary. Given time, he can either expand with ... d4 and ... e5, fianchetto his queen's bishop, or strike at the centre with ... f5. For the present, White has to get his pieces out, so he usually chooses 3.21 8 Re1; 3.22 8 Nh4.

8 c3 or 8 Qe2 may transpose, but they give Black extra options, e.g. 8 c3 b6 9 Re1 dxe4 10 dxe4 Ba6 = or 8 Qe2 e5!? (8 ... Qc7 or 8 ... Bc7 or 8 ... f6 are normal; see below) 9 exd5 (9 c3 d4 10 Nc4 f6) 9 ... Nxd5 and Black looks okay, e.g. 10 Nc4 Bg4 11 c3 f6 or 10 Ng5 Nd4! 11 Qh5 Nf6 12 Qd1 Bg4! etc.

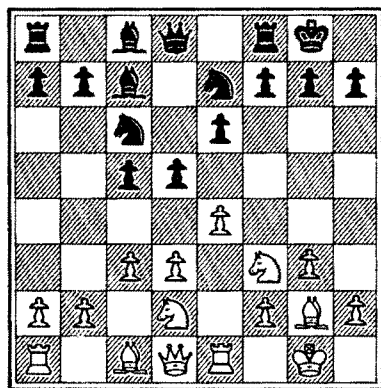
## 3.21

## 8 Re1

Not so sharp as 8 Nh4. Here White keeps his eye on d4 and e5, intending 9 c3 and 10 e5.

## 8 ... Qc7

This is a matter of taste. 8 ... Bc7 is a good alternative: 9 c3 (9 e5? Ng6 ♯; 9 exd5 Nxd5 10 Ne4 b6 =; 9 Nh4!? of Nikolic-Schmidt, Vrnjacka Banja 1981, resembles 8 Nh4. Schmidt played normally with 9 ... b6, but 9 ... e5! seems the best way to exploit the offside knight)



And now:

(a) 9 ... b6 is the main move: 10 e5 (10 exd5 should be answered by 10 ... Nxd5!, e.g. 11 Nc4 Bb7 12 d4 cxd4 13 Nxd4 Nxd4 14 Qxd4 b5! 15 Ne3 Bb6 16 Qd1 ½-½ Campora-Velikovic, Vrsac 1981) 10 ... a5 (or

10 ... Kh8 intending a timely ... f6) 11 Nf1 Ba6 12 h4 d4 13 c4 Qd7 14 N1h2 Sznajik-Karpov, Skopje 1972, and now 14 ... f6! leaves White nothing better than 15 exf6 (15 Ng4!? f5 16 Ngh2 b5!) 15 ... gxf6, which transposes to the game. That went 14 ... f5?! 15 exf6? (15 a4! ± Karpov) 15 ... gxf6 16 Ng4 (16 Bh3 Nf5 17 Ng4 Kh8 Karpov) 16 ... e5! 17 Bh3 Qe8 (or 17 ... Qd6 Karpov) 18 Bh6 Rf7 19 Bd2 Kh8 ♯.

(b) 9 ... Rb8!? 10 e5 (10 exd5 exd5!? 11 Nb3 Pytel) 10 ... b6 11 d4 Nf5! 12 Nf1 f6 13 exf6 Qxf6 14 Bg5?! Qg6 15 Qd2 cxd4 16 cxd4 Bd6 (16 ... Ncx4!?) 17 Ne5 Nxe5 18 dxe5 Bc5 19 Bf4 a5 ♯ Ostojic-Pytel, Kikinda 1976.

(c) 9 ... a5!? 10 a4 b6 11 exd5 exd5 12 d4 Bg4 (“=” ECO) Medina-Portisch, Palma de Mallorca 1967.

(d) Other moves are 9 ... Ng6!? 10 h4 b6 (Karpov) and 9 ... f6!? (Pytel).

## 9 c3

9 Qe2!? f6! 10 c3 need not transpose to the text as Black has 10 ... d4 (“!” Rosenberg) 11 Nc4 e5 and 12 Bd2 (12 a4 Be6) 12 ... b5! 13 Nxd6 Qxd6 14 a4 was Rosenberg-Bukhman, USSR 1974, when 14 ... Rb8! ♯ (Rosenberg) was best.

9 b3?! clearly misplaces the queen's bishop: 9 ... Bd7 10 Bb2 d4! 11 Nc4 e5 12 a4 b6 13 Qd2 f6 ♯ Calvo-Karpov, Madrid 1973. Black later engineered an ... f5 break.

9 ... Bd7  
10 Qe2 f6!

With a fine position for Black, as seen from:

(a) 11 Nf1 d4 12 Bd2 e5 (“♯” Gufeld) 13 Rec1 Rfc8! 14 h3 Be6 15 N1h2 Qd7 16 h4 (16 g4 Ng6 17 Nf1 Bf8 ♯ Gufeld) 16 ... b5 17 cxd4 cxd4 18 Ne1 a5 19 f4 Bb4 ♯ A. Zaitsev-Gufeld, USSR Ch 1969.

(b) 11 Nf1 Rae8 12 Bd2 a6!? 13 a3 d4 14 Rab1 e5 15 Rec1 Be6 16 b4 dxc3 17 Bxc3 Qd7 18 N1d2 b5 ♯ Caldwell-Sax, London 1980.

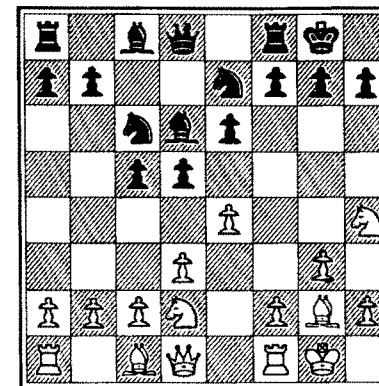
## 3.22

## 8 Nh4

(see following diagram)

A dangerous move, preparing f4 and e5 followed by Qh5, Ndf3 etc. Fischer used 8 Nh4 to defeat Ivkov in Santa Monica 1966, but since then several better defensive schemes have emerged.

## 8 ... Bd7!?



Neither much better nor much worse than other tries:

(a) 8 ... b6 was the defence in Fischer-Ivkov. After 9 f4, 9 ... f6 10 Re1 Bc7 11 c3 a5 = of Sax-Ligterink, Amsterdam 1976, was a solid answer; rather than 9 ... dxe4!? 10 dxe4 Ba6 11 Re1 when Black, instead of Ivkov's 11 ... c4? 12 c3 ±, should play 11 ... Bc7!, e.g. 12 e5 Qd7 13 Kh1 (13 Qh5 Qd4+ 14 Kh1 Qf2 15 Nh3 Nd4 16 Ne4 Qxc2 17 Nxd4 cxd4 18 Ng5 Qg6 19 Qxg6 hxc6 20 Bxa8 Rxa8 unclear — Minic) 13 ... Rad8 14 Qh5 Nf5 15 Ne4 Ncd4 16 g4! Nxh4 17 Qxh4 f6! =/ unclear (Black is shooting for ... Nxc2) Minic-Sax, Vinkovci 1976.

(b) 8 ... Be5!? 9 f4 Bf6 10 Nh3 g6 11 c3 Bg7 12 e5 b6 (“=” ECO) 13 Rf2 Ba6 14 d4 cxd4 15 cxd4 Qd7 16 Nf1 ±

Zuckerman–Vasyukov, Polanica Zdroj 1972.

(c) 8 ... f5!? 9 f4 Bc7 10 exd5 exd5 11 Re1 Rf6! 12 c3 Be6 (“=” Weinstein) Hug–Ivkov, Palma de Mallorca 1972.

(d) 8 ... Qc7 9 f4 f6 10 c3 Bd7 11 Qh5 Be8 12 Qe2 Bf7 = Rigo–Sax, Hungarian Ch 1976.

This last sequence is a very logical one, to my mind.

9 f4 f5  
10 b3!?

10 e5? Bc7 suits Black fine, since his kingside is safe and he can advance on the other wing. And 10 exd5 exd5 11 Re1 is somewhat less pointed than in Hug–Ivkov due to 11 ... Be8! and 12 N(either)f3 Bh5 or 12 c3 Bf7.

The main option is 10 c3 Kh8 11 Kh1 b5 (or 11 ... Be8 =) 12 Ndf3 b4 13 c4 Bc7 14 exd5 exd5 15 Ng5 dxc4! 16 Qh5 h6 17

Ng6+ Kg8 18 Nxf8 Qxf8 19 Nf3 Be8 20 Qh3 cxd3 21 Be3 Bb6 (21 ... c4!) 22 Rac1 Rd8 23 Rfd1 ½–½ Ciocaltea–Padevsky, Istanbul 1975.

10 ... b5  
11 exf5 exf5  
12 Bb2 Qb6  
13 Kh1 Rae8

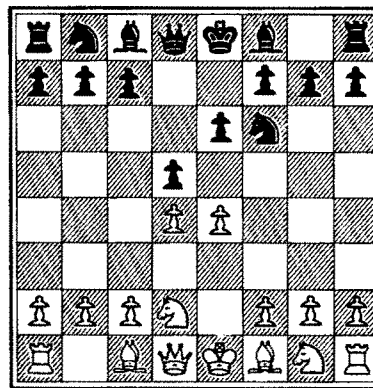
A position from Harding–Penrose, England 1972. Black has developed smoothly and managed to refute White’s attack after 14 Qh5 Nb4! 15 Ndf3 d4 16 Rf2? (16 Rael ♣) 16 ... Ned5 17 a3? Nf6 18 Qg5 Ng4 19 Rd2 Be7 20 Qh5 g6 ♣♣.

As one can see, the King’s Indian Attack does not in any way challenge the validity of the French Defence. It is rather a safe system which can lead to interesting and double-edged play if that is what Black wants.

## 4

## Tarrasch: 3 ... Nf6 with 5 Bd3

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nd2 Nf6



Due in part to its espousal by world champion Karpov, 3 Nd2 has become the most popular method of combatting the French Defence. It enjoys the reputation of being safe, and yet leading to a certain pull. In the words of Keene and Taulbut, “White’s plus does not entirely evaporate and, more importantly from a practical point of view, White can play to win without exposing himself to serious risk of losing.”

While these thoughts may apply to 3 ... c5 4 exd5 exd5 (for 4 ... Qxd5, see Chapter 6), they do not at all describe the situation after 3 ... Nf6. By immediately attacking the centre and provoking 4 e5, Black creates a permanent imbalance, after which play is not only unclear, but full of risk for both sides. I have played 3 ... Nf6 for some years with good success, and to this day know of no reason it should be considered inferior to 3 ... c5. From a strategic point of view, Black’s loss of tempo after 4 e5 Nfd7 is balanced by White’s loss of tempo with Nd2. That piece will inevitably have to move again, and if it goes to f3 (the usual square), the king’s knight has lost *its* most natural post and will often head for c3 via e2. In that case, White has spent four moves to play Nf3 and Nc3, no small concession for establishing his centre.

Once e5 is in, Black plans to lay siege to the pawn chain by ... c5 and ... f6. White then has two basic approaches. The d4 pawn must be defended regardless, and you will seldom see an effective dxc5 by White. But e5 can be held by pawns (via 5 f4; see Chapter 5) or it can be defended by pieces, as in this chapter. With Black's knights on d7 and c6, this usually means that White will play exf6 in response to ... f6, after which the game revolves around control of d4 and e5. Other key ideas are best explained by example.

#### 4 e5

4 Bd3 can transpose after 4 ... c5 5 e5 Nfd7 6 c3 etc., and here 5 exd5 Qxd5! ♞ is a pleasant version of Chapter 6 (Black is attacking g2 and d4). 5 dxc5 has the serious drawback of 5 ... dxe4 6 Nxe4 Nxe4 7 Bxe4 Qxd1+ 8 Kxd1 Bxc5. After 9 Ke1 or 9 Ke2, the play is dull but not completely dead, e.g. Black can prepare to advance his centre pawns. And the move 5 ... Bxc5, criticized on account of 6 Qe2 0-0 7 Ngf3 Nc6 8 0-0 (8 e5 Ng4 9 0-0 f6 10 exf6 Nxf6) 8 ... Qc7 9 c3 ± Westerinen-Uhlmann, Hastings 1972/3, is also okay if Black plays 8 ... Bb6! (instead of

8 ... Qc7?!), e.g. 9 e5 (9 c3 Bc7 or 9 ... e5!?) 9 ... Nd7 10 c4 Bc7 11 cxd5 exd5 12 e6 Nc5 13 exf7+ Rxf7 (♞?) 14 Bb1 Bg4 15 Qe3 Qd6 16 g3 h6 17 Nd4 Bb6 ♞ Ghinda-Farago, Romania 1982. Finally, 6 ... Nc6 7 Ngf3 (7 exd5 Qxd5) 7 ... e5!? looks playable, if risky, e.g. 8 exd5 (8 0-0 Bg4; 8 Bb5 0-0 9 Bxc6 bxc6 10 Nxe5 Re8 etc.) 8 ... Qxd5 9 Ne4 (9 0-0 Bg4) 9 ... Be7 (or even 9 ... Bg4!? 10 Nxc5 Qxc5).

4 ... Nfd7  
5 Bd3

(a) 5 Ngf3 may be more accurate if White wants to play the gambit line 5 ... c5 6 c3 Nc6 7 Bd3 etc. (for 7 Be2, see note (c)), but in our repertoire this does not matter. 5 Ngf3 attains independent significance if White responds to 5 ... c5 with 6 c4!? (6 Bb5!? Nc6 7 0-0 cxd4 is harmless at best). *ECO* gives 6 c4 Be7 7 cxd5 exd5 8 dxc5 0-0 9 Nb3 Nc6 10 Be2 Nxc5 with free play, Klamán-Petrosian, USSR 1957. Of course there is more to it, e.g. Soltis showed me 8 Qb3!?, after which 8 ... c4? 9 Qb5 leaves the d-pawn hanging, so 8 ... Nc6! 9 Qxd5 cxd4 should be tried, e.g. 10 Bb5 (10 ... Ndx5 was threatened) 10 ... Nb4 (or 10 ... 0-0!? 11 Bxc6 bxc6 12

Qxc6 Rb8 with complications) 11 Qe4 a6 12 Ba4 0-0 13 Qxd4(!?) Nc5 14 Qxd8 Rxd8 15 Bd1 Ncd3+ 16 Kf1 Nxc1 and 17 ... Nxa2 with two bishops and White weaknesses. Clearer for Black would be simply 6 ... cxd4, which uses counter-pressure on e5 after, for example, 7 cxd5 exd5 8 Nb3 Bb4+! 9 Bd2 Bxd2+ 10 Qxd2 Nc6; here 8 Bb5 a6 9 Bxd7+ Nxd7 gains the two bishops as compensation for the isolani.

(b) 5 Ndf3 is almost never seen, and may transpose after 5 ... c5 6 c3 Nc6 7 Bd3 to 7 Ndf3!? below. Here 7 Nh3!? cxd4 8 cxd4 f6 9 Nf4 (9 exf6) 9 ... Bb4+ 10 Bd2 Qe7 = was Bannik-Korchnoi, USSR Ch 1957. Instead, 7 ... Qa5!? looks good, since 8 Bd2 Qb6 or 8 dxc5 Ndx5 presents no problems.

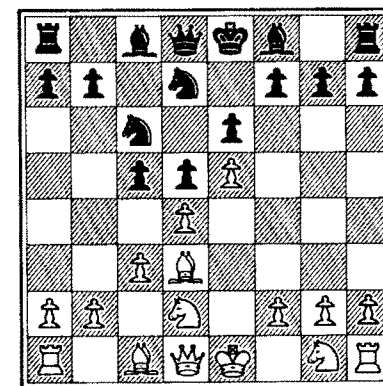
(c) 5 c3 c5 usually transposes. Independent was 6 Ne2 Nc6 7 f4!? of Muhlin-Korchnoi, USSR 1969, when 7 ... f6 8 Nf3 Qb6 would be Chapter 5 (8 Ne2), and 7 ... cxd4 8 cxd4 Nb6 is another good idea, transposing to a Leningrad Variation where White has played Ne2, not the most dangerous line. Korchnoi chose 7 ... b6 8 a3 (8 Qa4!?) 8 ... Ba6 instead, with equality following 9 Nf3 Be7 10 g3 g6!? 11 h4!? h5 12 Bh3 Qc7.

A different reason for 5 c3 is 5 ... c5 6 Ngf3 Nc6 7 Be2!?, but this is effectively met by 7 ... Qb6 8 Nb3 cxd4 9 cxd4 a5, e.g. 10 a4 Bb4+ 11 Kf1 0-0 12 g3 f6 13 exf6 Nxf6 14 Kg2 Chiburdanidze-Vladimirov, USSR 1979; and now 14 ... Bd6! (Chiburdanidze; "♞" *ECO*), when 15 Be3 can be met by 15 ... Ng4. After 15 Rf1, however, it is about equal, with ... Bd7 and ... Rae8 being a good plan.

5 ... c5  
6 c3

On 6 Ngf3, simplest is 6 ... Nc6 7 c3 with 4.1 below, but 6 ... cxd4 7 0-0 Nc6 8 Re1 Bb4! gave Black an edge in Gromer-Czerniak, 1940.

6 ... Nc6



Now White can play gambit-style or try for a long-term

positional edge: 4.1 7 Ngf3; 4.2 7 Ne2.

7 Ndf3!? can transpose after 7 ... Qb6 8 Ne2, or Black can play for more with 7 ... Qa5!?, when ECO gives 8 Bd2 b5!? 9 Ne2!? (9 c4!) 9 ... b4 10 0-0 Ba6  $\bar{f}$ . For one thing, 8 Bd2 can be met by 8 ... Qb6! ( $\bar{f}$ , at least); yet an opponent of mine found the better 8 Kf1(!) in a game which went 8 ... Qb6 9 Ne2 cxd4 10 cxd4 f6 11 exf6 Nxf6 12 Nf4 and White played g3, Kg2, etc. Black is still a bit better; compare the main lines of 4.2 below.

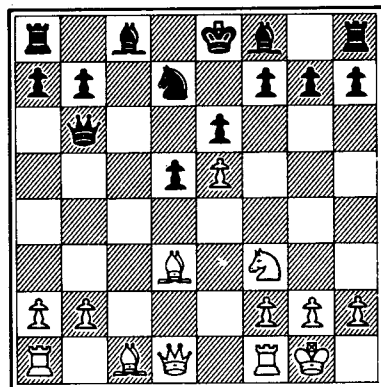
#### 4.1

##### 7 Ngf3

An old gambit which caught on again in 1978 through GM Nunn's successful use of it.

##### 7 ... f5!?

This is, I believe, an original idea which I will recommend here as being both simpler to learn and less drawish than the usual 7 ... Qb6. But it is well to know how that line goes, too: 8 0-0 (8 a3?! cxd4! 9 cxd4 f6  $\bar{f}$ ) 8 ... cxd4 (8 ... Be7 9 dxc5! intending 9 ... Qc7 10 Nb3 Ndx5 11 Bf4  $\pm$ ) 9 cxd4 Nxd4 10 Nxd4 Qxd4 11 Nf3 Qb6



12 Qa4!? (It seems that 12 Qc2 at best transposes after 12 ... Qc5 to the line 12 Qa4 Qb4 13 Qc2 Qc5; moreover, there are ideas like 12 ... h6 13 Bf4 Nc5!? 14 Be3 Bd7 or here 14 ... Qb4 to contend with) 12 ... Qb4 13 Qc2 Qc5!? (Again the "main" line, but here Black can also deviate with 13 ... Nc5 14 Bd2!? Qa4 15 b3 Qd7 = intending ... b6 and ... Ba6 Nunn-Moles, England 1971, Estrin-Bergdahl, corres 1977, and Soltis-Bradford, USA 1978. Or 13 ... Be7!? 14 Be3 Nc5 unclear or here 14 h3 Nc5 15 Bd2 Qb6 16 Be3 Bd7 = Andre-Farago, Dortmund 1978; but not 14 Bxh7? Nxe5! 15 Nxe5 Qh4) 14 Qe2 (14 Bxh7 b6 15 Qb1 — 15 Bf4 Ba6 16 Rfc1 Qxc2 Furman-Uhlmann, Polanica Zdroj 1967 — 15 ... Ba6 16 Be3 Qb4! = — various) 14 ... Be7 (14 ...

Qb6 15 Be3 Bc5 = Nunn-Farago, Helsinki 1981) 15 Bd2!? (15 Be3 Qa5 16 Qc2 h6 = Nunn) 15 ... 0-0 16 Rac1 Qb6 17 Bb1, and aside from 17 ... f5 18 exf6 Nxf6 =/unclear of Nunn-Mednis, Budapest 1978, 17 ... Qxb2 18 Rc3 ("unclear" — Nunn) 18 ... Nc5!? looks quite playable, since 19 Rxc5 Bxc5 20 Bxh7+ Kxh7 21 Ng5+ Kg8 peters out after 22 Qh5 Qc2 or 22 Qd3 Re8. So if Black wants equality, a number of move orders suffice in this line.

##### 8 exf6

The only move with some pedigree, in that it can be played after 7 ... f6 too (but usually it is not, as it is considered harmless). Yet White lacks another good plan, e.g. after 8 0-0, Black could play 8 ... Be7 intending ... 0-0 and, say, ... Qb6 when d4 can be a sore point (9 c4!? dxc4 10 Bxc4 Nb6 does not help much). Also 8 0-0 cxd4 9 cxd4 Nb6 is promising, now that the kingside is secure (as opposed to 7 ... cxd4 8 cxd4 Nb6, when any ... f5 or ... f6 is immediately answered by exf6). In this case, Black has the usual Leningrad ideas of ... Bd7, ... Qc7 and attack along the c-file or — if a3 — ... a5-a4. He can also consider new ideas such as ... Be8-h5 or

even attack with ... g5 at the right moment. In the meantime, White will be frustrated trying to start anything on the kingside, as he can easily grant Black chances in that sphere too.

##### 8 ... Nxf6

8 ... Qxf6 is recommended in various books, but the text is probably more logical. It prepares to develop with ... Bd6 and ... 0-0 before undertaking central operations.

A sample line with 8 ... Nxf6 might be 9 0-0 Bd6 10 Re1 0-0 11 Nf1 (11 Ne5 cxd4 12 Nxc6 bxc6 13 cxd4 c5 with good play) 11 ... cxd4 12 cxd4 Qb6 with a strong version of the typical 7 Ne2 Qb6 positions below. White can try to establish a hold more quickly, e.g. by 9 Ne5!?, but then 9 ... cxd4 10 Nxc6 (10 cxd4 Nxd4 11 Qa4+ Nc6  $\bar{f}$ ) 10 ... bxc6 11 cxd4 c5 is fine. A bit better would be 9 Bb5!?, when 9 ... Bd6 (9 ... Qb6 10 Qe2 unclear) 10 Ne5 Qb6 11 Qa4 0-0!? is interesting: 12 Bxc6 bxc6 13 Qxc6 cxd4! 14 cxd4 Bxe5 15 Qxb6 axb6 16 dxe5 Nd7 17 Nf3 Ba6 with compensation, as Black threatens ... Rf5 and ... Bd3-e4 as well as ... Bc4 and ... Nc5. Or 12 Nxc6 bxc6 13 Bxc6 Rb8 14 0-0 (else ... Ba6) 14 ... cxd4 15

cx d4 Rf7! intending ... Rc7 and ... Ba6.

These are just examples of the play, yet one can see that 7 ... f5 gives a double-edged game with all the pieces on, instead of the rather passive (but pawn up) undertaking with 7 ... Qb6. Both moves are fully playable, in my opinion.

## 4.2

### 7 Ne2

Introducing the key variation of the 5 Bd3 line, probably the only variation which seriously threatens the theoretical status of 3 ... Nf6. White will play his queen's knight to f3, castle kingside, and hold the centre.

### 7 ... Qb6

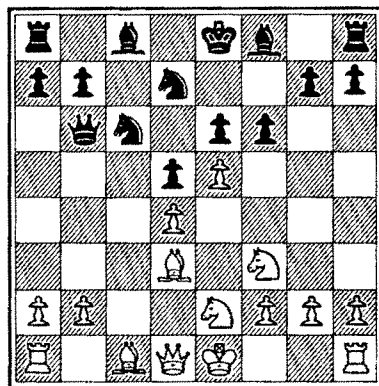
The oldest and most consistent move. Black pressures d4 and b2, thus restricting White's options over the next six or seven moves. 7 ... cx d4 8 cx d4 Qb6 is equivalent.

### 8 Nf3

Note that 8 0-0!? cx d4 9 cx d4 Nxd4 10 Nxd4 Qxd4 11 Nf3 transposes back into the gambit line of 4.1. But here 9 ... f6 10 ex f6 Nxf6 11 Nf3 is the text, and 10 Nf4!? can be met by the

usual 10 ... Nxd4!? 11 Qh5+ Ke7 12 Ng6+ hxg6 13 ex f6+ Nxf6 14 Qxh8 Kf7 unclear, or by 10 ... fxe5!? e.g. 11 Nxe6 e4 12 Qh5+ g6 13 Qxd5 Nf6! 14 Qg5 Be7 with very promising play, or 11 Qh5+ Ke7 12 Ng6+ (12 Qh4+ Nf6; 12 Qg5+ Kf7) 12 ... hxg6 13 Qxh8 e4! with ... Nxd4 or ... Qxd4 as appropriate.

8 ... cx d4  
9 cx d4 f6



### 10 ex f6

The almost universal choice. Notable attempts to force the issue:

(a) 10 Nf4!? fxe5 11 dxe5 (11 Nxe6?! e4! 12 Bf4 Nde5 13 dxe5 Bxe6 14 Ng5 Bf5 15 Be2 Bb4+ 16 Kf1 Rd8 17 Bg4 0-0 with an obvious advantage, Barden-Wade, Hastings 1958/9) 11 ... Bb4+ (11 ... Ncxe5 12 0-0 Nxd3 13 Nxd3 Bd6 14 Be3

unclear A. Anderson-Wikstrom, corres 1968; 12 Nxe5 Nxe5 13 Qh5+ Nf7 14 Bxh7 Bb4+ transposes) 12 Kf1 Ndx e5 15 Nxe5 Nxe5 14 Qh5+ Nf7 15 Bxh7 Qd4! ("15 ... Bd7 16 Ng6 Bb5+ 17 Kg1 Bc5 ♣" ECO; but 18 g3! looks equal. 15 ... Qd4 threatens 16 ... Rxh7! as well as 16 ... e5) 16 Be3 Qxb2 17 Rc1 Qe5 ("♣" ECO, but ...) 18 Qd1! Rxh7 19 Qa4+ Bd7 20 Qxb4 Rc8 21 Rxc8+ (21 Ng6!? makes Black work for his gains, e.g. 21 ... Rxc1+ 22 Bxc1 Qd6 23 Qxb7 Nd8! 24 Qa8 — 24 Qxa7 e5 — 24 ... Rxh2! etc. and ♣) 21 ... Bxc8 22 Ng6 Qd6 ♣ Menke-Wilde, corres 1957. Thus 10 Nf4!? falls a little short.

(b) 10 Nc3!? was first tried against me by Shamkovich in the 1976 US Open: 10 ... fxe5 11 dxe5 g6! (11 ... Ndx e5 12 Nxe5 Nxe5 13 Qh5+ Nf7 14 Bb5+ Ke7 15 0-0 "unclear" ECO; but Black is getting mauled) 12 Be3 (forced) 12 ... Qa5!? 13 Bd2! Ndx e5? (13 ... Bg7! 14 Nb5 is Shamkovich's suggestion, with unclear play since the e-pawn will fall) 14 Nxe5 Nxe5 15 Bb5+ Bd7 16 Qe2 Bg7 17 f4! Nc6 18 Nxd5 Qd8 19 Bxc6 bxc6 20 Bc3! with a clear edge. Shamkovich gave the line 12 ... Qxb2 13 Nb5 Bb4+ 14 Kf1 0-0 15 Nc7 Rb8

16 Nxe6 "±" in his notes; so in the first round of a US Open in Columbus 1977 I got ersatz revenge when Chris Hendrickson (playing up by 1200 rating points or so) demonstrated the flaw to Shamkovich personally by 16 ... Rxf3! 17 gxf3 Ndx e5 ♣. Best is 15 Rb1 Qxa2 16 Ra1 etc. with a draw. Of historical interest: Shamkovich showed the game to Fischer, who recommended 12 ... Bc5. That move is about equal, I think; at any rate, this may be Fischer's last, (now-) published analysis!

(c) 10 0-0!? fxe5 11 dxe5 Ndx e5 12 Nxe5 Nxe5 13 Nf4 is given by ECO, quoting 13 ... Nxd3 14 Nxd3 (Here 14 Qh5+!? g6 15 Nxc6 hxg6 16 Qxh8 gives White some chances. Wunsch-Richter, corres 1976 continued 16 ... e5(?) 17 Bh6 Qd6 18 Rad1 Bf5 19 g4! etc.; but this is not so convincing, e.g. 16 ... Nxc1 should suffice) 14 ... Bd6 (14 ... Be7 15 Qh5+ g6 16 Qe5 0-0 17 Bh6 Bf6 18 Qg3 intending Ne5 and h4-h5 unclear was Flanery-Whelan, Ireland 1976; 14 ... g6!? Minev) 15 Qh5+ g6 16 Qh6 Kanajan-Kotov, USSR 1956, with some pressure for the pawn.

All of this is not very clear. Perhaps omitting 13 ... Nxd3 by 13 ... Bd6 would be produc-

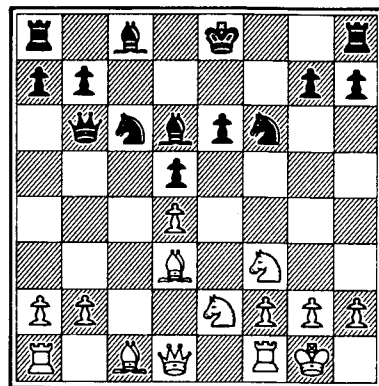
tive, e.g. 14 Qh5+ Nf7 and 15 Bxh7 Bxf4 16 Bxf4 Qxb2 (17 Rae1 Qf6 18 Be5 Rxh7!); or here 15 Nxe6? Bxe6 16 Rfe1 Be7 or 15 Be3 Qd8 16 Bb5+ Kf8 planning ... Qf6.

Some more games would be helpful here, but I am sceptical about 10 0-0, since White does not even have much lead in development to compensate for the loss of a pawn and the centre.

10 ... Nxf6  
11 0-0

11 Bf4!? Qxb2 12 0-0 Be7 13 Rb1 Qa3 of Sznapić-Farago, Polanica Zdroj 1978, led to a quick Black win, but not necessarily from the opening concept. After 14 Ne5 0-0 15 Rb3 Qa5 16 Qb1, White had some pressure for his pawn. Note also that here 12 ... Bb4!? 13 Rb1 Qxa2 leaves White no better than 14 Ra1 Qb2 15 Rb1 etc. A possible way to meet 11 ... Bb4+ 12 Nc3 0-0, e.g. 13 0-0 Ne4!? 14 Na4! Qd8 15 Be3 Bd6!? intending 16 Bxe4 (16 Qb1 Rxf3!) 16 ... dxe4 17 Ng5 h6 18 Nxe4 Bxh2+ with double-edged play, even in an ending.

11 ... Bd6



Our main position, the subject of an enduring debate in international praxis. At first sight the backward Black e-pawn looks very weak, but a closer examination reveals some balancing factors, namely White's own weakness on d4, Black's useful f-file (as opposed to White's e-file, which if occupied leaves the sensitive f2 less well defended), and the constant prospect of ... e5 which, if safely achieved, will often favour Black's active pieces despite his isolated queen's pawn.

White's task is to prevent that freeing move while trying to accomplish a coherent development of his pieces. To this end he can choose: 4.21 12 a3; 4.22 12 Re1; 4.23 12 Bf4; 4.24 12 Bd2; 4.25 12 b3; 4.26 12 Nf4; 4.27 12 Nc3.

And that is not all! Some other tries:

(a) 12 Qd2!? (heading for the kingside) 12 ... 0-0 13 Qg5 Bd7! (13 ... Qd8 14 Ng3 h6 15 Qh4 Nh7 = Matanović-Barcza, Stockholm 1952) 14 Qh4?! Nb4! 15 Bb1 Bb5 16 Re1 Nd3 ♣ Milic-Udovic, Yugoslavian Ch 1957.

(b) 12 Rb1 defends b2 in preparation for Bf4, but 12 ... 0-0 13 Bf4 Nxd4! is Uhlmann's clever response: 14 Nfxd4 Bxf4!? (or 14 ... e5 15 Be3 exd4 16 Bxd4 Qc7 =) 15 Nxf4 e5 16 Nxd5 Qxd4! = (Uhlmann). The attempt to win time or material by 17 Nxf6+ Rxf6 18 Qb3+ would backfire after 18 ... Be6! 19 Qxb7 Bd5 20 Qd7 Raf8 21 Rad1 Rxf2! etc. Here 18 Qc2 could be met by 18 ... Be6(!) 19 Bxh7+ Kh8 =, threatening both ... Qh4 and ... Bxa2.

Kuzmin interpreted 12 Rb1 differently versus Farago in Kiev 1978: 12 ... 0-0 13 b4!? a6!? 14 Bf4 Bxf4!? 15 Nxf4 Bd7 16 Re1 with perhaps a small edge. But 14 ... Nxd4! looks no worse than 13 ... Nxd4 of the last paragraph, as b4 and ... a6 does not substantially alter things. Also, 13 ... e5 may be acceptable, if not inspiring: 14 b5 Nxd4 15 Nexd4 exd4 16 Nxd4 Bg4, or 14 dxe5 Nxe5 15 Nxe5 (15 Nfd4 Nxd3 = or

15 ... Ne4!?) 15 ... Bxe5 16 Be3 Qc7 17 h3 Re8 18 Rc1 Qf7.

(c) 12 Ng3 0-0 13 Re1 transposes to 12 Re1. Here 13 b3!? Bd7 (or 13 ... e5 =) 14 Be3 (14 Bb2 Rae8 or 14 ... Bf4; see 12 b3 below) 14 ... Rae8!? (14 ... Qc7, to make sure ... e5 gets in) 15 Rc1 (15 Ne5!?) 15 ... Qd8 (15 ... Qa5!) 16 Bb1 was ± in Pederson-Hallsberg, Ribe 1978, but this is not a good example.

## 4.21

### 12 a3

Sometimes queried, but the move is playable. White wants to expand early on the queenside to cramp Black and provide a place for the c1 bishop.

12 ... 0-0  
13 b4!?

Now *this* is flirting with danger. 13 Qc2 Bd7!? 14 Be3 Rac8 15 Nc3 Qd8 was equal in Kleininger-Fichtl, 1957, and 13 ... e5! is probably a good answer. Even if ECO's "♣" seems exaggerated after 14 dxe5 Nxe5 15 Nfd4, Black should have no complaints here.

Best is 13 Nc3!, when 13 ... Bd7 14 Be3 is 4.27 below and 14 Re1!? is 4.22. Here

13 ... e5? looks bad after 14 Nxd5! Nxd5 15 Bc4, e.g. 15 ... Be6 16 Ng5 Na5 17 Qh5! h6 18 Qg6.

13 ... e5

Of course.

14 dxe5?!

The only chance to justify 13 b4 was 14 Qb3! (Uhlmann), and now one line is 14 ... Bg4 (or 14 ... Nxd4; also 14 ... e4!? 15 Bxe4 Nxe4 16 Qxd5+ Kh8 17 Qxe4 Bf5 gives an unclear attack. But 14 ... Kh8?! 15 dxe5 Nxe5 16 Nxe5 Bxe5 17 Bb2 may favour White, since 17 ... Bxh2+ is unsound) 15 dxe5 Nxe5 16 Nxe5 Bxe5 17 Bb2 Rae8 =.

14 ... Nxe5

15 Nxe5?

15 Nfd4? Nfg4! of Kolarov-Pietzch 1965 threatens ... Nxd3, e.g. after 15 h3 Nxd3 16 Qxd3 Ne5, Black takes over c4 and has two powerful bishops. Best 15 Ned4 Bg4 16 Be2 (16 Be3 Nxf3+ 17 Nxf3 d4! ♣) 16 ... Nc4! ♣ with outposts on e4 and c4.

15 ... Bxe5

16 Ra2

16 Rb1?? Ng4 0-1 actually happened in a game of mine.

16 ... Ng4

17 Ng3 Bd4

18 Nh1 Bd7

White's contorted manoeuvres have saved material, but his pieces are not even out yet. Govedarica-Uhlmann, Vrbas 1977, continued 19 h3 Ne5 20 Be2 (lest ... Nxd3 and ... Bb5) 20 ... Bc3! 21 Qb3 (21 Bb2 d4!) 21 ... Rac8 22 Rc2 Be6! 23 Bd2 d4 24 Qa4 Bxd2 25 Rxd2 d3! 26 Bg4 (26 Bd1 Rc3! intending ... Nc4) 26 ... Bxg4 27 hxg4 Rc3! 28 Ng3 (Too late! But 28 Qd1 Qd4! hits g4 and a3 with effect) 28 ... Nxc4 29 Qd7 Nf6!? (29 ... Qh6! 30 Qxc4 Qxd2 31 Ne4 Qe2 ♣♣) 30 Qf5 Rd8 31 Re1 Rxa3 32 Re6 Qxb4 ♣♣, since 33 Rxf6 Ra1+ 34 Kh2 Qh4+ wins.

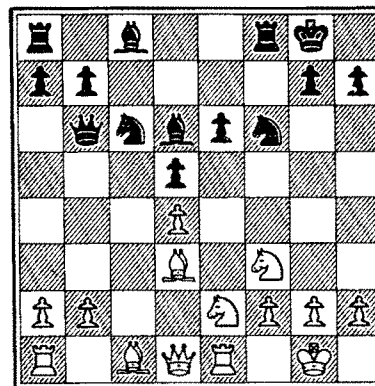
## 4.22

### 12 Re1

An odds and ends section, yet not without importance. I use 12 Re1 to illustrate several lines, most of which could also arise by different move orders.

12 ... 0-0

(see following diagram)



### 13 Nc3?!

13 Nf4 is analysed under 4.26 12 Nf4 below. The alternatives include some instructive ideas:

(a) 13 Bf4 Bxf4 14 Nxf4 Qxb2 transposes to 12 Bf4 of 4.23 below, but Black can also play 14 ... Re8!?, when Petraki-Voisca, Bihac 1979, continued 15 Re2 Bd7 16 Rc1!? 16 ... Re7! 17 Bb1 Rf8 18 a3 Ne4!? (18 ... Na5 19 Ne5 Be8) 19 Nh3 Nf6 (does not do much) 20 Qd2 Be8! 21 Nf4 Na5 =.

(b) 13 Ng3 is held to be bad because of 13 ... Kh8! ♣ (Uhlmann), hitting at d4 and planning ... Qxb2 after 14 Be3. This assessment has not been challenged, although it is not immediately apparent why White is badly off after either 14 Bf1!? (14 ... e5? 15 dxe5 Ng4 16 exd6 Nxf2 17 Be3; 14 ... Ng4!? 15 Qb3 unclear, and not 15 h3?

Nxf2! 16 Kxf2 e5 etc.), or 14 Bb1(!), which prevents 14 ... Ng4 due to 15 Qc2 and likewise 14 ... e5? due to 15 dxe5 Nxe5 (15 ... Ng4 16 Qc2) 16 Nxe5 Bxe5 17 Rxe5 Ng4 18 Qc2. Of course 14 Bf1 Bd7 and 14 Bb1 Bd7 are by no means bad for Black, in the latter case 15 Re2 Rae8 16 Be3 Qc7 (=?) being a plausible continuation.

The other move is 13 ... Bd7, given “?” or “?!” by everyone. If that were true, it would constitute the only case I know of in this variation where ... Kh8 was better than ... Bd7 first (not excluding a later ... Kh8, of course). White's counter to 13 ... Bd7 is 14 b3 (14 Be3? Qxb2! 15 Rb1 Qxa2 is good after 16 Rxb7 Bc8 or 16 ... Rab8. In Tseitlin-Gruzman, USSR 1971, 14 ... Rae8!? 15 Ne5 followed instead, and now 15 ... Re7 was still equal, but no more), and now 14 ... Bb4!? 15 Re2 Bc3 16 Bb2 was lightly ± in Georgadze-Doroskevich, USSR 1971; but this is not very thematic. Better 14 ... Rae8 15 Bb2 (15 Be3 Re7!? 16 Ne5 Be8 hinders 17 f4 due to 17 ... Bb4 18 Re2 Bc3 =, but more accurate seems 15 ... Qc7! 16 Rc1 Qb8 =, or even 16 ... Qa5) 15 ... Bf4 (! Or 15 ... Kh8 =, when 16 Ne5 Bxe5 17 dxe5 Ne4! is good for

Black, and 16 Rc1(?) Bf4! is excellent. Worse 15 ... Qd8?! 16 Ne5 ± of Bellin-Borngässer, Odessa 1973, although it is noteworthy that Black got the advantage in that game too, after only a slight misstep by White, when he reorganized by ... a6 and ... Ne7-f5) 16 Re2 (16 Ne5? Bxe5 17 dxe5 Ne4 etc.; 16 Ne2 Bb8!) 16 ... Ng4! and White must prevent ... e5 by, for example, 17 Bc2 (17 h3? Nxf2 18 Kxf2 e5) 17 ... Nb4! 18 Bb1 Bb5, or by 17 Bb1 Kh8 18 Qd3 g6 and ... e5 is in the air again. For more ideas on White's set-up, see 12 b3 (4.25).

(c) 13 b3 Bd7 14 Bb2 Rae8 would be normal; here 13 ... e5 14 dxe5 Nxe5 15 Ned4! is roughly equal.

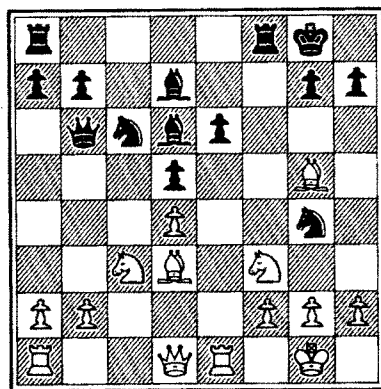
13 ... Bd7  
14 Bg5!?

A common try, but it is dubious for a surprising reason. 14 Ne5? of Shamkovich-Nei, USSR 1956, fails utterly after 14 ... Nxe5 15 dxe5 Ng4 16 Be3 Nxe3 17 Rxe3 Rxf2! (18 Kxf2 Bc5 19 Qd2 Bxe3+ 20 Qxe3 Qxb2+). But 14 Be3 is playable, transposing to 4.27 (the line 12 Nc3 0-0 13 Be3 Bd7 14 Re1!). A final try is 14 a3!?, when Gomez-Watson, Mexico City 1977 went 14 ... Kh8!? 15

Bc2 Rae8 16 Qd3 Re7 17 Bg5 Ref7 18 Bh4 g6 19 b4 Nh5!?, threatening ... Rxf3. An eccentric example; also possible was simply 14 ... Rae8 and 15 Bc2 Re7 16 Qd3 Be8 or 15 Be3 a6.

14 ... Ng4!

An ingenious idea of Bronstein's. Even the second time I reached this position, knowing it was "book", I thought for some time because I could hardly believe that the idea was good! As a side note, Matulovic-Farago, Helsinki 1981, went 14 ... Kh8 15 Na4 Qc7 16 Rc1 Ng4! 17 g3 (17 h3 Bh2+ 18 Kf1 Nxf2!) 17 ... Bb4 ½-½ (18 Rf1 Nh6!?).



15 Bh4

The first point is 15 h3? Nxf2! 16 Kxf2 Nxd4 17 Be3 Qxb2+ 18 Qd2 Qxd2+ 19 Bxd2 Bc6 ♯. And Black's attack is first after

15 Qc2? Nxd4. Even 15 Na4 Qc7 (or 15 ... Qa5(!) 16 Bd2 Qc7) 16 h3? fails to 16 ... Bh2+ 17 Kf1 Nxf2! 18 Kxf2 Qg3+ 19 Kf1 e5 or 19 ... Nxd4! 20 Bxh7+ Kxh7 21 Qxd4 Bb5+. Finally, 15 Qd2 fails to protect after 15 ... Nxd4! 16 Nxd4 Rxf2 17 Qd1 e5 18 Nxd5 Qxd4.

15 ... Nh6!

Simple and effective. d4 is the weak point in White's position, so Black plays for ... Nf5.

16 Bg3

16 Qb3? Nxd4 17 Qxb6 Nxf3+ left Black in command in one of my games. 16a3!?

16 ... Be7!

Preventing tactics with Ng5 and contemplating ... Bf6 in some lines. Quite an unusual sequence, but it is all aimed at the d-pawn.

17 Na4 Qa5

18 Nc5!?

An attempt to improve upon 18 a3 Rxf3! 19 gxf3 Nxd4 20 Nc3 Bf6 21 Kh1 Qb6! ♯ of Keres-Bronstein, Moscow 1956, with Black's central control and f-file coordinating against White's weak f-pawns.

The text is Winslow-Watson, Texas 1975, which went 18 ... Bxc5 19 dxc5 Qxc5 20

Ng5 Nf5 21 Qh5 h6 22 Nxe6 Bxe6 23 Rxe6 Nxg3 24 hxg3 Qxf2+ 25 Kh2 Qf7! 26 Qg4 Rfe8 27 Rxh6 Ne5 28 Rh8+ Kxh8 29 Qh4+ Kg8 30 Rf1! Nxd3 31 Rx7 Kxf7 32 Qh5+ Kf6 33 Qf3+ Ke5 34 Qe3+ Kd6 35 Qxd3, and now 35 ... Rad8! keeps the advantage, with intent to push the d-pawn.

Overall, 12 Re1 poses few problems, although it may transpose to critical lines.

4.23

12 Bf4

Attempting to win the dark squares immediately, even at the cost of a pawn. This has a reputation as a drawing attempt, in view of 12 ... Bxf4 13 Nxf4 Qxb2 14 Rb1 Qxa2 15 Ra1 Qb2 16 Rb1 etc. So why should White wish to play this way at all? We shall see that he does have options, and so does the second player.

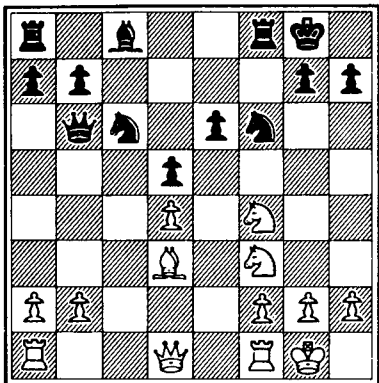
12 ... Bxf4

13 Nxf4

And now a last split: 4.231 13 ... 0-0; 4.232 13 ... Qxb2.

4.231

13 ... 0-0!?



This is held to be bad by a variety of sources for a variety of different reasons, but may in fact be fully satisfactory. Careless analysis plays its part, e.g. *ECO*, Richmond, Keene *et al.* give "14 Rb1!" leading to  $\pm$ , but none mentions 14 ... Nxd4! 15 Nxd4 e5 =, which is the well-known line we quoted under 12 Rb1.

#### 14 Qd2

(a) 14 Ng5!? Nxd4 15 Qh5? (hoping for 15 ... Nxf5?? 16 Bxf5+) 15 ... h6  $\mp$  (various) leaves White without compensation. Better looks 15 Qb1!, and I think Black must try 15 ... Nf5 (15 ... Ne4 16 Bxe4! dxe4 17 Qxe4 Rxf4 18 Qxf4+ is awfully loose) 16 Nfxe6 (16 h3 Qd6 or 16 ... g6!?) 16 ... Bxe6 17 Nxe6 Qxe6 18 Bxf5 Qd6 =, in view of White's lack of pieces out, e.g. 19 Qd3 g6 20 Bh3 Ne4 or 19 Qd1 Rae8.

(b) 14 Re1 at best transposes to 13 ... Qxb2 14 Re1!? 0-0, which is equal if Black wishes, or he can avoid the draw (see 4.232). Thus the text looks the only serious independent try.

#### 14 ... Kh8

The main line. Another, admittedly rather dull solution is 14 ... Qb4, e.g. 15 Qxb4 Nxb4 16 Be2 Bd7 17 a3 Nc6 18 Nd3 Ne4 19 Nde5 Nxe5 20 Nxe5 Ba4 21 Bg4 Rae8 22 Rac1 Re7 = Bjuhr-Wikstrom, corres 1970.

#### 15 Ng5!

15 Bc2 Qxb2 16 Rab1 Ne4 17 Qe2 Qa3  $\mp$  Kinmark-Kanko, 1963.

#### 15 ... Nxd4

I first liked 15 ... Re8!?, e.g. 16 Rfe1 Nxd4 17 Re3 Kg8! and ... h6; but then 16 Rae1! 17 Qd1 with attack (Hellers) is critical.

#### 16 Bxh7 Nxh7 17 Ng6+ Kg8

Here White apparently must take the draw by 18 Ne7+, since 18 Nxf7(?) Re8! (18 ... Rf5? 19 Ng5) 19 Ng5 e5! (Hellers) is good for Black. Certainly 13 ... 0-0 deserves more respect than it is generally given.

#### 4.232

#### 13 ... Qxb2

The "safe" method, but White can still play for attack.

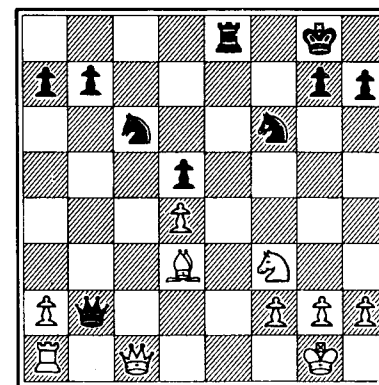
#### 14 Re1

Most ambitious; it can arise from 13 ... 0-0 14 Re1 Qxb2, and from 12 Re1 Bd7 13 Bf4 as well. 14 Rb1 Qxa2 (14 ... Qa3!? 15 Ng5 is held to be  $\pm$ , but after 15 ... 0-0 16 Nfxe6 Bxe6 17 Nxe6 Rf7 Pribyl-Prandstetter, Hradec Kralove 1981, this was not so clear, e.g. after Pribyl's 18 Rb3, could 18 ... Qxa2 have been tried? Admittedly risky, but at least 19 Ng5 Nxd4 and 19 Bb1 Qa4 20 Ng5 Nxd4 do not win outright) 15 Ng5 0-0 16 Ra1 Qb2 17 Rb1 =. This is the drawing line, given by Uhlmann and others. One reason that Black should not attempt to deviate by 17 ... Qa3 is 18 Qc2(!), e.g. 18 ... Ne4 19 Bxe4 Rxf4 20 Bxf4+ (20 Bxd5!?) 20 ... Kf8 21 Rxb7! Bxb7 22 Nxe6+ etc.

#### 14 ... 0-0 15 Re2!?

Again the most interesting. The game Upton-Farago,

Malta 1980 illustrated how endings like the one after 15 Nxe6 Bxe6 16 Rxe6 Rae8 17 Rxe8 Rxe8 are not as straightforward as they seem. Black is a little more active, and knights can serve as well as bishops since there is no central tension: 18 Qc1 (18 Rb1 Qxa2 19 Rxb7 Ne4! Uhlmann, e.g. 20 Qe1?! Nd6 21 Qc1 Nxd4! 22 Nxd4 Nxb7 23 Qc6 Rf8 etc., or 20 Bxe4 dxe4 21 Ne5 Rf8  $\mp$ )



18 ... Qxc1+! (18 ... Qb6!? 19 Rb1 Qa5 unclear, intending 20 Rxb7 Nxd4!; so Uhlmann gives a line 20 h3 a6 21 Rxb7 Nxd4 22 Qg5 Nxf3+ 23 gxf3 Qe1+ and ... Re7 =) 19 Rxc1 Rc8 20 Bf5 Rc7 21 Ne5 Kf8 (Still equal, but Black has more winning chances due to his pawn majority and chance for a knight-versus-bishop advan-

tage) 22 g4!? g6 23 g5? (23 Bb1 Re7 =; 23 Bd3 Nxe5!? 24 Rxc7 Nxd3 =) 23 ... Ne8! 24 Bg4 (24 Nxc6?? gxf5) 24 ... Nxe5! 25 Rxc7 Nf3+! 26 Bxf3 Nxc7 (≠; note White's structural problems) 27 Kf1 Ke7 28 Ke2 Ne6! 29 Ke3 Kd6 30 h4 b5 31 Bd1 (31 Be2 b4 32 h5 gxh5! 33 f4 h4 34 Bg4 a5 etc.) 31 ... Ng7 32 Bc2 a5 33 Kd2 (33 Bd3 b4 34 Kd2 Ke6 ≠≠) 33 ... Ke6 34 Bd3 Nf5 (or 34 ... b4) 35 Bxb5 Nxd4 36 Bd3 Nf3+ 37 Kc3 Kd6 38 h5 gxh5 39 Bxh7 Nxc5 and Black won shortly. A fairly typical example, since in general only a lower-rated player will be trying this line as White.

15 ... Qb6(!)

15 ... Qa3 has been played more often, with the continuation 16 Nxe6(!) Bxe6 17 Rxe6 Rae8 18 Qe2 (or 18 Rxe8 Rxe8 19 Bb5 Estrin-Filtser, USSR 1957, about equal, but again Black has more possibilities after 19 ... Rc8 or 19 ... Ne4!?) 18 ... Rxe6 19 Qxe6+ Kh8 20 Qe2 Re8 21 Qd2 Ne4 (21 ... Qb4!? ≠) 22 Re1 Qb4 23 Qe3 Jacob-Zier, West German Ch 1978, and now 23 ... Re7! (Shamkovich) was best and ≠.

I do not like 15 ... Qa3 as much as 15 ... Qb6 because of 16 Re3 (! Shamkovich's 16 Ne5 has a similar idea), e.g.

16 ... Qd6 17 Ne5! and now what? 17 ... Nxd4 18 Bxh7+ Nxh7 19 Qxd4 is very poor, yet 17 ... Kh8 18 Rh3 or 17 ... Bd7 18 Nxd7 are unplayable.

16 Rb1 Qc7  
17 Ne5!?

17 Nxe6 Bxe6 18 Rxe6 Rae8 is naturally safer, and equal.

17 ... Ne4

Simplifying defence, now that the queen is back. This renders further attack problematic, e.g. 18 Bxe4 (18 Nxc6 bxc6) 18 ... Nxe5! 19 dxe5 (19 Nxd5 exd5 20 Bxd5+ Nf7; 19 Bc2 Nf3+) 19 ... Rxf4 and Black retains his extra pawn.

#### 4.24

12 Bd2

This introduces one of the most important White ideas in these Bd3 lines. A comparison of other sections shows that White has considerable difficulty developing his queen's bishop to a square where it has influence without losing either the b-pawn or d-pawn in the process. 12 Bd2 followed by 13 Bc3 protects d4 and b2, strengthens White's influence on e5, and yet also watches

over key queenside squares, i.e. b4 and a5 (contrast 12 b3 and 14 Bb2 below).

On the negative side, Black gets a certain freedom of development, since White foregoes attack on either the king or the e6 pawn. Also, White's lack of dark-square influence on the kingside can lead to a pleasant posting of black pieces in that sector.

12 ... 0-0

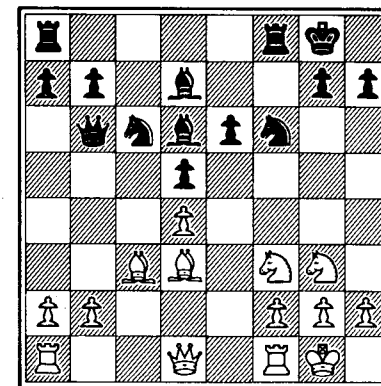
12 ... Qxb2?? 13 Rb1 Qa3 (13 ... Qxa2 14 Nc1 Qa3 15 Rb3) 14 Rb3 Qa4 15 Bb5 Qxa2 16 Nc1 Qa1 17 Bc3 ±±. 12 ... e5!? 13 dxe5 Nxe5 14 Nxe5 Bxe5 15 Bc3 "±" is given by several sources. Then 15 ... Bxc3 (15 ... Bxh2+ 16 Kxh2 Ng4+ 17 Kg1 Qh6 18 Qa4+! and 19 Qf4) 16 Ncx3 0-0 does not seem to give White much, so 16 bxc3 looks correct, with the typical ± of this kind of position, based on the d4 square and better bishop after 16 ... 0-0 17 Nd4 (16 ... Bg4?!, to prevent this, runs into 17 Qa4+ Bd7 18 Qa3!).

13 Bc3 Bd7

As a general rule, ... Bd7 in these variations should precede ... Kh8. This prevents certain back-rank themes by connecting rooks, indirectly covers a4,

and contains the possibility of a quick ... Be8-h5 or ... Rae8 and ... e5, in which cases the move ... Kh8 may be a waste of time or worse.

14 Ng3



(a) Notice that 14 Ne5? can be answered by 14 ... Bxe5! 15 dxe5 Ng4 16 Bd4 Nxd4 17 Nxd4 Rf4! (or 17 ... Nxf2!) 18 Nf3 Raf8 (intending ... Rxf3) Janetschek-Diez del Corral, Barcelona 1975.

(b) Also possible is 14 Rc1, when 14 ... Rae8 intending ... Re7 and ... Be8-h5 can transpose to the text, but the early Rc1 may not fit in (e.g. ... Bf4 comes with tempo in some lines). A nice example was Paoli-Uhlmann, 1966: 14 Rc1 Kh8!? 15 Qd2 Rae8 16 Kh1 Re7 17 h3 (17 Ng3 Ng4 ≠ Uhlmann; 17 Ne5? Bxe5 18 dxe5 Ng4) 17 ... Nh5! (based on the absence of White's bish-

op from the c1–h6 diagonal) 18 Qg5 Nf4 19 Nxf4 Bxf4 20 Qh4 h6; “ $\bar{\text{T}}$ ” (Uhlmann) is probably exaggerated, but White has no positive plan after, for example, 21 Rae1 Ref7.

(c) Finally, with 14 Qd2!? White does not commit his e2 knight as yet, preferring to control f4 and perhaps consider a queenside attack. The best answer seems to be 14 ... Rae8, again intending ... Re7: 15 Rae1 (15 a3 Qc7!? 16 h3 e5 was equal in Pilnik–Teschner, Moscow 1956; or 15 ... Re7) 15 ... Re7 16 Ng3 (White is not sure how to do without this move anyway) 16 ... Ng4! (the f4 square again; ... Bf4 and ... e5 is in the air) 17 h3 (17 Qg5 Nh6 18 Re2 Rxf3! 19 gxf3 Nxd4 20 Bxd4 Qxd4 21 Rd1 Qb6 22 Qe3? Bc5  $\bar{\text{T}}$  Westerinen–Uhlmann, Halle 1967; the exchange sac is obviously sound) 17 ... Nh6 18 Bb1 Bf4! 19 Qc2 g6 (threatening ... e5) 20 Ne2 Bb8 21 Qd2 Nf5 (“ $\bar{\text{T}}$ ” Uhlmann) 22 Nc1 Nd6 23 Nh4(?) Nc4 24 Qh6? Bf4 0–1 (whoops!).

14 ... **Bf4!**

This is the author’s improvement — I think a considerable one — over 14 ... Rae8 15 Ne5! Re7, and now very effective is 16 Rcl!, e.g. 16 ... Be8 (16 ...

Kh8 17 Bb1) 17 Kh1 (threatening f4 with a secure edge) 17 ... Kh8 (17 ... g5!? was interesting but not quite equal after 18 f4!) 18 Bb1 g6 19 f4 Rg7 (preparing ... Ne7–f5, but:) 20 Qd2! Ne7 21 Ba5 Qa6 22 Bb4  $\pm/\pm$  Janosevic–Watson, Lone Pine 1979. Accurate play by White.

14 ... Bf4! is an excellent way of avoiding such problems. For one thing, it controls g5, thus preventing Bxh7/Ng5 attacks after, for example, ... Ng4. Also, the move ... e5 is now always in the air, since there is no fork after dxe5. Finally, Ne5 by White does not cut off Black’s bishop; it can be answered by ... Nxe5 in some cases, an option obviously not possible with the bishop on d6.

15 Re1

On 15 Kh1, 15 ... e5(!) 16 dxe5 Ng4 17 Qe2 Rae8 etc. is logical. 15 Ne5 looks better, but 15 ... Be8! is a good answer, e.g. 16 Qe2? Nxd4 or 16 Re1? Bxe5 17 dxe5 Ne4.

15 ... **Kh8**

To meet 16 Ne5 with 16 ... Nxd4(!), e.g. 17 Nxd7 Nxd7 18 Bxh7 Nb5!, keeping the ... Bh6 resource.

So in Sulman–Watson, Lone Pine 1981, White tried 16 Bc2

Rae8 17 b4!? (17 Ne5 Re7!) 17 ... Ng4 18 Qd3 g6 19 h3? (19 Rb1? e5; but 19 Re2 Re7) 19 ... Nxf2! 20 Kxf2 e5 21 b5 (A pretty line results from 21 Qd1 exd4! 22 Bb2 Kg8! 23 Bd3 Be3+ 24 Kf1 Nxb4  $\bar{\text{T}}$  intending ... Nxd3 and ... Bb5, or here 22 Bxd4+ Nxd4 23 Qxd4+ Qxd4+ 24 Nxd4 Be3+  $\bar{\text{T}}$ ) 21 ... e4 22 Qd1 Bxg3+ 23 Kxg3 Qc7+ 24 Kf2 Rxf3+ 25 gxf3 Qh2+ 26 Ke3 exf3+ 27 Kxf3 Rf8+ 0–1. The kind of attack Black has in mind when he plays 7 ... Qb6.

#### 4.25

12 b3 0–0

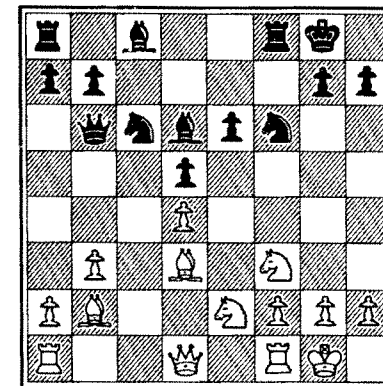
12 ... e5 (“!?” ECO) 13 dxe5 Nxe5 14 Ned4 0–0 15 Be3 Nfg4? (15 ... Nxf3+  $\pm$ ) 16 Bxh7+! Kxh7 17 Ng5+ Kg8 18 Nde6 Nxe3 19 Qh5  $\pm\pm$ .

13 Bb2

13 Bf4 Nxd4! 14 Nfxd4 e5  $\bar{\text{T}}$  (compare 12 Rb1).

(see following diagram)

This is obviously similar to 12 Bd2 and 13 Bc3, but with some subtle differences. White need not worry about his b-pawn hanging, and yet the attack ... a5–a4 could be a factor.



Also, both sides have a better chance to do something on the c-file. Lastly, and most importantly, the bishop does not cover squares like b4 and a5, which is to Black’s advantage.

13 ... **Bd7**

14 Ng3

14 Ne5? Bxe5 15 dxe5 Ng4 16 Bd4 Nxd4 17 Nxd4 Rf4! (as in 4.24) or here 17 ... Nxf2! etc.

14 ... **Rae8**

The main published line is 14 ... Kh8 15 Bb1!? (15 Re1?! Rae8 16 Bc2 Ng4! 17 Qd3 — 17 Bxh7 e5! — 17 ... g6 18 Qe2 Kg8! 19 Rad1 e5  $\bar{\text{T}}$ / $\bar{\text{T}}$  Minev–Bruchner, Bulgaria–DDR 1953) 15 ... a5 16 a3 Rac8 17 Re1!? Ne7 18 Ne5 Be8 19 Re3 Bxe5 20 dxe5 Nd7 21 Bd4 Qd8 22 Bd3 Bg6 = Florian–Uhlmann, Bulatofured 1959. But 14 ... Kh8 is rather a waste of

time, e.g. White could have played 15 Qd2 intending Rae1-e2 or, after 15 Bb1 a5 16 a3 Rae8, 17 Ne5! Re7 18 Kh1 ± intends f4, as in the Janosevic-Watson game above.

Perhaps most accurate is 14 ... Bf4(=), as in 4.24. After 14 ... Rae8, however, Black has a reasonable game, e.g. 15 Ne5 Re7 16 Kh1 Kh8 would follow the Janosevic plan, but White does not have the move Ba5 in reserve if Black transfers his c6 knight. Coudari-Watson, New York 1979, went 15 a3!? Kh8 16 Bc2 e5!? (16 ... Re7 is roughly =) 17 dxe5 Nxe5 18 Nd4 Nc4!? 19 bxc4 Qxb2 20 Qd2? (20 cxd5 unclear) 20 ... Be5 21 Nf3 Bc3 ♠♠.

#### 4.26

##### 12 Nf4

The establishment of Black's system in the 1950s depended upon an adequate response to this move, which threatens simply Re1 and Nxe6. The main line has long been considered equal, yet recently another White move order has arisen to obscure the situation.

12 ... 0-0

13 Re1

13 g3 Bd7 (13 ... e5) 14 Re1 transposes to 14 g3.

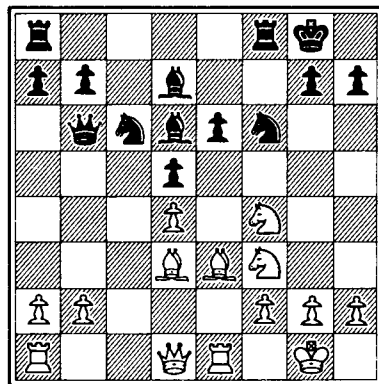
##### 13 ... Bd7!

Schmid's gambit move, which challenges White to take the e-pawn at great cost in time. 13 ... Ne4 14 g3! and 13 ... Re8 14 Be3! are both better for White.

##### 14 Nxe6

This must still be considered the main line.

(a) 14 g3 gives Black time to consolidate with 14 ... Rae8 and now 15 Be3?! was played in Vasilchuk-Nei, USSR 1956: 15 ... Qxb2 16 Rb1 Qxa2 17 Bd2 (! 17 Rxb7 Bc8 ♠) 17 ... e5 18 Ra1 "=" (*ECO*); Black can repeat, or he may have a very slight edge after 18 ... Qxa1 19 Qxa1 exf4. In Reback-Watson, New York 1981, Black tried to avoid the possible draw with 15 ... Qd8: 16 Bf1! Ng4 17 Nd3 Nxe3 18 fxe3 Re7 19 Bg2 Be8, and the play was very unclear.



(b) 14 Be3!? had a successful debut in the game Georgiev-Farago, Dubna 1977, and is still controversial today: 14 ... Qc7!? (used several times, but probably not best; see the next paragraph) 15 g3 Rae8 (15 ... e5!? 16 dxe5 Nxe5 17 Nd4 ± or 17 Nxe5 Bxe5 18 Qb3! ±) 16 Rcl Qb8 17 Ng5! h6 (perhaps 17 ... Re7!?) 18 Nf3 Ng4 (The Georgiev-Farago game went 18 ... Ne4!? 19 Ng6 Rf7 — 19 ... Rf6 20 Nfe5! — 20 Kg2 Rf6? 21 Nfe5! Rd8 22 f3 with a sizable advantage) 19 Ng6 Rf6 20 Bb1 (20 a3 Rd8!? 21 Bb1 Be8 22 Nfh4 Nxe3 23 Rxe3 Qc7 led to a draw in Ristoja-Farago, Helsinki 1981, although White looks somewhat better as things stand) 20 ... Rd8 21 Kg2 Be8 22 Nfh4 Nxe3+ 23 Rxe3 e5 24 dxe5 Nxe5 25 Nxe5 Bxe5 26 Qd3 and White was on top, Cabrilo-Prandstetter, Trnava 1981.

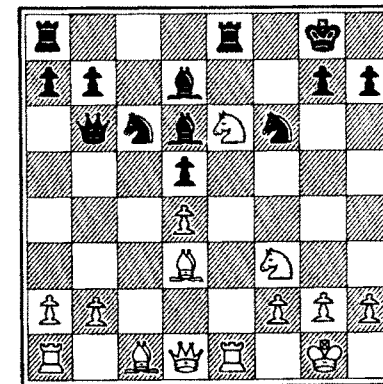
There are at least three options to the rather negative 14 ... Qc7. Keene suggests the straightforward 14 ... Ne4!? 15 g3 (15 Bxe4 Bxf4 =) 15 ... Qxb2 with 16 Rb1 Qxa2 17 Rxb7 Bxf4! as a sample line. Also interesting is simply 14 ... Qxb2!?, taking up the challenge. Then Maki-Farago, Jarvenpaa 1982, continued 15 Rb1 Qxa2 16 Rxb7, and instead of

16 ... Rab8? 17 Rxd7! Nxd7 18 Nxe6 ±, 16 ... Rae8 (Orfalea) or 16 ... Bc8 seem to improve. But this is a difficult line.

Deserving attention too is 14 ... Rae8, unsuggested since White is supposed to be threatening 15 Ne5. But 15 Ne5 Qc7! gives Black a healthy share of the centre after 16 Nxd7 Qxd7 or 16 Nxc6 bxc6 threatening the knight and ... e5. On the other hand, 15 Rb1 Qc7 16 g3 e5!? also frees Black's game, the critical line being 17 dxe5 (17 Nxd5? Nxd5 18 Bc4 Be6 19 Ng5 Na5! ♠) 17 ... Nxe5 18 Nxe5 Bxe5 19 Qb3! Kh8! 20 Nxd5 Nxd5 21 Qxd5 Bc6 with dangerous counterplay based on manoeuvres like ... Qd7-g4.

All in all, then, the new 14 Be3 line does not appear too fearsome, but there is still work to be done here.

##### 14 ... Rfe8



**15 Bf5**

Practically forced, since 15 Bf4?! Bxf4 16 Nxf4 Rxe1+ 17 Qxe1 Nxd4 ♯ Hörberg-Schmid, Amsterdam 1954, and 15 Nc5?! Nxd4! (also 15 ... Rxe1+ 16 Nxe1 Bg4! of Grossman-Marszalek, Polish Ch 1975) 16 Nxd7 Nxf3+ 17 gxf3 Nxd7 18 Bf5 Nf6 19 Bg5 Bxh2+! 20 Kg2 Be5 ♯ (Uhlmann) are unsatisfactory for White.

**15 ... Bb4!**

15 ... Na5 is considered equal, but the text may be even better.

**16 Bd2**

(a) 16 Re2 Nd8!? 17 a3 and now 17 ... Bf8!? 18 Nxf8 Bxf5 19 Rxe8 Nxe8 20 Nh4 Qf6 (“♯” various) 21 Qh5! g6 22 Qxh7+ Kxf8 23 Bh6+ Ng7 24 g4 Be4 25 g5 (25 f3!?) 25 ... Qxd4 26 Nxg6+ Bxg6 27 Qxg6 = (Gufeld). Or 17 ... Bd6!? 18 Nfg5 h6 19 Nxd8! Rxe2! 20 Bxd7 Re7 21 Be6+ Kf8 22 Bh3! Rxd8 23 Ne6+ Rxe6 24 Bxe6 Bxh2+, leading to a draw, Georgadze-Doroskevich, USSR 1972. 16 ... Na5!? is of interest here.

(b) 16 Re3 Na5 (threatening e6, and intending ... Nc4) 17 a3 Bf8 18 Bd2 (18 Qe1 Nb3 19 Rb1

Rac8 ♯) 18 ... Nc4 19 Rb3 Ba4! 20 Rxb6 Bxd1 21 Rxd1 axb6 22 Nc7 Nxb2 ♯ (various sources).

**16 ... Bxd2****17 Qxd2 Ne7!**

And White has real problems, e.g. 18 Bh3 Ne4 ♯ or 18 g4 Nxf5 19 gxf5 Ne4 20 Qe3 Bxe6 21 fxe6 Rxe6 ♯ Riedmüller-Heemsoth, corres 1957.

So 18 Nxg7 Kxg7 19 Qg5+ Ng6 20 Bxd7 Nxd7 21 h4! h6 22 Qxd5 is recommended (*ECO* and others), but this much-quoted analysis does not even seem to take account of 18 ... Nxf5(!), e.g. 19 Nxe8 Bxe8 20 Qg5+ Bg6 or 19 Rxe8+ Nxe8 or 19 Nxf5 Bxf5 20 Qg5+ Bg6 21 Ne5 Ne4 etc. Thus 13 Nxe6 contains more risk for White than for Black.

**4.27****12 Nc3**

The most favoured move by international players at present, largely because world champion Karpov has used it. White foregoes both attack on the e-pawn and kingside threats in order to consolidate his centre, usually via Be3 and moves like

a3, h3, Re1 and Rc1. Given time, he can advance with b4, Na4–c5 etc., while a timely Ne5 may also turn out to be good. The main drawback to White’s plan is that his pieces still lack much scope, despite the time that it takes to bring them out. Black’s king’s bishop stands better than White’s counterpart on e3, and the only significantly worse piece he has is the problem bishop on c8. If he can succeed in transferring this via ... d7–e8 to h5 or in some cases g6, there will be nothing wrong with the Black position; indeed, he may stand better.

In general, this variation provides a good illustration of how the weakness of White’s d4 can be traded off Black’s on e6.

**12 ... 0–0****13 Be3**

13 Re1 is discussed in 4.22 above.

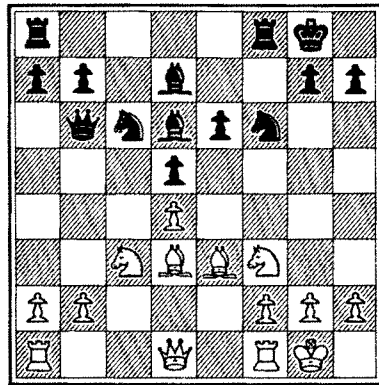
(a) 13 Bg5!? is the main alternative, intending 13 ... Qxb2? 14 Nb5 etc. The accepted move is 13 ... Kh8 (threatening ... Nxd4), and now 14 Na4 Qd8! 15 Re1 Qe8! 16 Bh4 Ng4 17 Bg3? (17 h3) of Kudrin-Watson, Philadelphia 1979, allows 17 ... Bxg3 18 fxg3 Nxd4! 19 Nxd4 Nxf2 etc., but White’s moves were not forced,

and 14 Na4 makes good sense. Also possible was 14 Bc2, e.g. 14 ... Bd7 15 a3 Be8! 16 Qe2 Bh5 17 Qxe6 Nb4!? 18 Qe2 Rae8 19 Qd2 Nxc2 20 Qxc2 Bxf3 unclear, Espinosa-Watson, New York 1978, or here 15 Re1 Rae8, which is Estevez-Farago of 4.22 above. Both of these 14th moves look more critical than theory’s 14 Be3 Bd7 = or 14 Bb5 (14 ... Bd7 =; 14 ... Ne4 =).

As usual, Black also does well to answer 13 Bg5 by 13 ... Bd7!, not trying to bowl White over. Then 14 Na4 Qa5! 15 Bc2 e5 is pleasant, and 14 Bh4 Kh8 15 Be2!? (15 Bc2 Qxb2!; how else to defend the d-pawn?) 15 ... Rae8 of Nicevski-Prandstetter, Decin 1978, was equal, or here 15 ... Be8(!) 16 Bg3 Bxg3 17 hxg3 Ne4! with active pieces.

(b) 13 a3 Bd7 14 Be3 transposes to the text, or here 14 Bg5!? Kh8 (14 ... Rae8 =) 15 Bc2 Ne7!? (15 ... Rae8 and 15 ... Rac8 intending ... Na5 are both reasonable, too) 15 Ne5 Be8 17 Rb1 Rc8 18 Re1 Bxe5! 19 Rxe5 Bg6 (usually an indication of equality) 20 Bxg6 Nxg6 21 Re1 Rc4 22 Be3 Qc6 = Harper-Barager, Montreal 1981.

**13 ...****Bd7**



The diagrammed position is recognized as the main one for 12 Nc3, but there have been few relevant games and little analysis on it. An alternative to Black's last is 13 ... Qd8, when Karpov–Hort, Budapest 1973, went 14 Bg5 Bd7 15 Re1 Qb8 16 Bh4 ±; but possible was 14 ... Qe8(!), e.g. 15 Bh4 Qh5 16 Bg3 Bxg3 17 hxg3 Ng4 (Tal). Here 15 h3 of Unzicker–Husain, Lucerne 1982, should likewise be met by 15 ... Qh5 (threatening ... Nxd4) and 16 Be2 Ne4 or 16 Qd2 h6 17 Be3 e5 etc.

Tal himself answered 13 ... Qd8 with 14 Re1 Qe8 versus Diez del Corral in Malaga 1981, and now perhaps 15 h3 was better than 15 Ne5!?, as played.

After 13 ... Bd7, the main White moves are: 4.271 14 Re1; 4.272 14 Rc1; 4.273 14 a3.

(a) 14 Na4 Qa5! (indirectly attacking a4) is equal, e.g. 15

Bd2 Qd8 16 Nc5? (but 16 Re1 Qe8! threatens ... Nxd4 and ... Qh5) 16 ... Nxd4! 17 Nxb7 Nxf3+ 18 Qxf3 Bxh2+ etc.

(b) 14 Nb5!?! could be answered by 14 ... Bb8 with good chances. In Adorjan–Farago, Hungarian Ch 1977, Black chose 14 ... Nb4 15 Nxd6 Nxd3 16 Qxd3 Qxd6 17 Ne5 Qb4! 18 Rfc1 Rac8 19 Qb3 Qxb3 ½–½.

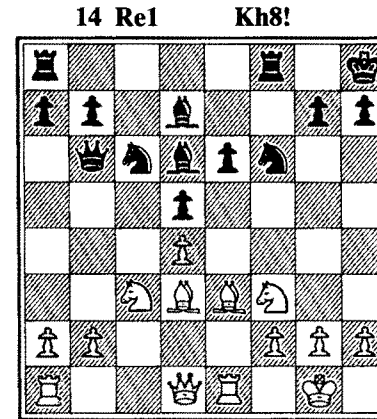
(c) 14 Qd2!?! has no refutation, but 14 ... Ng4 (14 ... Nh5!?) 15 h3 (lest ... Rxf3) 15 ... Nxe3 16 fxe3 g6! of Enright–Watson, Fremont 1976, gave Black at least equality.

(d) 14 Ne5!?! is an older idea, allowing 14 ... Bxe5 15 dxe5 Qxb2 16 exf6 Qxc3 17 fxg7 Qxg7 and White probably has not enough for a pawn, e.g. 18 Rb1 Be8 19 f4 Bg6 20 Kh1(?) Rad8 21 Bxg6 hxg6 ± Kojder–Farago, Lodz 1980. There are better tries for White, e.g. 20 Rf3 intending Rg3 and Bc1–b2; or earlier, the immediate 18 f4, since 18 ... Be8 19 f5 intending Qd2 creates some threats; or, finally 18 Qd2 Rf7 (threatening ... Ne5; *ECO's* 18 ... Ne5! is not convincing after 19 Be2) 19 Bh6, although 19 ... Qd4 or 19 ... Qg4 may still favour Black. Compare 14 a3 Be8 15 Ne5 below.

If Black wants something simpler, 14 Ne5 Be8 is quite

satisfactory, e.g. 15 Na4 Qa5 = (Uhlmann).

#### 4.271



A good all-purpose move, based upon the idea that the c3 knight is still undefended in the case of 15 Ne5 Bxe5 16 dxe5 Qxb2 etc., and on the idea of ... Be8–h5 without certain tactical drawbacks.

(a) 14 ... Be8 at once has to deal with 15 Ng5, when the standard 15 ... Bh5 might meet with 16 Bxh7+?! Nxh7 17 Qxh5 Nxc5 18 Qxc5 Qxb2 19 Re1 (±?) or here even 16 f3 Rae8 17 g4?! Bf7 18 Nxf7 Rxf7 19 g5 Nh5 20 g6 Rf6 unclear. So in Geller–Farago, Novi Sad 1978, Black played 15 ... Bf7 16 Rc1 Kh8 17 h3!?! Bg8 18 Na4 Qc7 19 Nc5 Rae8 20 Bb5 Bxc5 21 Rxc5 Nd7 22 Rc1 e5 and the game was drawn shortly.

(b) 14 ... Rae8 15 a3 (15 Rc1) 15 ... Qd8 16 Bg5 Qb8 (“=” Shamkovich) Diesen–Farago, Polanica Zdroj 1977.

(c) 14 ... Qd8 15 Bg5 Qb8 16 Bh4 h6!?! Jansa–Prandstetter, Warsaw 1979; but I do not trust this.

(d) 14 ... Rac8 15 Rc1 Kh8 16 Ne5 Be8 17 Na4 Qa5 18 Bd2 Qd8 19 Nxc6 Rxc6 20 Rxc6 Bxc6 21 Nc5 Ne4! with an interesting counterattack, Bednarski–Farago, Svendborg 1981, which concluded 22 Bxe4?! dxe4 23 Nxe6? Qh4 24 g3 Qh3 25 Be3 Qxe6 0–1. Here 16 Na4 Qa5 17 Ne5 Bxc5 18 Rxc5 Qxa2 = was Radulov–Prandstetter, Warsaw 1979.

#### 15 Rc1

This will lead to play similar to 4.272. The choice is broad (from the diagram):

(a) 15 h3 a6!?! (or 15 ... Rae8 or 15 ... Rac8) 16 Rc1 (16 a3 Ne7 17 Ne5 Be8!, e.g. 18 Na4 Bxa4 19 Qxa4 Qxb2, while 18 b4 Nf5 is also satisfactory) 16 ... Ne7! (Another of Black's main ideas, unmasking the bishop and threatening ... Qxb2 as well as preparing ... Nf5) 17 Na4 Bxa4 (17 ... Qa5 18 Bc2) 18 Qxa4 Nf5 (=) 19 Bg5? Bb4! 20 Qb3 Nd7 21 Re2 Nxd4 ± Barden–Uhlmann, Hastings 1958/9.

(b) 15 Ne5 Bxe5 16 dxe5 Qxb2 17 Na4 (17 Nb5 Nxe5!) 17 ... Qxe5 18 Bc5 Qf4 =.

(c) 15 a3 Be8!? (or 15 ... Ne7) 16 Ng5 (16 Ne5 Nxd4!, another benefit of 14 ... Kh8; 16 Na4 Qc7 17 Rc1 Ng4 = or here 17 h3 e5 =) 16 ... Bh5 17 Qd2!? (17 Qc2 Nxd4 18 Bxd4 Qxd4 19 Nxe6 Bxh2+!; 17 f3 Rae8 18 g4 Bf7 =, since 19 Nxf7+ Rxf7 20 g5 Nh5 21 g6 Rff8 or 21 ... Rf6 is very safe now) 17 ... Rae8 18 b4 Qd8 (note the drift of pieces towards the kingside) 19 f4 (else ... e5) 19 ... h6 20 Nh3 Ng4! 21 Ne2 Qh4 ♯ Kudrin–Watson, New York 1981.

### 15 ... Be8

Here too 15 ... Ne7 is an option.

### 16 Na4

16 Ng5 Bh5 is good with the king on h8, and 16 a3 Bh5 (16 ... Ne7!?) 17 Be2 Qd8 (covers e5) posts Black's pieces actively (=), e.g. 18 Na4 Ne4 or 18 h3 Rc8.

### 16 ... Qa5

And Black's queenside pressure keeps things even, in view of 17 Bd2 Nb4 or 17 Nc5 Bxc5 18 Rxc5 Qxa2 and now 19 Re2 Ne4 or 19 Ng5 Bh5 20 f3 e5.

## 4.272

### 14 Rc1

White develops with the idea Na4–c5.

### 14 ... Kh8

Again this noncommittal move, although one or two others are probably just as good:

(a) 14 ... Qd8 acknowledges that the queen has seen her best days on the queenside, having provoked the rather limited reorganization with Be3 and Nc3. Now Black would like to play ... e5, and 15 Bg5 Qe8 16 Re1 Qh5 or here 16 Bh4 Qh5 17 Bg3 Bxg3 and ... Ng4 equalizes. A game Hulak–Gunawan, Indonesia 1982, went 15 Bb1!? Qe8 16 Re1 Qh5 17 h3, and now 17 ... Rae8 intending ... Re7 and ... e5 looks fine.

(b) 14 ... Be8!? is still possible, although 15 Ng5 must be contended with. Perhaps then 15 ... Nd8 with the idea ... h6 and ... Bh5; compare 14 a3 Be8 below.

(c) 14 ... Ne7 would threaten ... Qxb2, and now 15 Ne5 Be8 keeps the idea of ... Nf5 alive too. Needs investigation.

(d) 14 ... Rac8 is "book", with 15 Re1 transposing to 14

Re1 Rac8 above, and 15 Ne5 Be8 16 Qd2 Ne7! 17 f3 Qd8 18 Bf2 a6 ("=" ECO) being Trifunovic–Uhlmann, Halle 1963.

### 15 Ne5

(a) 15 Na4 Qa5 (ECO) 16 Bd2!? Bb4 =, e.g. 17 Bxb4 Nxb4 18 Nc5 Nxd3 etc., and 15 Re1 Be8 transposes to 14 Re1 above.

(b) 15 a3 Ne7 could be sticky after 16 Ne5 Be8 17 Na4!? Bxa4 18 Qxa4 Qxb2, but White does not appear to have enough for a pawn.

### 15 ... Be8

And now what? d4 hangs, but 16 Nxc6 Bxc6 frees Black's game, and 16 Na4 Qa5 17 Nc5 Bxc5 18 Rxc5 Qxa2 puts the burden of proof on White.

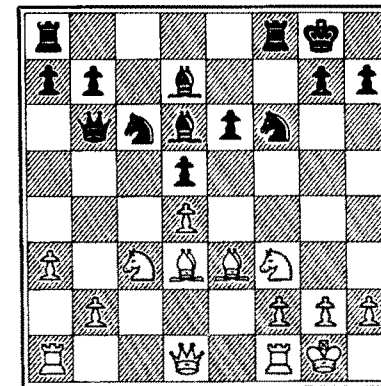
Thus the play after 14 Re1 or 14 Rc1 seems to offer Black both equality and good counterchances.

## 4.273

### 14 a3

(see following diagram)

Often given "!", this move goes a long way towards guarding the queenside pawns which Black harassed in the last two sections. It also prepares



b4, which in turn could preface Na4–c5 with a bind. The White rooks remain uncommitted until further notice.

### 14 ... Be8(!)

A move the author has investigated and played. Its effectiveness stems from a direct challenge to White's bind (by threatening ... Bh5 and anticipating the key move Ne5). Other continuations try to work around that bind and have perhaps less practical value. Theoretically, however, the alternatives are still interesting:

(a) 14 ... Qd8 prevents Ne5: 15 h3 (15 b4 Rc8 16 Rc1 Qe8 =, e.g. 17 Re1 Kh8 and 18 Bb1 Qh5 or 18 Na4 Nxd4! or 18 b5 Na5) 15 ... Rc8 16 Re1 Kh8 (16 ... Qe8!?) 17 Rc1 Qe8 18 Rc2! (18 b4 a6 19 Bb1!? Qh5 = Szily–Uhlmann, 1959. Bb1 deprives White of the excellent

move Be2 after ... Qh5) 18 ... a6 19 Rce2! (allows Black's next) 19 ... Qh5 = (Uhlmann). Perhaps so, in view of 20 Bg5? Nxd4 or 20 Rd2 e5! =. Critical might be 20 Bc1!?, e.g. 20 ... Bb8 21 Bc2 Ba7 with complex play, White's d-pawn again denying him a simple ±.

(b) 14 ... Rae8! is relatively unexplored. After 15 b4 (threatening Ne5, which could not be played immediately due to 15 ... Bxe5 16 dxe5 Qxb2 etc.), better than Uhlmann's 15 ... a6 (16 Ne5!) is 15 ... Qd8!, e.g. 16 Bg5 Re7 17 Re1 Be8 18 b5 (18 h3!?) 18 ... Na5 19 Ne5 of Karolyi–Farago, Hungarian Ch 1979, and now 19 ... Rc7! (20 Bd2 Nc4).

### 15 Ng5!?

Certainly the most natural response. Theory has always given the game Boleslavsky–Pietzsch, Berlin 1967, which went 15 Ne5 Bxe5 16 dxe5 Qxb2 17 exf6 Qxc3 18 fxg7 Qxg7 19 f4 “±”, the ideas being Qd2 and f5 or Rb1 followed by Bc1–b2 or a Rf3–g3 manoeuvre. But in Grunfeld–Watson, Lone Pine 1981, I played 19 ... Rd8!, which defends all threats since it allows a timely ... d4 or ... e5 (with d5 defended). White tried 20 Rc1! Bg6 21 Rc5 Rf6! 22 Rf2 Qe7 23 Rfc2

d4 24 Bc1, and now 24 ... e5 ♣ was clearest. Better than 19 f4 would be 19 Qd2 Rf7 or 19 Rb1, but White will find it difficult to show compensation.

Of course there are other possibilities. If 15 h3!?, Black might well reply 15 ... Ne7(!) threatening b2 for real, e.g. 16 Na4 Bxa4 17 Qxa4 Nf5, or 16 Ng5 Bb8, or 16 b4 Rc8 17 Rc1 a5 with good counterplay.

15 Na4 Qd8 threatens ... e5 (16 Rc1 e5 =) or in some cases ... Bh5, whereas 15 Bg5 Bh5 puts immediate pressure on the d-pawn. Finally, 15 b4! Bh5 16 Na4 Qc7 17 h3 e5 is equal, or here 16 Be2 Rae8 17 Na4 Qd8 18 Nc5 Qb8 19 h3 (versus ... Ng4) 19 ... e5! (20 Nxe5 Bxe2 21 Nxc6? Bxd1 22 Nxb8 Bxc5 ♣♣).

### 15 ... Ne7

Again there is room for investigation. In Wells–Sulman, Lone Pine 1981, Black tried 15 ... Bf7!? 16 b4 Rae8 (? 16 ... Kh8) 17 Qf3! Kh8 18 Qh3 Bg8 19 Rac1 Qd8 20 f4 with White advantage.

Better 15 ... Nd8!?, as in Slotnik–Janata, Prague 1979: 16 Qc2 (prompted by the attack on b2) 16 ... h6 17 Nh7!? Nxh7 18 Bxh7+ Kh8 (“=” Slotnik). 17 Nf3 might be more appropriate, intending 17 ... Bh5 18

Ne5 (18 ... Bxe5 19 dxe5 d4 20 Na4). Yet 17 ... Rc8 maintains a balance in that case, too.

### 16 Kh1!?

On 16 Nxe6, 16 ... Bxh2+ 17 Kxh2 Qxe6 regains the pawn with convenient moves in store on the kingside, i.e. ... Nf5, ... Bh5, and/or ... Ne4 is some combination.

16 Na4 is the other candidate; the 16 ... Bxa4 17 Qxa4 Nf5! threatens e.g. ... Ng4, and 18 Nxe6 Nxe3 19 fxe3 (19 Nxf8 Nxf1) 19 ... Bxh2+ favours Black.

The text (16 Kh1) was Orfalea–Watson, Los Angeles 1981. Black's ... Ne7 gained the time to respond smoothly to the threat on e6 by 16 ... Bc7, and after 17 b4 Nf5, White blundered with 18 g4?? Qd6 ♣♣, but

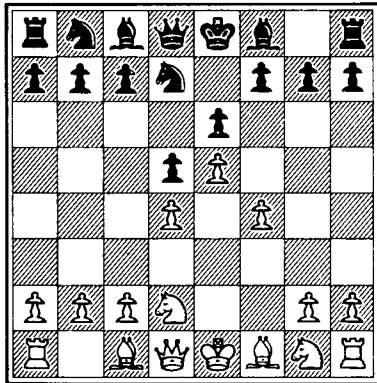
Black stood well in any case.

Dramatic conclusions are not in order, but White's seeming positional pull tends to be illusory in the face of pesky black threats against his queenside and his d4 square. At the very least, Black can achieve obscure, unbalanced positions versus the key moves 12 Bd2, 12 Nf4, and 12 Nc3. Evidently, he can claim overall equality as well; anyway, an enterprising player will appreciate retention of all the pieces on the board and the availability of several plans at any juncture. Creative possibilities abound; indeed, games in this main line have very seldom imitated previous contests. In short, the 7 ... Qb6 system grants the defender fine practical chances and scope for chessic expression.

## 5

## Tarrasch: 3 ... Nf6 with 5 f4

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nd2 Nf6 4 e5  
Nfd7 5 f4



With 5 f4, White establishes his space advantage on the kingside and bolsters e5. His plan is fairly direct: f5 if possible; or, if Black plays ... f5 himself, g4 will be used to get at the enemy king. Ideally, White will develop one knight to f3, the other to e2 or h3, his bishops to d3 and perhaps e3, and castle kingside.

The drawback to 5 f4 is twofold: it exposes the white king should d4 fall (note that White's move does nothing to support the base of the pawn chain); and White's queen's bishop is blocked from play, so in many cases the f5 break becomes not just desirable but essential for the harmonious development of White's pieces. Also, the lack of flexibility with regard to strategy makes it easier for Black to counter the white formation.

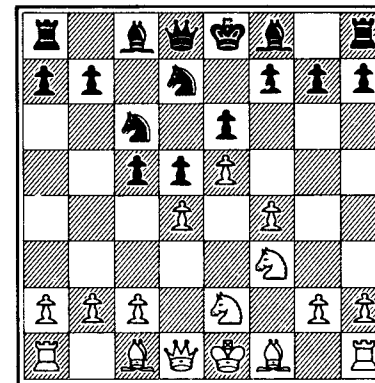
5 ... c5  
6 c3

The main move, but a number of players have preferred other moves, to support d4 with pieces and avoid too many moves. To this end 6 dxc5? Bxc5 is not so good; 7 Qg4 0-0 8 Ngf3 f5 9 Qh3 Qb6 ♣ Perez-Tatai, Netanya 1973. And 6 Ngf3!? leaves the d2 knight

blocking traffic after 6 ... Nc6, when 7 c3 is the note to 7 Ndf3 in the main line, and 7 dxc5 Nxc5 (7 ... Bxc5 =) 8 Bd3 Nxd3+ (or 8 ... Qb6) 9 cxd3 of Siemionawa-Jurczynska, Poland 1979, should offer Black a good game after 9 ... Qb6! 10 Nb3 (10 Qe2 a5 or 10 ... Bd7 11 Nb3 Bb4+) 10 ... Bb4+, e.g. 11 Bd2? Qe3+ 12 Qe2 Qxf4 or 11 Kf1 0-0 12 d4 f6 etc.

6 Ne2 Nc6 7 Ndf3 transposes to 6 Ndf3 (see next paragraph), and here 7 c3 Qb6 8 Ndf3 is 5.1 below, which is fine for Black. For variety, Black has 7 ... b5!? in this line, with the plan ... b4 and perhaps ... Rb8 and/or ... Qb6 with ... Ba6.

6 Ndf3 makes the best impression among these irregulars. Then the most flexible move order is 6 ... Nc6 7 Ne2



with:

(a) 7 ... cxd4 releases the tension and is not best, but it is

playable: 8 Nexd4 Nc5 9 c3 Bd7 10 Be3 f5! (securing e4 and stopping f5) 11 Be2 (±; 11 exf6 gxf6 is unclear) 11 ... Nxd4 (or 11 ... Be7) 12 Bxd4!? Ne4 13 0-0 Be7 14 Kh1 0-0 15 Rg1 Ermenkov-Hecht, Moscow 1977, and now an idea is 15 ... Qe8! intending ... Bb5 or in some cases ... Qh5.

(b) 7 ... Qa5+ appears reasonable, since 8 c3 transposes to the line 6 c3 Nc6 7 Ndf3 Qa5 8 Ne2, when 8 ... b5 is considered =, e.g. 9 Bd2 (9 Be3 b4 10 Kf2 Ba6!) 9 ... b4 10 cxb4 Nxb4 11 Nc3 c4 = Matanovic-Portisch, Portoroz 1973. Also, 8 ... f6!? looks interesting, e.g. 9 dxc5 fxe5! or 9 a3 Be7.

So after 7 ... Qa5+ 8 Bd2!?, Kavalek-Ree, Wijk aan Zee 1982 went 8 ... Qb6 9 Bc3 Be7!? 10 Qd2, and now Kavalek gives 10 ... 0-0!? 11 0-0-0 cxd4 12 Nexd4 Nc5, with rough equality. Simpler either 9 ... cxd4 10 Nexd4 Bb4! = (or here 10 Bxd4 Bc5=); or 9 ... f6!?, intending 10 f5 fxe5! 11 fxe6 cxd4 12 exd7+ Bxd7 13 Bd2 e4 with great compensation; or 10 Ng3 fxe5 11 fxe5 cxd4 ♣; or, finally 10 exf6 Nxf6 (10 ... gxf6) 11 g3 Ne4 =.

(c) 7 ... Qb6! is attractive, when 8 c3 is the line of 5.1 below with 8 Ne2, and 8 g3 can be met by 8 ... f6(!), e.g. 9 Bh3

Nxd4 10 Nxd4 cxd4 11 Nxd4(?) fxe5 12 Nxe6 Nf6!, or here 11 exf6 Bb4+! 12 Kf1 Nxf6 13 Nxd4 0–0 etc.

(d) 7 ... f6!? might also transpose after 8 c3 Qb6 or 8 g3 Qb6.

(e) 7 ... Be7 is also sound, the impressive game Bujupi–Farago, Pristina 1976, continuing 8 c3 0–0 (or 8 ... b5) 9 Be3 f6! 10 a3 (10 exf6 Nxf6 11 dxc5 Ng4! 12 Qd2 e5! *Chess Chat*) 10 ... fxe5 11 fxe5 (11 dxe5!? =) 11 ... cxd4 12 cxd4 Qb6 13 Nc3!? (13 Qd2 — to prevent ... Ndxe5 — 13 ... Na5! 14 Nc1 Nc4 15 Bxc4 dxc4 16 d5 Bc5! with Black initiative — *Chess Chat*) 13 ... Ndxe5! 14 Nxe5 Nxe5 15 Na4 Bh4+ 16 g3 (16 Kd2 Qd8! 17 dxe5 d4 18 Bg1 Bd7 19 Nc5 Qg5+ with attack — *Chess Chat*) 16 ... Nf3+ 17 Kf2 (17 Qxf3 Qa5+!; 17 Ke2 Qb5+) 17 ... Qb3!! 18 Bd3 Qxd1 19 Rhxd1 Nxf2+ 20 Kg2 Ng4 ♯♯.

Very pretty! Overall, 7 ... Qa5+ looks solid and equal, 7 ... Qb6 is a good try for advantage, and 7 ... Be7 is logical but needing further analysis.

6 ... Nc6  
7 Ndf3

Unusual is 7 Ngf3, when 7 ... Be7 8 Bd3 Qb6!? 9 dxc5 Nxc5 10 Nb3 (! ± *ECO*) of

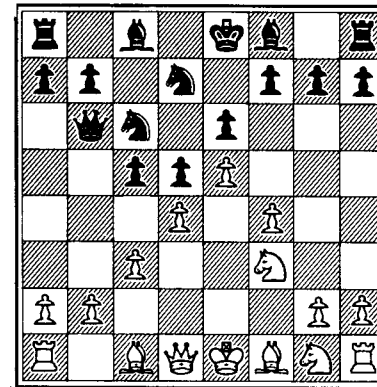
Pillsbury–Maroczy, Paris 1900 is not so convincing, but Black can avoid all by 8 ... 0–0! and 9 0–0? Qb6 or 9 h4 f5!. Another good strategy is 7 ... cxd4 8 cxd4 Nb6 with an improved Leningrad Variation where the knight on d2 is in the way.

The natural answer to 7 Ngf3 may not be quite as good: 7 ... Qb6 (7 ... cxd4 is more accurate first) 8 Nb3 cxd4 (8 ... f6!? *ECO*) 9 cxd4 (9 Nbx4, but this would not be an option after 7 ... cxd4) 9 ... a5! 10 Rb1 (10 a4 Bb4+ 11 Kf2 f6 12 Be3 0–0 13 Rc1 Qd8 14 Bd3 Steinitz–Schiffers, Rostas 1896, or here 13 Bd3 Qd8 14 h4 Ne7! 15 Kg1 Nf5 of Ulvestad–Duraó, Costa del Sol 1964, is unclear, but White may have a small edge. 10 a4 creates weaknesses, however, which are best exploited by 10 ... f6!) 10 ... a4 11 Na1 Bb4+ 12 Kf2 f6 13 Nc2 Be7 “with a minute edge for White” (Winters), Nalik–Bertold, Berlin 1958.

Aside from 7 ... Be7 and 7 ... Qb6, it seems to me that 7 ... cxd4 8 cxd4 f6(!) is appropriate, e.g. 9 Bd3 fxe5 10 fxe5 (? , but 10 dxe5 is very nice for Black) 10 ... Nxd4! 11 Nxd4 Qh4+ wins a pawn. Or 9 Nb3 a5! 10 a4 (What else? 10 Be3 a4 11 Nd2 Qb6) 10 ... Bb4+ 11 Bd2 (11 Kf2 0–0 wins two tempi

on the above example) 11 ... Bxd2+ 12 Qxd2 Qb6 and 13 ... 0–0 with easy equality.

7 ... Qb6



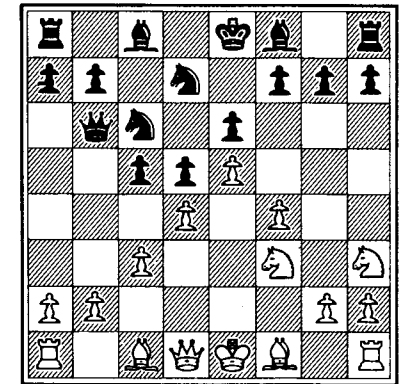
Our repertoire move, about which opinions vary wildly, from “a sharp move which puts considerable pressure on the white centre” (Keene and Taulbut, 1980) to “this archaic move is unsatisfactory and is hardly used today” (Slotnik, 1982). In fact, 7 ... Qb6 is being used increasingly often, and more frequently than any other move at the time of this writing.

It is not within the scope of this book to cover two different systems versus this subvariation (3 ... c5 is the second system; see Chapter 6), but I will offer options at most junctures which follow. Otherwise, I can recommend the Leningrad System with 7 ... cxd4 8 cxd4

h5 followed by ... Nb6, ... Bd7, ... a5 etc. The Leningrad is sharp, full of complications, and hardly explored for an established system.

From the diagram, White has: 5.1 8 Ne2; 5.2 8 g3.

Two other natural moves go completely unmentioned in most books, although one of them was tried (once) some years back and again recently. That is 8 Nh3!?



This avoids the congestion of White's pieces brought about by 8 Ne2, yet still develops a piece and aims at the kingside in variations with Ng5 or f5/Nf4. The older game, Saharov–Bagirov, USSR 1960, went 8 ... cxd4 9 cxd4 Bb4+!? 10 Kf2 f6 11 Kg3!? Nf8 12 Nf2 Ng6 13 Bd3 (“roughly equal” — Winters). Better looks 11 Be3(!) and 11 ... 0–0 12 a3 (or

12 Bd3 fxe5 13 fxe5 Be7 14 Qc2! ±) 12 ... Be7 13 b4, or 11 ... Be7 12 Qd2 or 12 b3, with White advantage in each case.

Fearing that kind of solid White edge, the author took a radical approach in Shirazi-Watson, Los Angeles 1981: 8 Nh3 f6! (8 ... Be7!? is also logical, intending 9 a3 c4 or 9 Nf2 f6) 9 exf6!? Nxf6 10 Bd3 (10 a3 cxd4 11 cxd4 Bd6 with rapid development) 10 ... cxd4 11 cxd4 Bb4+ 12 Ke2 0-0 13 a3 Bd6 14 Re1 Ne4! (14 ... Bd7 15 Kf1 ±) 15 Kf1 (15 Bc2 Kh8 or 15 ... Bd7 16 Kf1 Be8!? 17 Bxe4 dxe4 18 Rxe4 Bh5! unclear) 15 ... e5! 16 dxe5 (16 fxe5? Bxh3 17 gxh3 Rxf3+! 18 Qxf3 Rf8 19 Bf4 Nd2+, or here 17 exd6 Nxd4 with the idea 18 Be3 Qxb2) 16 ... Bxh3 17 Bxe4! (17 Be3 Bc5! 18 Bxe4 dxe4 19 Qd5+ Kh8 ♣, e.g. 20 Bxc5 Qb5+ 21 Kg1 exf3 22 gxh3 Rad8 23 a4 f2+! or 20 Qxc5 Bxg2+!) 17 ... dxe4 18 Qd5+! (18 Qxd6? Rad8; 18 Rxe4? Bf5; 18 exd6 exf3 19 gxh3 Nd4; 18 Ng5 Qb5+!) 18 ... Kh8 19 Ng5 (19 gxh3 exf3 20 exd6 Nd4!) 19 ... Nxe5! 20 Be3!? (20 gxh3 Nd3; 20 Nxb3 Ng4 21 Rxe4 Nxb2+ 22 Ke2 Rae8 ♣) 20 ... Bxg2+ 21 Kg1? (21 Kxg2 Qxb2+ 22 Kg3 Nf3 ♣) 21 ... Qxb2 22 Bd4 Qd2 ♣♣.

This game is illustrative of the violent attacking chances Black can get due to White's many pawn moves and rather airy centre. The question naturally arises whether White need play 9 exf6. True, 9 Nh4?! cxd4 10 Qh5+ Kd8 11 Ng6 hxg6 etc. is a typically good exchange sacrifice, but 9 Bd3 is more interesting, e.g. 9 ... cxd4 10 cxd4 Bb4+ 11 Kf1 fxe5 (or 11 ... 0-0, which avoids Nf4 in some cases) 12 fxe5 (12 dxe5 Nc5, e.g. 13 Bc2 Qb5+ 14 Kg1 Ne4 unclear) 12 ... 0-0 13 Nf2 (13 Nf4!?, which could be avoided by 11 ... 0-0, etc., leads to a possible draw after 13 ... Nxd4!? 14 Nxd4 Nxe5 15 Nf3! Nxf3 16 Qxf3 Bd7 17 Qh5 g6 18 Bxg6 etc.) 13 ... Ndx5!?! 14 fxe5 Nxe5 unclear, e.g. 15 Be2 (! probably best) 15 ... Bc5!? 16 Nd3 Ng4, or here 15 ... Bd7 16 Qd4 Nxf3 17 Qxb6 Nxb2+ with a typically obscure position.

The other mystery move would be 8 a3, threatening b4 and stopping ... Bb4+. Probably theoreticians and players were not happy with the response 8 ... c4, fixing on b3 and preparing a major reorganization with ... Qc7, ... Nb6, ... f6, ... Bd7 and ... 0-0-0. At any point b3 gives away too many queenside squares, and

an effective g4 and f5 break will not be easy to achieve. Nevertheless, 8 a3 looks reasonable. Another answer would be 8 ... a5, when 9 g3 f5!? 10 Bg2 Be7 resembles the ... f5 lines below, a sample line being 11 Ne2 a4 12 0-0 Qb5 intending ... Na5.

## 5.1

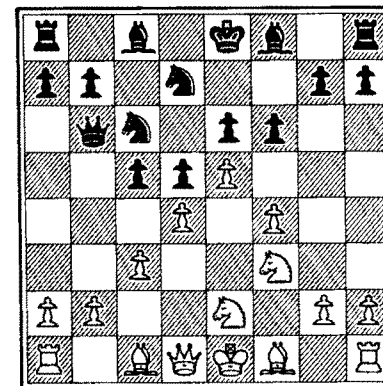
8 Ne2

A move which continues to be played despite poor results to date.

8 ... f6

Immediately undermining the centre. Another idea which has had success is 8 ... Be7: 9 g3 (9 a3 c4; 9 g4 f6; 9 Ng3 cxd4 10 cxd4 f5!? 11 Be2 0-0 12 0-0?! g5! ♣ Enevoldsen-Gilfer, Helsinki 1952; 12 a3 =; 9 ... f6!?) 9 ... cxd4 (9 ... f5 is 5.21 below) 10 cxd4 f6 11 Bh3 (11 a3 =) 11 ... fxe5 12 fxe5 0-0! (a theme we shall see more of later) 13 Bxe6+ (?! 13 Nf4 Bb4+ 14 Ke2 — 14 Bd2 Nxd4 — 14 ... Kh8 15 Nxe6 Ndx5! Kapengut) 13 ... Kh8 14 Bxd5 (14 Bxd7 Rxf3! ♣ Shamkovich) 14 ... Ndx5! 15 dxe5 Nxe5 16 Nfd4 (16 Nxe5 Bb4+ ♣♣; 16 Ned4 Qa5+) 16 ... Bb4+ 17

Nc3 Bg4 18 Qd2 Rae8 19 Nde2 Rf2! 0-1 Foigel-Monin, USSR 1977.



9 g3

(a) Keres recommended 9 exf6 Nxf6 10 g3. Then a good sequence is 10 ... Bd6 11 Bg2 0-0 12 0-0 (12 Ne5? cxd4 13 cxd4 Bb4+) 12 ... Ne4 13 Kh1 Bd7 intending ... Be8-h5.

(b) 9 a3 guards against ... Bb4+ and prepares b4. Enevoldsen-Koch, Helsinki 1952, continued 9-Be7 10 b4 (10 Ng3 0-0 11 Bd3 fxe5 12 fxe5 cxd4 13 cxd4 a5! ♣ Euwe) 10 ... cxd4 11 cxd4 0-0 12 Qd3 a6!? (Not really necessary; 12 ... Qd8 or 12 ... Qc7 is faster) 13 Be3 Qd8 14 g3 Nb6 =.

Very involved was 9 a3 cxd4 10 cxd4 Be7 11 Nc3 0-0 12 Na4 Qc7 13 b4 fxe5 14 dxe5 Ndx5! (Black just insists upon this

sacrifice!) 15 fxe5 Rxf3!? 16 Qxf3!? (16 gxf3 Bh4+ 17 Kd2 unclear) 16 ... Nd4 17 Qc3 Qxe5+ 18 Kf2? (18 Be3 Bh4+ unclear) 18 ... Bd7 19 Be3 Rf8+ 20 Kg1 Rxf1+! 21 Kxf1 Qf5+ 22 Ke1 Nc2+ 23 Kd2 Nxe3! 24 Kxe3 Bf6 25 Qd3 d4+ ♣♣ Orev-Padevsla, Bulgaria 1976.

9 ... cxd4  
10 cxd4

10 Nexd4!? has not been tried, but 10 ... fxe5 11 fxe5 Nxe5(?) 12 Nxe5 Nxe5 13 Qh5+ looks strong. Perhaps 11 ... Bc5 is best, intending ... Ndxe5 or ... 0-0 next.

10 ... Bb4+

On 10 ... fxe5 first, 11 fxe5 Bb4+ transposes to a line below, and 11 dxe5? Bb4+ 12 Bd2 Qe3!(♣): 13 Qb3 (? but 13 Bg2 0-0) 13 ... Qe4 14 Bxb4 (else ... Nc5) 14 ... Nxb4 15 Ng5 Nc2+ 16 Kf2 Nxa1 ♣♣ Skrobek-Lechtynsky, Decin 1978. Finally, the speculative 11 ... fxe5 12 Bh3!? of Chibur-danidze-Lechtynsky, Vilnius 1978, should be answered not by 11 ... exd4 12 Bxe6 unclear, but by 11 ... Bb4+! 12 Kf1 (12 Bd2 Nxd4) 12 ... Nxd4 13 Nfxd4 exd4 14 Nxd4 Nf6 ♣.

11 Nc3

11 Bd2? led to a crushing position for Black in Hamann-Uhlmann, Halle 1963, after 11 ... fxe5 12 fxe5 0-0 13 Bg2 Ndx5! 14 dxe5 Nxe5(♣) 15 Ned4 (15 Nf4 Qe3+ 16 Kf1 Bxd2 17 Nxe5 Qxe5 18 Qxd2 g5 19 Re1 Qd6 ♣♣ Uhlmann) 15 ... Nd3+ 16 Ke2 Nxb2 17 Qb3 Qa6+ 18 Kf2 Bxd2 19 Qxb2 Qd3! 20 Rad1 Qe3+ 21 Kf1 b6! 22 Qxd2 Ba6+ 23 Ne2 Rxf3+ 24 Bxf3 Qxf3+ 25 Kg1 Bxe2 26 Re1 Bd3! 0-1.

11 ... 0-0

After 11 ... fxe5 12 fxe5 0-0 13 Bf4 (13 a3 Rxf3!), theory gives 13 ... Be7 14 a3! ± Ghinda-Prandstetter, Bucharest 1980. But 13 ... g5!? looks interesting, since 14 Bxg5 Rxf3 15 Qxf3 Qxd4 is unclear, and 14 Nxc5 Qxd4 15 Qh5 Bxc3+ 16 bxc3 Qxc3+ 17 Kf2 Qc2+ defends h7 with ongoing attack.

12 a3!?

A move leading to enormous complications. Wrong are 12 Bh3? fxe5 13 Bxe6+ Kh8 ♣ and 12 Bg2?! fxe5 13 fxe5 Rxf3! 14 Bxf3 Nxd4. So theory goes 12 exf6 Nxf6 13 a3 ("=" Bondarevsky). Then 13 ... Bd6 is presumably equal, but more ambitious would be 13 ... Bxc3+ 14 bxc3 Ne4 (intending moves like ... Na5, ... Nd6-c4, and

... Bd7, ... Rac8 etc.), or here 14 ... Bd7 with ... Be8-h5 in mind.

12 ... Be7!?

Keeping the pieces on. Objectively better was 12 ... Bxc3+ 13 bxc3 Qc7 intending ... Nb6, ... Na5, ... Bd7 etc.; but here 13 ... fxe5 14 fxe5 Ndx5!? 15 dxe5 Nxe5 16 Bg2 Bd7 falls a little short after 17 Bf4!.

13 Na4

13 Bh3 Kh8 (13 ... fxe5!? 14 Bxe6+ Kh8 15 Nxd5 Qd8 is unclear) 14 Na4 Qa6 (or 14 ... Qc7) 15 Bf1 b5 16 Nc3 fxe5! 17 Bxb5 Qb6 18 Bxc6 Qxc6 19 fxe5 Ba6 ♣ SznapiK-Knaak, Czechoslovakia Championship 1983.

13 ... Qc7

14 Be3

14 Bh3 fxe5! 15 Bxe6+ Kh8 16 dxe5 Ndx5! 17 Bxd5 Nxf3+ 18 Bxf3 Bh3.

14 ... g5!?

A surprising thrust. In response, White could just develop, but he prefers to grab material.

15 exf6 Nxf6

16 Nxc3

16 fxc5 Ng4 17 Bf4 (17 Bg1 Bd6! threatens ... Bxg3+) 17 ... Rxf4 18 gxf4 Qxf4 is unclear, with ideas of ... Nxd4, ... Bxg5, and ... Bd7 with ... Rf8.

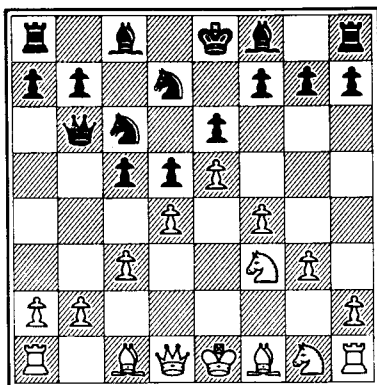
16 ... e5!

Black goes for broke with a thematic sacrifice to free the c8 bishop. Now Shamkovich-Brown, London 1981, went 17 Qc2?! (17 fxe5? Ng4 18 Qd2 Nxe5! 19 dxe5 Qxe5 ♣; 17 dxe5! Ng4 18 Bc5!) 17 ... Qa5+!? (17 ... exf4! 18 Bxf4 Qa5+ 19 b4, and now both 19 ... Bxb4+ 20 axb4 Nxb4 and 19 ... Nxb4 20 axb4 Bxb4+ followed by ... Re8, ... Bg4, ... Rac8, etc., are strong) 18 b4 Bxb4+ 19 axb4 Nxb4 20 Qc3! Nc2+ 21 Kd2 Nxa1! 22 Qxa5 Nb3+ 23 Kc3 Nxa5 24 dxe5, and instead of 24 ... Ne4+? 25 Nxe4 ±, 24 ... Ng4 25 Bc5 Rd8 26 h3 Nh6 27 g4! is unclear, with better practical chances for White.

Overall, 8 Ne2 cannot be said to solve White's developmental problems. While the main line is dynamically balanced, Black holds the practical edge with a constant threat of sacrificial violence in the centre.

## 5.2

8 g3



The main line. White prepares to put his bishop on h3 (or g2) and avoids the traffic jam that 8 Ne2 caused. A resulting advantage is that Bd3 is still a viable option in many lines. So why play 8 g3 in that event? Because it creates a secure haven for the king after Kf2–g2, and at the same time makes a useful, semi-waiting move.

The drawbacks are fairly clear: yet another pawn move, no direct support for d4 or e5, etc. We shall look at a solid, conservative defence, and two confrontational ones: 5.21 8 ... f5; 5.22 8 ... f6; 5.23 8 ... Be7.

## 5.21

8 ... f5

This attempts to nip White's kingside expansion in the bud. After establishing a solid kingside position, Black will turn to the other side of the board, where he has natural attacking prospects. On the dark side, ... f6 is no longer an option, so it will be difficult to achieve any demolition of the white centre, even by sacrificial means. Thus 8 ... f5 may be summarized as a stabilizing move with a view towards long-term expansion.

## 9 Ne2

The most common response. The game Pavlov–Farago, Romania 1982, went 9 h3 Be7 10 g4 a5! 11 Ne2 (Or 11 gxf5 exf5, when 12 h4 and 12 Bg2 are logical options) 11 ... 0–0 12 Rg1 Kh8 13 h4 (White seems to feel that normal development does not achieve anything; 13 Rb1!? intending Be3) 13 ... Ndb8 14 Bh3 Na6 15 Kf2 Bd7 (“ $\bar{\text{T}}$ ” Farago, but, for example, Rb1 and Be3 is still possible on this and the next move) 16 Kg2 a4 17 Kh2 a3 18 b3 cxd4 19 cxd4 Nab4 20 Ng3?! (20 gxf5 exf5 21 Ng3) 20 ... fxd4 21 Bxd4 Qa6! (now Black is clearly better) 22 Rg2 Qd3 23 Qg1 Nc2 24 Rd2 Qc3 25 Rb1 Ne3 26 Bh3 Nf5! 27 Nxf5 exf5  $\bar{\text{T}}$  intending ... Be8–h5 and eventually ... Nd8–e6.

Poor play by White, but that does not invalidate Black's opening idea.

## 9 ... Be7

A game Radulov–Gunawan, Indonesia 1982, saw 9 ... h5!? 10 Bg2 Ndb8 11 h3 Bd7 12 Kf2 a5 13 g4 cxd4 14 cxd4 g6 15 gxf5 (15 Nh4!?) 15 ... gxf5 with an unclear position, when 16 h4 was probably better than 16 Ng5 h4!, as played.

9 ... a5 10 Bh3!? Be7 11 g4 0–0 would be complex and roughly equal; also possible here is 10 Ng5!?, e.g. 10 ... Ndb8 11 Rg1 Be7 12 g4 Bxg5 13 fxg5 cxd4 14 cxd4 0–0 = Van der Wiel–Ree, Arnhem 1983.

## 10 Bg2

Or 10 Kf2 a5 11 Kg2 Ndb8!? 12 Rb1 0–0 13 Be3 Na6 14 h3 Bd7 15 g4 a4! 16 Ng3 Nc7 17 Rh2 cxd4 18 Nxd4 Nxd4 19 Bxd4 Bc5 Govedarica–Farago, Belgrade 1982; “ $\bar{\text{T}}$ ” (Farago); maybe 18 cxd4 was best. If 10 Bh3, 10 ... h5 is good, with the idea 11 Bg2 h4 or 11 Ng5 Nf8.

10 ... a5  
11 0–0 cxd4

12 cxd4 a4 13 Rf2 a3 14 b3 Ndb8 15 Be3 Bd7 16 Nc1 Nb4 17 Ne1  $\frac{1}{2}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$  Vogt–Ambroz, Trnava 1982. Black followed

the same plan as in the two Farago games. He might continue by ... Nbc6–d8–f7 and work for a kingside break. In any case, results thus far suggest that 8 ... f5 yields a solid, workable position.

## 5.22

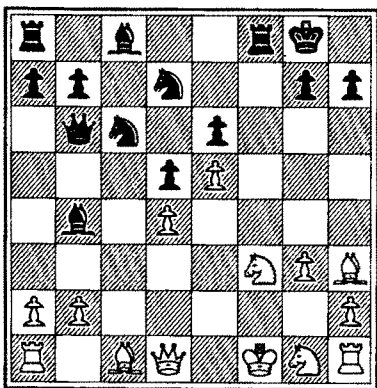
8 ... f6

Only one square away from 8 ... f5, but what a different game! With 8 ... f6, Black already intimates that he is going for broke against White's centre, since an exchange on e5 will only favour the first player unless there is a follow-up, e.g. a sacrifice on d4 or e5 or f3. Yet on the positive side, White now finds it very difficult to even develop his pieces without his centre collapsing. To begin with, 9 ... cxd4 10 cxd4 Bb4+ 11 Kf2 fxe5 is threatened, winning a pawn. Note too that 9 Ne2 transposes to 5.1 above, whereas 9 Kf2 is not possible by virtue of the attack on e5.

## 9 Bd3!?

Considered best by Keene and Taulbut. White should avoid 9 f5? cxd4 10 cxd4 (10 fxe6 Ndxex5  $\bar{\text{T}}$ ) 10 ... fxe5 11 fxe6 Nf6 12 dxe5 Ne4  $\bar{\text{T}}$ .

But 9 Bh3!? is critical: 9 ... cxd4 10 cxd4 (10 Bxe6 dxc3 helps Black) 10 ... fxe5!? 11 fxe5 Bb4+ 12 Kf1 Portisch–Tal, Oberhausen 1961 (“±” *ECO*), and here Keene and Taulbut correctly point out that instead of 12 ... Nf8?, 12 ... 0–0! should be tried.



Now 13 Bxe6+ Kh8 (threatening ... Ndx5) and White has problems, e.g. 14 Bxd5? Qb5+ or 14 Bxd7 Bxd7 15 Kg2 Bf5 preparing ... Be4. So they give 13 Kg2! as best, and 13 ... Ndx5! 14 dxe5 Nxe5, an extremely interesting position where White has trouble developing with his loose king and Black has dangerous centre pawns. One line is 15 Bf4 Nc4 (Keene), who claims “superb compensation for his piece” for Black, although 16 Qe2! is quite unclear. Then violent measures like 16 ... e5 and

16 ... Rxf4 do not seem to work, so 16 ... Bd7 intending ... Rae8 looks best, e.g. 17 b3 (17 Ne5 Nxe5 18 Qxe5 Bd6!) 17 ... Na3 18 Ne5 Bb5 or here 18 Be3 Qd6 19 Bd4 Rac8. Not for the faint of heart!

15 Qd4 seemed to me a refutation at first, but, remarkably, the position after 15 ... Qxd4 16 Nxd4 Nd3! (threatening ... Rf2 or ... Ne1 Mate) gives Black ongoing play, e.g. 17 Ngf3 e5 18 Bxc8 Raxc8 or here 18 Ne6 Rf6; or 17 Bxe6+ Bxe6 18 Nxe6 Rf2+ 19 Kh3 Rf1!; or, finally, 17 Be3 Rf6 with ... e5, ... d4, and/or ... Nxb2 and ... Nc4 to follow.

One game, Yudasin–Knaak, Trnava 1983, followed this whole line and White came up with 15 Qb3!?. After 15 ... Nc4!? 16 a3 Bc5 17 Qxb6 Bxb6, White still had problems developing and 18 b3!? Na5 19 Bf4 (19 Rb1 e5!) 19 ... Nxb3 20 Re1 h6 eventually led to a draw. But I think Black can play for more with the amazing 15 ... Qb5(!) and 16 a3? Nxf3 wins, 16 Nxe5?? or 16 Nd4?? fail to 16 ... Qf1 Mate, and 16 a4 Nxf3! 17 Qxf3 (17 axb5 Ne1 Mate; 17 Bf4 Nd4!) 17 ... Qc4 18 Qe2 Bc5! or here 18 Qd1 e5! gives Black too much. Likewise 16 Bf4 Nxf3 17 Qxf3 e5 or here 17 Nxf3 Qe2+ is unpalatable.

A surprising line is 16 Bd2, when 16 ... Nxf3 17 Bxb4 is strong, but 16 ... Rxf3! 17 Qxb4 Rf2+! 18 Kxf2 Nd3+ refutes!

A new try is 15 Qe2!?. Then Knaak gives 15 ... Nc4!? 16 b3 Bc3! 17 Rb1 Nd6 intending ... Ne4 and ... e5. Here 17 bxc4 Bxa1 18 Ba3 Rf6 19 cxd5 Bd7 gives good play. Ermenkov–Knaak, Bulgaria–East Germany 1983 went instead 15 ... Nxf3 16 Nxf3 e5! 17 Bxc8 Raxc8 18 Nxe5 Qe6 19 Bf4 Rf5 20 Rac1, and now Black should play 20 ... Rcf8 (Knaak), with the idea 21 h4 Re8! 22 Qb5 Bd6 or 21 Rc2 g5! etc.

Rather than deal with all that, 9 Bd3 tries to prevent Black from safely castling kingside, and exploits the fact that ... f6 allows a discovered check on g6 if Black captures too many times on d4.

9 ... cxd4  
10 cxd4 Be7!

Avoiding 10 ... Bb4+ 11 Kf1 when White slips out on g2, e.g. 11 ... fxe5 12 fxe5 0–0 13 Kg2 and here 13 ... Nxd4 14 Nxd4 Nxe5 15 Bf4 seems to come up short.

11 Ne2

The main alternative is the standard king march, initiated

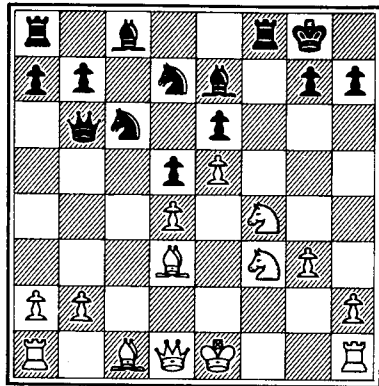
by 11 Kf1. An interesting answer would be 11 ... Kd8 (threatening d4 and reserving ... fxe5 and ... Rf8); but also adequate looks 11 ... 0–0 12 Kg2 Kh8 13 Bb1! (d4 must be protected, and 13 Ne2? fxe5 14 fxe5 Rxf3! 15 Kxf3 Nxd4+ 16 Nxd4 Qxd4 is obviously strong. If 13 h4!?, one line is 13 ... Nxd4 14 Ng5 h6!? 15 Qh5 fxe5 16 hxe5 Nf5 17 gxh6 g6! 18 Qxg6 Rg8 or here 17 g4 Nc5 18 Bc2 Ne4! etc. As this is all risky, Black should also consider simply 14 ... fxe5 15 hxe5 Nf5 16 Qh5 h6 — a simpler way to get to the same position — when 17 g4 can also be answered by 17 ... Qd4, e.g. 18 gxf5 Qxd3 19 gxh6 Qxf5! and Black defends) 13 ... Rf7!? 14 Qd3 (14 f5 Ndx5! with a very strong attack) 14 ... Nf8 and Black develops smoothly with good play on the queenside.

11 ... fxe5  
12 fxe5 0–0  
13 Nf4

13 Bf4 g5(!), e.g. 14 Nxe5 Bxe5 15 Bxe5 Ndx5! 16 dxe5 Nxe5 17 Rf1 Rxf1+ 18 Kxf1 Nf3 threatening the bishop on g5 and ... e5.

(see following diagram)

13 ... Nxd4!



A typical "at-all-costs" centre demolition which prevents castling, nets two pawns and frees Black's centre pawns to advance.

14 Nxd4 Nxe5

With the immediate threat 15 ... Qxd4! 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7 17 Qxd4 Nf3+.

15 Nc2

15 Be3 Bb4+ (or 15 ... Qb4+!? with the idea 16 Ke2 Ng4! or 16 Qd2 g5!) 16 Ke2 Bc5 unclear (threatening ... Ng4 or ... Nxd3 and ... e5), or here 16 ... Ng4!? 17 Bg1 Qd6! and Black has many ideas such as ... e5, ... g5, ... Qe5+, etc.

15 ... Bb4+!

16 Bd2

16 Ke2 Nxd3 17 Nxd3 e5! is killing, threatening ... Bg4+, ... e4, etc. 16 Nxb4 Qxb4+ 17 Ke2 (17 Bd2? Nxd3+ 18 Nxd3 Qe4+) 17 ... Nxd3 18 Nxd3 (18

Qxd3 e5! 19 Qxd5+ Kh8 with ... Bg4+ and/or centralizing rook moves to follow) 18 ... Qe4+ 19 Kd2 Qg2+ 20 Kc3 e5! with a crushing attack.

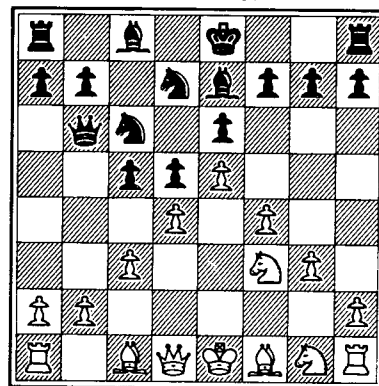
16 ... Bxd2+?!

Clearer is 16 ... Rxf4!, when Black was wary of 17 Bxh7+ Kxh7 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 gxf4, but then 19 ... Nd3+ leads to a win.

The text is Henley-Watson, New York 1981, which continued 17 Kxd2 Nxd3 18 Nxd3 e5! (the point) 19 Kc1 (19 Nxe5 Qh6+ and ... Bf5, or just 19 ... Bf5) 19 ... Bf5 20 Kb1 Rac8 21 Rf1, and although Black won with 21 ... Qb5!?, 21 ... Qg6 22 Rxf5 Qxf5 was best, with winning central pawns and other threats.

## 5.23

8 ... Be7



For those who find 8 ... f6 too hair-raising, this is a less committal move which announces no particular strategy, but does prepare the same kind of assault as in 5.22 should Black so choose. The idea is to see where White is going first.

9 Bh3

9 Bd3? loses the d-pawn, of course, but there are alternatives:

(a) 9 Ne2 f6! is Foigel-Monin of 5.1 above.

(b) 9 Kf2 cxd4 10 cxd4 g5! was Ermenkov-Despotovic, Smederevska Palanka 1979. In view of 10 fxf5 Ndx5! and faced with ... g4, White tried 11 h3 gxf4 12 gxf4 f6! (Black's king can always run to d8) 13 Qb3! Qxb3 14 axb3 Nb6 =.

(c) 9 h4!? is aggressive, but that is a lot of pawn moves: 9 ... cxd4 10 cxd4 f6 11 Bd3 fxe5 12 fxe5 0-0! 13 Bf4 (13 Bxh7+? Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg8 15 Qh5 Bb4+! ♠♠ Despotovic) 13 ... Qxb2 Gavela-Despotovic, Belgrade 1976; and instead of 14 Rc1? Qg2! ♠♠, White had to try 14 Rb1 Qxa2 (14 ... Qg2 15 Rh2) 15 Ne2 unclear (Despotovic).

9 ... cxd4

10 cxd4 0-0

11 Ne2

Not 11 f5? exf5 12 Bxf5 Ndx5 etc.

11 ... f6!

The same old idea. 11 ... Qa6 12 0-0 Nb6 13 g4 f6! 14 exf6 Bxf6 = was Mestel-Farago, USSR 1980, but Hardicsay likes "13 Rf2!" intending Bf1.

12 Bxe6+ Kh8

13 exf6

What else? Now Hardicsay-Ortel, Hungary 1981 went 13 ... Bb4+! (a Sznapik suggestion) 14 Bd2 (14 Kf1!?) 14 ... Nxf6 15 Bxc8 Bxd2+!? (Before this game came in, I had analysed 15 ... Raxc8 with fair play for a pawn, e.g. 16 0-0 Bxd2 17 Qxd2 Ne4 or 16 Bxb4 Qxb4+ 17 Qd2 Ne4! etc.) 16 Qxd2 Ne4 17 Qd3 Qa5+? (17 ... Raxc8 18 0-0 Nb4 19 Qb3 Rc2 20 Rae1 unclear — Hardicsay) 18 Nc3 Raxc8 19 0-0 Nb4 20 Qe2 Nxc3 21 bxc3 Rxc3 22 Qe7! Rb8 23 Rae1 h6 24 Qf7! Nc6 25 Ng5! hxg5 26 fxf5 g6 27 Re8+ 1-0.

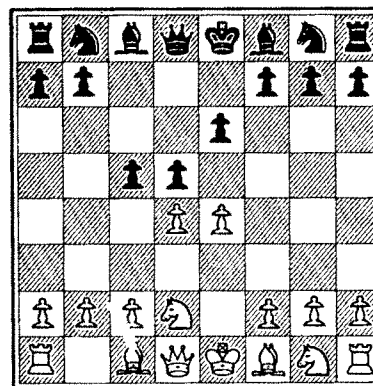
Finally White wins one, but the notes to Black's 15th and 17th show that this was not a direct result of the opening. In any case, 8 ... Be7 treads some sort of middle ground between 8 ... f5 and 8 ... f6.

What is to be said about all this? Theory has not yet discovered a convincing answer to 3 ... Nf6. In fact, no one seems to have located even a reliable  $\pm$ , a situation which in my opinion does not exist for the main line with 3 ... c5 4 exd5 exd5. When one considers the

bonuses of active play and attacking chances, 3 ... Nf6 makes for an ideal practical weapon versus the Tarrasch. The only real drawback is risk, so in the next chapter we look into a safer, more positional method of meeting 3 Nd2.

## 6 Tarrasch: 3 ... c5 with 4 ... Qxd5

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nd2 c5



An entirely different approach from 3 ... Nf6. Here Black tries to break up the White centre immediately, even at positional cost of tempi or structure. This straightforward clarification reduces the risk of a long-term bind (White's e-pawn does not reach e5, for one thing).

4 exd5

The main move, but White sometimes plays 4 Ngf3, which prevents our main line 4 exd5 Qxd5 5 Ngf3 cxd4 6 Bc4 Qd6, since, for example, 4 ... Nc6 5 exd5 Qxd5 6 Bc4 Qd6? loses its point after 7 Ne4.

But there are two other moves which lead most players of White to prefer 4 exd5:

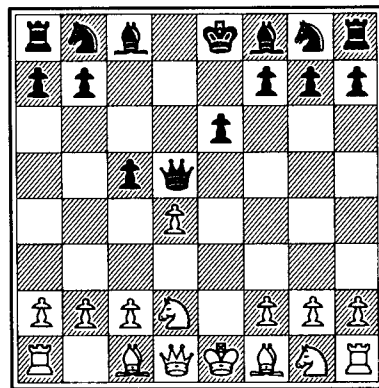
(a) 4 ... Nf6 5 exd5 (5 e5 Nfd7 is the gambit version of Chapter 4: 3 ... Nf6 4 e5 Nfd7 5 Ngf3, which is not very promising for White) 5 ... Nxd5 (5 ... Qxd5!? 6 Bc4 Qd8 7 0-0 cxd4 8 Nb3 Nc6 is the main line, but with 6 ... Qd8 instead of 6 ... Qd6. This is not as flexible, but Petrosian has drawn many games with 6 ... Qd8) 6 Nb3 (The only difficult move. 6 dxc5 Bxc5 7 Nb3 Be7 8 c4 Nb4 9 Qxd8+ Bxd8 = was Krnic-Ivkov, Smederevska Palanka 1981. After 6 Ne4 cxd4 7 Nxd4, 7 ... Be7 held the balance in

Keres–Bronstein, USSR Ch 1947. Easier would be just 7 ... Nd7 intending ... Ndf6 or ... Nc5. Finally, even 7 ... a6!? planning ... e5 is interesting) 6 ... cxd4 7 Nbx4 (7 Bb5+ Bd7 = Prins–Gligoric, Venice 1949; 7 Qxd4!? Nc6 8 Bb5 Bd7 9 Qe4 Peters–Brown, North Hollywood 1982, and now Peters gives 9–a6 10 Bxc6 Bxc6 answering 11 Nbd4 with 11 ... Nc3 or 11 ... Bb4+) 7 ... Be7 8 g3 (8 Bd3 0–0 9 0–0 Bf6 = Torre–Korchnoi, Nice 1974, or 8 Be2 0–0 9 0–0 Bf6 10 c4 Ne7 =, as in Ivkov–Petrosian, Zagreb 1965) 8 ... Nc6 (or 8 ... 0–0, e.g. 9 Bg2 Nc6 10 Nxc6 bxc6 11 0–0 Ba6 12 Re1 Bf6 13 c3 c5 14 Qc2 Rb8 15 Ne5 Qc7 16 Ng4 Be7 17 a3 Bd6 = Djuric–Uusi, Tallin 1981) 9 c3 (9 Nxc6 bxc6 10 Bg2 Ba6! Ornstein) 9 ... 0–0 10 Bg2 Nxd4 11 Nxd4 Qb6 12 0–0 Bf6 13 Nf3 Rd8 14 Qe2 Bd7 15 c4 Martinovic–Ornstein, Vrnjacka Banja 1979, and Ornstein gives 15 ... Ne7! =, which seems true. After 15 ... Qa6!? 16 Ng5!, Black still had 16 ... h6 17 Ne4 Rac8 18 Nxf6+ (18 Qg4 Rxc4 19 Bxh6 unclear) 18 ... Nxf6 19 b3 Bc6 (Ornstein) with fairly balanced play.

(b) 4 ... cxd4(!) is ideal for the French player in its simplicity and transpositional charac-

teristics, i.e. 5 Nxd4 (5–exd5 Qxd5 is our main line) 5 ... Nf6 (5 ... e5!?) 6 e5 (6 Bb5+ Bd7 7 e5 Bxb5 =) 6 ... Nfd7 7 f4? (7 Ndf3 Nc6 8 Bf4 Qb6) 7 ... Nc6 8 N4f3 Nc5 with a satisfactory side variation of the 5 f4 Tarrasch; or 7 ... Nxe5!

4 ... Qxd5



For years, Petrosian has used this move to obtain short draws and occasional wins, but no one took much notice (“Who could refuse a draw with Petrosian?”, they reasoned). Until the last two years, that is. Suddenly international players everywhere are capturing with the queen, and doing rather well. Some very sharp ideas involving active piece placement have popped up, most of them attributable to Swedish IM Axel Ornstein, who played key early games and has made some very

fundamental suggestions. At present, Spassky, Seirawan and Lein are a few of the prominent names who have joined Ornstein and Petrosian in espousing 4 ... Qxd5.

Philosophically, this old idea looks pretty modern. Whereas in the 4 ... exd5 variation, Black takes on an isolani and tries to develop quickly, 4 ... Qxd5 sacrifices development for the sake of a favourable pawn structure, i.e. one with an extra centre pawn. The result is very much like a Sicilian Defence where Black has achieved the freeing ... d5 and recaptured (after White's exd5) with a piece. Of course if it were that simple, the Tarrasch would be an insignificant deviation from 3 Nc3. The problem, as with the Sicilian, is that Black has to give up several tempi and is therefore subject to considerable pressure from the White pieces. As with the Sicilian, too, a violent White attack can succeed brilliantly. On the other hand, if it fails Black will often be left with the pleasant task of mopping up disorganized enemy forces. If White cannot achieve an attack or bind early on, Black's pieces tend to develop effectively and assume the initiative.

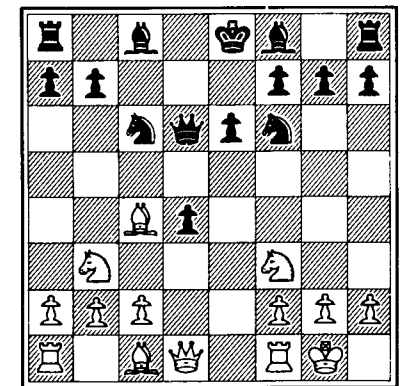
5 Ngf3

5 dxc5 Bxc5 6 Ngf3 Nf6 7 Bc4 Qc6! allows Black to develop quickly with no real problems.

5 ... cxd4  
6 Bc4 Qd6

The best move, simply because Black does not fall *too* far behind in development and keeps an eye on key squares like e5, d4, and f4 (stopping Bf4). 6 ... Qd8, as mentioned earlier, has done okay for Petrosian, yet has no real advantages over the text. Note that with 6 ... Qd6, Black is one move closer to ... 0–0–0, if he wishes it.

7 0–0 Nf6  
8 Nb3 Nc6



9 Nbx4

White has twice tried 9 Qe2?! Be7 10 Rd1 e5!, but has not done well, e.g. 11 Bb5 Bg4 12

Na5 0–0! 13 Nxb7 Qc7 ♣ Medina–Eliskases, Mar del Plata 1953.

The main alternative is 9 Re1. Then Black can safely enter the Spassky/Lein set-up of 9 ... Bd7 10 Nbx4 Nxd4 11 Nxd4 and now either 11 ... Be7 = or 11 ... 0–0–0(!) with a good game (compare 6.1 below).

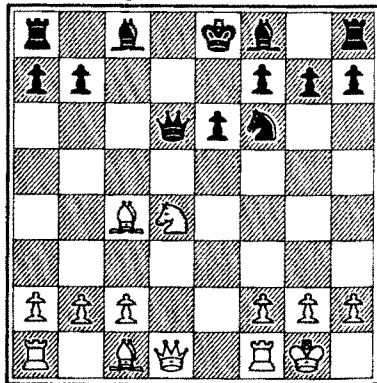
9 ...            Nxd4  
10 Nxd4

The ending after 10 Qxd4 is assessed as  $\pm$  by everyone, but Black has no weaknesses and free development. The true state of affairs is indicated by how few international players *choose* 10 Qxd4; after all, who would not be happy to have a nice  $\pm$  without queens against Spassky, Seirawan, Petrosian and the like? But the Sicilian structure is a tipoff; in fact, Black has two paths to equality:

(a) 10 ... a6 11 Bf4 Qxd4 12 Nxd4 (10 ... Qxd4 11 Nxd4 a6 12 Bf4 is another possible order) 12 ... b5! (simplest) 13 Bb3?! (13 Be2 is correct, but 13 ... Bb7 14 Bf3 Bxf3 15 Nxf3 Rc8 or here 15 ... Be7 16 Ne5 Rc8 is comfortable for the second player) 13 ... Bc5 14 Rad1 Bb7 15 Be3 0–0–0 16 Nf5 Bxe3 17 Nxe3 Ne4 ♣ intending ... Nd2 Prandstetter–Ornstein,

Skara 1980. White took the rooks off, but lost the bishop-versus-knight ending which followed capture on b3.

(b) 10 ... Qxd4 11 Nxd4 Bd7 (11 ... a6 is note (a); 11 ... Be7!? 12 Re1 — 12 Nb5!? — 12 ... Bd7 13 Bf4 Rc8 14 Bb3 Rc5!? 15 Rad1 0–0 16 Nf3 Rfc8 17 Be3 Ra5 18 Bd4  $\frac{1}{2}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$  Horvath–Adorjan, Reykjavik 1982; but this is not very convincing. Note, however, Adorian's faith in 4 ... Qxd5, against which he has failed to make progress as White) 12 Re1 (12 Bf4 Rc8 13 Be2 — 13 Bb3 Be7 — 13 ... Nd5 14 Bg3 Bc5 15 Nb3 Be7 16 c4 Nb6 17 Rfc1 Na4 =) 12 ... Rc8 (12 ... Be7 transposes to the note on move 11) 13 Bd3 Bc5 14 Nb3 Bb6 15 c4 0–0 16 Bg5 Rfd8 17 Rac1 Bc6 = Horvath–Herzog, Keszthely 1981. Taking on f6 would just emphasize the strength of the two bishops.



The key position for 4 ... Qxd5. Unfortunately, a famous loss by Stahlberg to Geller in 1955 dampened interest in the diagrammed position and, recently, one should-have-been brilliancy (Shamkovich–Seirawan) and a quick kill (Larsen–Seirawan) may again have the effect of discouraging players from this line. But, as so often happens, Black played poorly in all three of those encounters; in fact, he has good prospects here, for either equality or for active counterplay, depending on his choice of lines. There are two basic approaches: 6.1 10 ... Bd7; 6.2 10 ... a6.

## 6.1

10 ...            Bd7

One might consider this the conservative approach, in that it is a bit safer than 10 ... a6. I call it the “Spassky/Lein Variation”, since both players have used it on various occasions.

11 b3

(a) 11 Nb5 can be answered by 11 ... Qc6 12 Qe2 a6 13 Nd4 Qe4 =, or by 11 ... Qc5!? 12 Qe2 Rc8, e.g. 13 b3 a6 14 Be3 Qe5! =.

(b) 11 Bb3 Qc7 12 Bg5 Ne4 13 Bh4 Bd6 14 Qg4 Bxh2+ 15 Kh1 Qf4! 16 Qxg7 Qxh4 17 Qxh8+ Ke7 18 Nf3! Qh6 19 Qxa8 Ng3+! 20 fxg3 Bxg3+ 21 Kg1 Qe3+  $\frac{1}{2}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$  Stean–Mestel, Canterbury 1973.

(c) The other move is 11 c3, when Black can play 11 ... Be7 12 Re1 Qc7 13 Bb3 0–0 14 Bg5 Nd5 =, as in Balashov–Spassky, Munich 1979, or try the more ambitious 11 ... Qc7 (11 ... 0–0–0 is also logical) 12 Qe2 0–0–0, e.g. 13 a4!? Bd6 14 h3 Bh2+ (14 ... h5!?) 15 Kh1 Bf4 16 a5? Bxc1 17 Rfxc1 h5 18 Kg1 Ng4! 19 Nf3 Bc6 Hecht–Herzog, Buenos Aires 1979, and White should have tried 20 a6!? (♣), but lost quickly after 20 hxg4? hxg4 21 Ne5 Rh5! 22 f4 gxf3 23 Nxf3 Bxf3 0–1.

11 ...            Be7

(a) Interesting is 11 ... 0–0–0!?, as in Grundfeld–Lein, New York 1981: 12 Bb2 Qf4! (12 ... Qc7 13 Qe2 Bd6 14 h3 h5!? 15 Rfd1 Bc5 16 b4!? Bxb4 17 Nb3 Bc6!? 18 Be5 Bd6 19 Rxd6 Rxd6 20 Qe3 Rhd8 — 20 ... Kb8 may be an improvement — 21 Bxd6 Rxd6 22 Qxa7 with the advantage, Grundfeld–Herzog, Randers 1982; an eccentric example) 13 Qf3 Bd6 14 Qxf4 Bxf4 (thus far Lau–Stoppel, Cleveland 1979; note that

Lein has lived in Cleveland) 15 Rfe1 h6 16 a4 a6 17 Nf3 Bc6 18 Ne5 Bxe5 19 Bxe5 Nd5 = intending ... Nb4.

(b) Two other games have seen 11 ... a6 12 a4 Qc7: 13 Qf3 Bd6 14 h3 0-0 15 Bd2 ½-½ Marjanovic-Petrosian, Banja Luka 1979, and 13 Bb2 Bd6 14 Nf3 Bc6 15 h3 0-0! 16 Qe2 Nd5 ½-½ Unzicker-Spassky, 1979.

The impression is that Black has a fundamentally sound position.

**12 Bb2**      **0-0**  
**13 Re1**

13 Qe2 Qf4 (½-½ Adorjan-Lein, New York 1981) 14 Rad1 ½-½ Stean-Mestel, Marbella 1982. The ... Qf4 idea catches on fast.

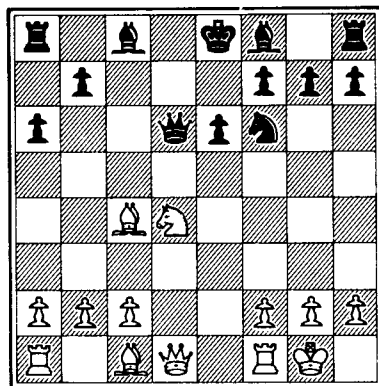
**13 ...**      **Rfe8**

Or 13 ... Rfd8. After 13 ... Rfe8, Liberzon-Spassky, Baden 1980 went 14 Nf3 Qxd1 15 Raxd1 Red8 16 Ne5 Be8, and the game was drawn shortly.

Overall, a draw seems the legitimate result from 10 ... Bd7.

## 6.2

**10 ...**      **a6(!)**



More ambitious and interesting than 10 ... Bd7, although probably not objectively superior. With this Sicilian-like move, Black prepares ... Qc7 and ... Bd6, defends against Nb5, and hopes to develop with tempo via ... b5 and ... Bb7. The negative side of 10 ... a6 is that Black is already behind in development and must suffer the possibility of tactical surprises inherent in yet another pawn move. But why not? If ... a6 can be good in the Najdorf or Kan Sicilians with similarly neglected development, why not here?

In the diagrammed position, White faces a wide and critical choice: 6.21 11 b3; 6.22 11 Bb3; 6.23 11 Re1. Others are a little less dangerous:

(a) 11 Be3?! Qc7 12 Qe2 Bd6 13 h3 b5 = Matanovic-Eliskases, Stockholm 1952. Black

has achieved his ideal piece placement and is probably somewhat better, with the long white diagonal under control and ... Nd5-f4 and/or ... e5-e4 in the air.

(b) 11 a4 Qc7 (11 ... Be7 12 b3 0-0 13 Bb2 Qc7 14 Qf3 Bd7 ½-½ Unzicker-Petrosian, Buenos Aires 1962, but this is dull. Or 11 ... Bd7!? 12 b3 Qc7 13 Bb2 Bd6 14 h3 0-0 15 Re1 Rad8 16 Qf3 Rfe8 17 Rad1 Bc8 18 Re3 Bf8 =/unclear Ljubovjevic-Seirawan, London 1982; Black can unravel with ... b6 if he is given time) 12 Qe2 (simplest after 12 b3 is 12 ... Be7, e.g. 13 h3 0-0 14 Bb2 b6 15 Qe2 Bb7 16 Rad1 ½-½ Olafsson-Ornstein, Iceland 1981; 16 ... Ne4 could follow. 12 ... Bc5 is an alternate approach) 12 ... Bd6 (or 12 ... Bc5 =) 13 h3 (or 13 Nf3 ½-½, Weinstein-Petrosian, Lone Pine 1976) 13 ... 0-0 14 a5 (14 b3 Bd7 15 Bb2 e5 = Mednis-Fuchs, 1962) 14 ... Bd7!? (14 ... e5(!) 15 Nb3 Bf5 intending ... Rac8 looks absolutely satisfactory for Black) 15 c3 Rfe8 Bronstein-Poljak, USSR 1964. Given variously as “±” or “=”. Black seems okay to me, but 14 ... e5 was simpler.

(c) 11 c3 can transpose to other lines but is somewhat committal: 11 ... Qc7 12 Qe2

(12 Be2 Bd6 13 h3 0-0 14 Bf3 e5 Ornstein; 12 Bd3!? Bd6 13 h3 Bd7 — or 13 ... 0-0 = — 14 Qe2 Bh2+!? 15 Kh1 Bf4 = Boleslavsky-Guimard, Argentina 1954. Also 14 ... 0-0 15 Bg5 Be5 with the idea 16 Rfe1 Bxd4 17 cxd4 Nd5 is interesting) 12 ... Bd6 13 Nf5?! (13 h3 0-0 14 Bg5 Ne4! 15 Be3 b5 = Bagirov-Durasevic, Oberhausen 1961; a typical trick if White does not take time for Bb3 or Bd3 at some point). 13 ... Bxh2+ 14 Kh1 0-0 15 Nh6+?! (15 Nxg7?! is worth a try, although Black has an adequate answer in 15 ... Qe5 16 Qd2! Ng4 17 f3 Qxg7 18 fxg4 Be5 19 g5 b5 etc., if he needs it) Dobosz-Ornstein, Gausdal 1979, and now best was 15 ... gxh6! 16 g3 b5 17 Bd3 Bxg3 18 fxg3 (18 Rg1 Bb7+) 18 ... Qxg3! 19 Rxf6 Bb7+ 20 Be4 Qh4+ ♣♣ (Ornstein).

## 6.21

**11 b3**

Formerly the main line, but recently several games by Ornstein have shown how Black should defend.

**11 ...**      **Qc7!**

Preparing ... Bd6. In general it is almost always desirable, if

possible tactically, to play with ... Bd6 or ... Bc5 rather than ... Be7. Similarly, if one can develop the queen's bishop to b7, it usually has more effect than from d7.

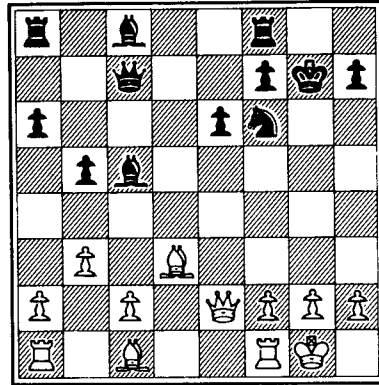
### 12 Bb2

12 Qe2 was met by 12 ... Bd6?! 13 Nf5! Bxh2+ 14 Kh1 0-0 15 Nxf7! in Geller–Stahlberg, Göteborg 1955, with the idea 15 ... Kxf7 16 Qd2! (various). This could use another look, but safer would be 12 ... Bc5 13 Bb2 0-0 14 a4 b6 = (15 Nf3 Qf4!? or even 15 ... Bb7 16 Bxf6 gxf6 17 Be4 Rad8).

In Kaiszauri–Ornstein, Eksjö 1981, Black tried the most ambitious move, 12 ... b5(!): 13 Bd3 (Old Horowitz analysis runs 13 Bxe6 fxe6 14 Nxe6 Bxe6 15 Qxe6+ Be7 16 Ba3 Qd7 17 Rfe1 Qxe6 18 Rxe6 Ra7 19 Rae1 Ng8 “and Black should win”) 13 ... Bc5 14 Nf5?! (better 14 Bb2, but 14 ... 0-0 15 Rad1 Bb7 or here 15 Nf3 Qf4 is equal) 14 ... 0-0 15 Nxf7 Kxf7

(see following diagram)

16 Bb2 (16 Bh6+ Kxh6 17 Qd2+ and 16 Qf3 Ng8!? 17 Bxh7 — 17 Qxa8 Bb7 — will only draw at best for White, and Black has options, e.g. 16



Bh6+ Kxh6 17 Qd2+ Kh5! and 16 Qf3 Rg8!? Ornstein) 16 ... Rg8! 17 Be4 (17 Qf3 Be7 18 Qg3+ Qxg3 19 fxf3 h5! 20 Rf4 Rh8 21 Rdf1 Rh6 Ornstein) 17 ... Ra7 18 Qh5 h6 19 Rad1 Be7 20 Be5 (20 Rd3 Qd4!) 20 ... Bb7! 21 Rd4 (21 Qg4+ Kf8 22 Qxg8+ Kxg8 ♯; 21 Bxb7 Qxb7 22 f3 — else 22 ... Qxg2+! — 22 ... Qc8! 23 Rd4 Kh7! ♯; 21 f3 Bxe4 22 fxe4 Qxc2 23 Rf2 Qxe4 ♯ Ornstein) 21 ... Bxe4 22 Rxe4 Qxc2 23 Rg4+ (23 Rf4 Qg6! 24 Rg4 Kh7 Ornstein) 23 ... Kf8 24 Qxh6+ Ke8 25 Rxf8+ Nxf8 26 Qh8 Qg6 ♯♯ (27 Bg7 Bf8!).

Again we see the analogy with the Sicilian: White goes all out with his pieces versus Black's good structure but poor development. In this case the structure held.

12 ... b5

Or 12 ... Bd6, e.g. 13 h3 0-0 14 Re1 b5 15 Bf1?! Rd8! ♯ Lobron–Petrosian, Plovdiv 1983.

### 13 Bd3 Bd6!

On 13 ... Be7, 14 Qf3 Bb7 15 Qh3 gave White good attacking chances in Ghizdavu–Padevsky, Varna 1973. After 13 ... Bd6!, if White defends with 14 h3, Black simply develops by 14 ... Bb7 or 14 ... 0-0 and prevents such ideas. And 14 Qf3!? Bxh2+ 15 Kh1 Bb7 16 Qh3 Bf4 does not give White much for a pawn. So:

### 14 Nf3 0-0! 15 Re1

Black is not afraid of 15 Bxf6 gxf6, which gives him two bishops and the g-file, e.g. 16 Nh4 (16 Qe2 f5; 16 Qd2 Bf4 Ornstein) 16 ... f5 17 Qh5 Kh8 intending ... Rg8 and ... Bb7.

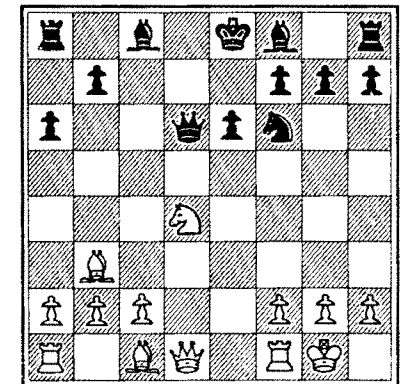
The text is an improvement over 15 Qe2 Nd5! of Kaiszauri–Ornstein, Eksjö 1980, when Black had “a fantastic position” (Ornstein), since 16 Bxh7+? Kxh7 17 Ng5+ Kg8 (or 17 ... Kg6) 18 Qe4 (18 Qh5 Qxc2) 18 ... f5 holds, and 16 Ng5 h6 or 16 Qe4 f5 leads to nothing.

After 15 Re1, 15 ... Nd5? 16 Be4! Bb7 17 c4! is strong (rather than 17 Ng5? h6 = of

Skrobeck–Ornstein, Pamporovo 1981), e.g. 17 ... bxc4 18 bxc4 Qxc4 19 Ng5 h6 20 Qh5 ±± (Ornstein). But his suggestion 15 ... Bb7! 16 Bxf6 gxf6 17 Be4 Rad8 18 Qe2 Bc8! improves greatly, since White cannot prevent ... f5 and ... Bb7 with a fine game. Thus 11 b3 is not currently seen as much of a threat to Black's set-up.

## 6.22

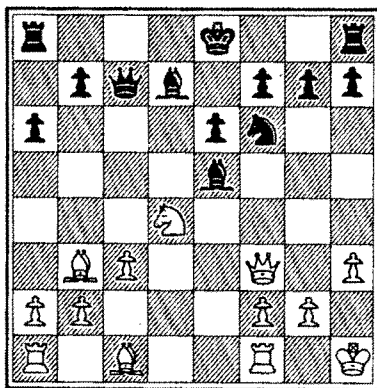
### 11 Bb3



The most popular move at present, although superficially it seems to commit White's king's bishop a shade early in the struggle. Black has two good plans.

11 ... Qc7

Petrosian drew twice with 11 ... Be7 and 12 ... 0-0, but the games are not very convincing. Seirawan has recently played 11 ... Bd7!?, apparently a more circumspect move than 11 ... Qc7 in that continued pressure on d4 prevents moves like Qe2 or Qf3 without first securing the knight. The main line is 12 c3 (12 Re1!? 0-0-0 unclear — Larsen; indeed, a game Ager–Stoppel, Austria 1977 continued 13 Be3 Qc7 14 Qe2 Bd6 15 h3 Bh2+ 16 Kh1 Bf4 17 Rad1 Kb8 and the contest was soon drawn) 12 ... Qc7 13 Qf3 Bd6 14 h3 Bh2+ (14 ... 0-0-0!? Larsen) 15 Kh1 Be5



Adorjan–Seirawan, Baden 1980. That game went 16 Bg5? Bxd4 17 cxd4 Bc6 18 Qe3 Nd5 19 Bxd5 Bxd5 20 Qe5 Qxe5 with a tiny edge to Black. But Larsen–Seirawan, Clarin 1982,

saw the superior 16 Be3! 0-0 17 a4 and now 17 ... Rfd8? 18 Rfe1!? Be8? allowed 19 a5! with obvious advantage (19 ... h6?? 20 Nxe6! followed and White won quickly). After the normal 17 ... b6, White has a better-coordinated position, but Black is getting his pieces out and it is not clear if White has any edge at all.

So 11 ... Bd7 looks reasonable, in particular because ideas of castling queenside have not even been investigated. 11 ... Qc7 is more ambitious, in that development of Black's queen's bishop to b7 is still contemplated.

### 12 Qf3

12 Bg5 was tried in Ermenkov–Bajovic, Bulgaria 1982: 12 ... Be7 13 Re1 0-0 14 c3 Nd5!? (safer 14 ... Bd7 or 14 ... b5) 15 Bxe7 Nxe7 16 Qh5 Ng6 17 Re3 (maybe 17 g3 ?) 17 ... Nf4 18 Qg5 h6 19 Qg3 b5 with good counterplay. 12 Qf3 is more aggressive.

12 ... Bd6  
13 h3 0-0!?

Introducing a bold, creative strategy. The other, solid move is 13 ... Be5 14 c3 Bd7 15 Bg5? (falling for it. 15 Be3 0-0 16 Rad1 is given by Ornstein, with perhaps a slight edge to White,

but a playable game for the second player, e.g. after 16 ... h6). 15 ... Bxd4! 16 cxd4 Bc6 17 Qe3 Nd5 18 Bxd5 Bxd5 ♣ Ernst–Ornstein, Swedish Ch 1980. Obviously a theme to remember!

### 14 Bg5!

14 Be3 e5! with the idea 15 Nf5? e4 16 Nh6+ Kh8 ♣♣ or 15 Ne2 Bd7 with a good game.

14 ... b5(!)

This is it, Ornstein's remarkable gambit idea, to improve upon 14 ... Be5 15 Rad1 Bd7? 16 Rfe1 Rad8 17 Qe3! Bd6 18 Bxf6 gxf6 19 Qh6 f5 20 Nf3 f6 21 Nd4 Be5 22 Nxe6 Bxe6 23 Bxe6+ Kh8 24 Rd7! 1-0 Schneider–O'Kelly, Sandefjord 1976. Actually, this order deserves consideration, but with 15 ... h6!, e.g. 16 Bh4 Rb8 17 Rfe1 b5 18 Qe2 (18 Qe3 Bf4) 18 ... Bh2+ 19 Kh1 Bb7 20 Bxf6 gxf6. While this is risky, and there are various sacrifices on e6, White's king is also exposed to, for example, ... Qf4, ... Rg8, and/or a timely ... Bxg2+. Tests needed.

### 15 Bxf6

15 Qxa8? Bb7 16 Qa7 Bh2+ 17 Kh1 Bxg2+ wins material (Chandler). Note that Black has delayed ... Bh2+. Were it

already in when White played Qxa8, ... Bb7 could be answered by Nxe6!, winning.

15 ... gxf6  
16 Qxf6 Be5  
17 Qh4

Obviously 17 Qg5+ Kh8 does not help, with ... Rg8 coming.

17 ... Bb7

With interesting compensation for a pawn: two powerful bishops and the g-file. But Black's kingside needs defence also.

### 18 c3

Chandler–Ornstein, Lucerne 1982. Now Chandler gives 18 ... Kh8(!) 19 Bc2 f5 (20 Nxe6? Qc6). With ... Rg8 coming, this looks quite dangerous, especially as 20 ... Bf6! followed by ... Bxd4 is threatened right away, winning a piece! Ornstein played the weaker 18 ... Qd8?!, but still got interesting play out of 19 Qh5 (19 Qxd8 Rfxd8 20 Rfd1 Bxd4 21 cxd4 Rac8 and ... Bd5 Chandler) 19 ... Qf6 20 Bc2 h6 21 Rae1 Bxd4 22 cxd4 Rfd8 23 Be4 Bxe4 24 Rxe4 Rd5. White eventually won, but only after Black missed draws.

An important postscript to all this was the game Yudasin–

Ornstein, Trnava 1983, where Black played 18 ... Kh8, and White found 19 f4(!). Ornstein's 19 ... Rg8?! 20 Rf2 Bxd4 21 cxd4 Rg6 22 f5! exf5 23 d5 might have drawn with perfect defence, but White has the better chances. In my opinion, Black should play 19 ... Bxd4+ 20 cxd4 Qd8 21 Qxd8 (forced) 21 ... Raxd8 22 f5 (22 Rad1 Rg8!, and 23 Rf2 Be4 intending ... Rd6, ... f5, or 23 g4 h5 24 g5 Be4! etc.) 22 ... exf5 23 Rxf5 Rxd4 planning ... Rd2; or here 23 Rad1 Be4.

Both 13 ... Be5 and 13 ... 0-0!? look sufficient in this line, but the latter provides more exciting and double-edged play.

## 6.23

### 11 Re1

Relatively untested, but direct and very critical for 10 ... a6. Black must be alert to tactics.

### 11 ... Qc7!?

(a) 11 ... Be7 (This move is hardly ever best) 12 c3 0-0 (12 ... e5 16 Nf3 Qxd1 14 Rxd1 e4 14 Ne5 ± Keres-Benko, Curacao 1962) 13 Qe2 Qc7 14 Bg5 (or 14 a4 ±) Peters-Berry,

USA 1976, and 14 ... Nd5 15 Bxe7 Nxe7 16 Rad1 ± was suggested.

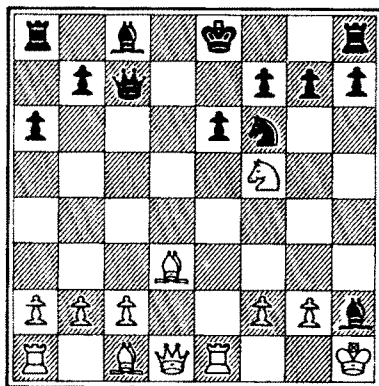
(b) Better is 11 ... Bd7(!), e.g. 12 c3 Qc7 13 Bd3 Bd6! (or 13 ... 0-0-0 =) 14 Nf5 Bxh2+ 15 Kh1 0-0-0!, e.g. 16 Ne7+ Kb8 17 g3 Qc5; or 12 Bg5 Qc5, or 12 g3 0-0-0 13 Bf4 Qc5 =, or 12 Be3 Qc7, again with the idea ... Bd6.

The text (11 ... Qc7!?) is shakier, yet full of possibilities.

### 12 Bd3 Bd6!?

12 ... Bc5!? would avoid the dangers of the text, e.g. 13 Nf5 Kf8! 14 Ne3 h5 15 h3 e5 = (16 Nc4? e4! 17 Bxe4 Bxh3!), or here 14 Ng3 e5 15 Bg5 Bg4 16 Qd2 h5!?, and things are at least complicated. 12 ... Bd6 is extremely risky, and yet entirely up in the air theoretically.

### 13 Nf5! Bxh2+ 14 Kh1



So far the critical position for 11 Re1, although the options 11 ... Bd7 or 12 ... Bc5 may prove judicious choices if this main line does not hold up.

After 14 Kh1, Black has three moves:

(a) 14 ... h5(?) 15 g3! Kf8 (15 ... h4 15 Bf4 Qc6+ 17 Kxh2 hxg3+ fails to 18 Kxg3 Nh5+ 19 Qxh5 Rxh5 20 Nxxg7+ and 21 Nxxh5 ± Shamkovich) 16 Bf4 Qb6 (And here 16 ... Qc6+ 17 Be4!! Nxe4 18 Qd8+ Qe8 19 Qxe8+ Kxe8 20 Rxe4 followed by Kxh2 is winning — Shamkovich) 17 Bd6+ Ke8 Shamkovich-Seirawan, US Ch 1980. Black's game has gone awry. White played 18 Nxxg7+ Kd7 19 Be5 Ng4, and now he could have won with 20 Bb5+! Ke7 21 Nf5+ Kf8 22 Qd6+!; but, after missing this chance and one other, the game ended in a draw.

(b) 14 ... 0-0 15 Nxxg7! Kxxg7 16 Qd2! forces either 16 ... Ng8? 17 g3 ± or 16 ... Bf4 17 Qxf4 Qxf4 18 Bxf4, which is depressing-looking but not

necessarily that bad after 18 ... Nd5! and ... b5.

(c) Best seems 14 ... Kf8!, as suggested by Christiansen. He mentions 15 Nxxg7 Kxxg7 16 Qd2 h6 17 g3 Ng4!. Likely best would be 15 g3 exf5 16 Kxh2 (16 Bf4 Qb6), which wins the dark squares but still is not easy to assess after, for example, 16 ... h5 or 16 ... Be6, with Black having an extra pawn.

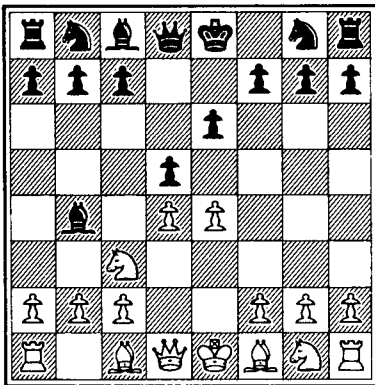
In conclusion, 11 Re1 is as much of a threat as anything to the 10 ... a6 idea, but 11 ... Bd7 looks perfectly okay, 11 ... Qc7 12 Bd3 Bc5!? experimental, and 11 ... Qc7 12 Bd3 Bd6 for the enterprising player who prepares himself.

Certainly the ... Qxd5 option is better than its reputation and can be a useful part of a French player's repertoire, provided that he does not mind a few rather dull endgames. As a winning tool, the Ornstein lines are appropriate; whereas for safety, the Spassky/Lein ... Bd7 variation is best.

## 7

## Winawer: Various 4th Moves

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bb4

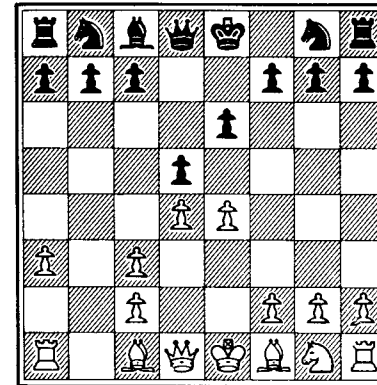


3 ... Bb4 characterizes the Winawer Variation, which puts pressure on e4 and prepares in many variations to double White's c-pawns with consequent positional pressure. The Classical variations with 3 ... Nf6 are certainly playable, but most players today choose the Winawer, which is sound, sharp, and one of the main reasons for playing the French.

Once White commits himself to 4 e5, the position takes on a closed character that does not appeal to some players, especially those for whom the acquisition of two bishops brings no special joy. What else, then? This chapter examines no less than six reasonable alternatives, all of which are important, and several of which have enjoyed periods of great popularity in international play. Presently, 4 Ne2 and 4 Bd3 are receiving the most attention, but the well-prepared French player must know something about each of the following: 7.1 4 a3; 7.2 4 Qg4; 7.3 4 Bd2; 7.4 4 Ne2; 7.5 4 Bd3; 7.6 4 exd5.

## 7.1

4 a3            Bxc3+  
5 bxc3



An old Bobby Fischer favourite (and before that a weapon of Alekhine and Smyslov), 4 a3 attempts to strengthen the centre while keeping the path of White's queen to g4 free. While it uses a tempo, 4 a3 is one of the few lines which directly attempts to prove that the loss of Black's king's bishop can lead to early trouble on his kingside. Thus the main lines are very unbalanced, with plenty of optional piece deployments for both sides.

5 ...            dxe4

If a safer move is desired, 5 ... Ne7!? looks a reasonable candidate. 6 e5 c5 would transpose to a normal main line Winawer, and 6 Qg4 0-0 threatens 7 ... e5, so 7 e5 c5 with a main line 7 Qg4 0-0 can follow, or here 7 ... f5(!) with good play. *ECO* mentions 6 Bd3!?,

but 6 ... c5 looks a satisfactory answer, e.g. 7 dxc5 Qa5, 7 exd5 exd5, 7 Qg4 0-0, or 7 Nf3 c4!? 8 Be2 dxe4 9 Ng5 (9 Nd2 Nd5! ♯) and now 9 ... Qd5 or 9 ... Nd5 (10 Bxc4 e3!? or 10 ... Qc7!?) with unclear play. Finally, 5 ... Ne7 6 Nf3 dxe4 7 Ng5 should be met by 7 ... c5! 8 Nxe4 cxd4 9 cxd4 Nc6, e.g. 10 c3 e5 11 Bc4 Bf5 12 Ng3 (12 Ng5 0-0 ♯) 12 ... exd4 13 0-0 0-0 (13 ... Qd7!? is more ambitious) 14 Bg5 Qd7 15 cxd4 Bg4 16 f3 Be6 17 Bxe6 Qxe6 18 Re1 Qd7 =/unclear, Banas-Herzog, Keszthely 1981. The game was eventually drawn.

6 Qg4            Nf6  
7 Qxg7           Rg8  
8 Qh6

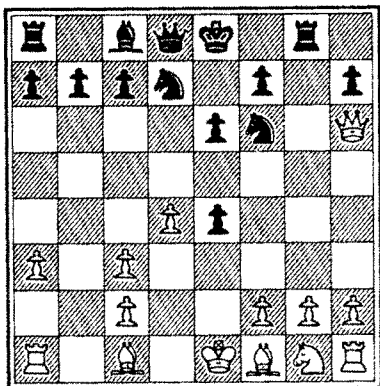
The point where the action begins. Black has a nice lead in development, but his kingside pawns are shattered. Two lines are: 7.11 8 ... Nbd7; 7.12 8 ... c5.

## 7.11

8 ...            Nbd7  
(see following diagram)

9 Ne2

The alternatives illustrate Black's ideas:



(a) 9 Bb2 Nb6! (or 9 ... c5 10 0-0-0 Qc7! 11 Nh3 b6 = Lein-Zagorovsky, USSR 1959) 10 a4 (widely recommended, in view of 10 c4 Na4 11 0-0-0 Bd7 12 f3 Qe7! 13 fxe4 Nxe4 14 Qe3 — 14 Qxh7? Qg5+ — 14 ... f5 15 Nf3 c5! 16 Rg1 — 16 d5 Nxb2 17 Kxb2 Qf6+ — 16 ... 0-0-0 17 Qb3 Nxb2 18 Qxb2 cxd4 19 Rxd4 Bc6 ♣ Foguelman-Byrne, Buenos Aires 1964) 10 ... Bd7 11 a5 Na4 12 Qc1 c5 13 Ne2 Qxa5 14 dxc5 Qxc5 15 Ba3 Qe5 16 g<sup>2</sup> Rc8! ♣ Quinteros-Watson, Mexico 1976.

(b) 9 Bg5 Qe7! threatens ... Ng4 (Wicker). Also good are 9 ... c5 and even 9 ... c6!?, e.g. 10 Ne2 Rg6 11 Qh4 Qa5 12 Bxf6? (12 Bd2 Qa4 unclear — Moles and Wicker) 12 ... Nxf6 ♣ Foster-Hamblin, Manchester 1970.

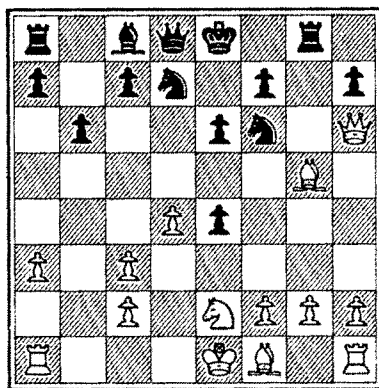
(c) 9 f3!? is unmentioned by theory, but has its points after

9 ... exf3 10 Nxf3. So better seems 9 ... Rg6 10 Qh4 (10 Qe3 Nd5! 11 Qxe4 Nxc3, e.g. 12 Qd3 Qh4+ 13 g3 Rxc3 14 hxg3 Qxh1 15 Qxc3 Qxg1 16 Bf4 Nb6! with good attacking chances) 10 ... c5 11 fxe4 (else ... Qa5) 11 ... Rg4 12 Qh6 Rxe4+ 13 Be2 Qa5 14 Bd2 Qb5! ♣.

9 ... b6

A good alternative is 9 ... c5 10 Ng3 Qc7.

10 Ng3



(a) 10 Bg5?! was rendered suspect by the famous game Fischer-Kovacevic, Rovinj Zagreb 1970: 10 ... Qe7! (threatening ... Ng4 and preventing ... 0-0-0) 11 Qh4 (11 Nf4 Ng4!? or even 11 ... Bb7 12 Bb5 Ng4! 13 Bxe7 Nxb6 ♣ Watson (not the author!)—Blackstock, Manchester 1970;

after 11 Ng3?, 11 ... Ng4! 12 Bxe7 Nxb6 13 Bh4 Rg4 wins the bishop) 11 ... Bb7 12 Ng3 h6! (♣) 13 Bd2!? (13 Bc1 ♣; 13 Bxb6? Rg4! 14 Qh3 0-0-0 and ... Rah8; 13 Qxh6? Ng4! ♣♣) 13 ... 0-0-0 14 Be2 Nf8! 15 0-0 Ng6 16 Qxh6 Rh8 17 Qg5 Rdg8 18 f3 e3! 19 Bxe3 (19 Qxe3 Nd5 and ... Qh4) 19 ... Nf8 20 Qb5 Nd5 ♣♣.

(b) 10 Bb2 Bb7 11 0-0-0? (11 h3 Qe7 ♣) 11 ... Ng4! ♣ intending 12 Qf4 Qg5 or 12 Qxh7 Qg5+ (Moles).

10 ... Bb7

11 Be2!

ECO's 11 Bb2 intending 0-0-0 does not achieve anything after 11 ... Qe7 12 0-0-0 0-0-0, and 11 ... c5 12 0-0-0 Qc7 is another healthy approach.

The text (11 Be2) is a recommendation of *Shach-Archiv*, which suggests that White follow up with 12 0-0 and 13 f3.

11 ... Qe7

Now Moles gives 12 0-0 0-0-0 13 f3 Rg6 and "Black stands better". Probably not after 14 Qh4! (14 Qd2 Rdg8! ♣), but, on the other hand, 14 ... Re8 15 fxe4 Nxe4 is equal, and 14 ... exf3 15 Bxf3 Rdg8 16 Bxb7+ Kxb7 17 a4

Qd6! tries for more. So at any rate there is plenty of play here.

A recent move is 12 a4!?, e.g. 12 ... Rg6!? 13 Qh4 0-0-0 14 0-0 (14 Ba3?! c5 takes the bishop off key squares like h6 and f4) 14 ... Qf8 (14 ... Rdg8? 15 Bh5! Henley) 15 a5 Qg7 ("=" Henley) 16 axb6 axb6 17 Ra7! Kb8 18 Rxb7+! (18 Ra2 Rdg8 19 c4 Ng4 20 c3 f5 unclear — Henley) 18 ... Kxb7 19 Bh5? (19 f3! Ra8 20 fxe4 e5 21 Bd3 Ra1 unclear; 19 Nxe4!? Henley) 19 ... Ra8! 20 Bxg6 Qxg6 21 Be3 Ra3! ♣ and Black went on to win in Cunningham-Henley, USA 1982. A complex game which typifies play in this line. Black should consider 12 ... 0-0-0 13 0-0 e5!?, e.g. 14 Nf5 Qe6 15 Ng7 Qc6 etc.

Since 9 ... c5 as well as 9 ... b6 gives reliable counterplay, 8 ... Nbd7 should prove a durable method of meeting 4 a3.

## 7.12

8 ... c5

This simple central attack forces White to defend d4.

9 Ne2

9 Qe3?! Qa5 10 Bd2 Qa4 ♣. 9 Bb2 has several good an-

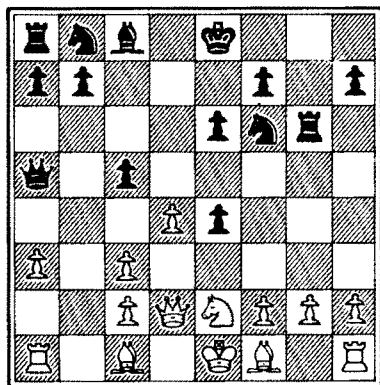
swers, e.g. 9 ... Nbd7 transposing to 7.11 (10 0-0-0 Qc7), or 9 ... Rg6 10 Qd2 Qc7 11 0-0-0 c4!; or 9 ... Bd7!? 10 f3 (10 0-0-0 Bc6 11 dxc5 Nbd7 ♣ Schwarz) 10 ... Bc6 11 0-0-0 (11 fxe4 Bxe4 12 Qd2 Qa5 ♣) 11 ... Nbd7 12 Qe3 Qc7 etc.

9 ... Rg6  
10 Qd2!

10 Qe3?! Nc6 11 dxc5 (11 Bb2 Qa5 12 0-0-0 Bd7 ♣; 11 Bd2 Ne7 ♣ Smyslov-Botvinnik, match 1957) 11 ... e5 12 Ng3 Bg4 (or 12 ... Qd5 13 Bd2 Ng4! ♣) 13 Bd2 (13 Bb2 Qa5) 13 ... Qd5 14 h3 Be6 14 c4 Qd4 ♣ Swandhio-Winiwarter, Havana 1966.

10 ... Nbd7!?

Black logically eyes c4 and a4, but he may have still better in the ambitious 10 ... Qa5!



This stops both c4 and a4-a5 (two of White's plans) and does not commit Black's minor pieces, e.g. 11 g3 Bd7! 12 Bg2 Bc6 13 0-0 Nd7 14 dxc5 Qxc5! 15 Qd4 Qf5 16 a4 e5 17 Qc4 Bd5 18 Qb4 a5 19 Qb5 Qe6 20 Re1 b6 21 Be3!? Ng4 22 Rad1 Nxe3 23 fxe3 Bc6 24 Qb3 Rb8 25 Qxe6+ Rxe6 and White's weak queenside pawns ensured Black the edge in Banas-Knaak, Trnava 1981.

### 11 Bb2

11 g3!? b6!? 12 Bg2 may favour White slightly, but a good answer is 11 ... Qa5! 12 Bg2 Nb6 and Black gets light-square pressure.

11 ... Nb6!?

A direct approach, as opposed to 11 ... Qc7. After 11 ... Nb6, Mitchell-Gorenstein, corres 1962, continued 12 Nf4 Rg8 13 Bb5+ Bd7 14 dxc5 Na4! 15 Bxa4 Bxa4 16 0-0-0 Qxd2+ 17 Rxd2 Rd8 18 g3 Rxd2 19 Kxd2, which is given as "±" by ECO, but the game went 19 ... Rg5! 20 Re1 Bc6 and Moles more accurately calls Black "somewhat better". The game was in fact drawn.

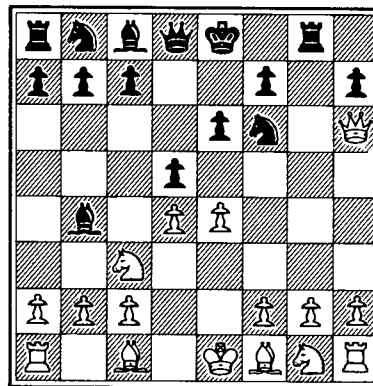
Altogether, 8 ... c5 is a safe line, with chances for complications if Black wants them, e.g. by 10 ... Qa5.

## 7.2

### 4 Qg4

The "Blitz Variation", Zeuthen calls it, which is similar to the "Semi-Blitz" (4 a3) in intent. White saves a whole tempo on that line by bringing the queen out directly. On the other hand, he has not bolstered his centre in advance, so Black may be able to counter-attack effectively in that area. While 4 Qg4 has a rather miserable reputation, it is probably just as good as 4 a3 or 4 Bd2.

4 ... Nf6  
5 Qxg7 Rg6  
6 Qh6



6 ... c5

6 ... dxe4 7 Ne2 c5 is also okay, transposing after 8 a3 Bxc3+ 9 bxc3 to 7.12 above.

Instead, 8 Bg5!? runs into 8 ... Ng4! 9 Bxd8 Nxb6 10 Bh4 Nf5.

It should also be noted that 6 ... Rg6!? 7 Qe3 (ECO's 7 Qh4 can be met by 7 ... Rg4!) 7 ... c5 8 Bd2! Ng4 9 Qd3 Nc6 is not clear after either 10 h3(!) c4 11 Qg3!, or 10 Nge2 cxd4 11 Nxd4, when 11 ... Nxf2!? (ECO and others call this "♣") 12 Kxf2 Bc5 13 Be3 Qf6+ 14 Ke1! (Moles and Wicker), e.g. 14 ... Nxd4 15 Nb5 or 14 ... Bxd4 15 Bxd4 Nxd4 16 Rd1, or here 15 ... Qxd4 16 Qxd4 Nxd4 17 Kd2. But in this latter line either 11 ... Nce5 intending ... Bb6 or 11 ... Qb6 looks to improve.

7 a3

7 dxc5?? d4 8 a3 Rg6 9 Qf4 Ba5 ♣♣ or here 9 Qh4 Qa5 ♣♣ and 7 exd5?? cxd4 8 a3 Bf8 both lose outright, and 7 Bd2? cxd4 8 e5 dxc3 9 bxc3 Qc7! is very nice for Black. Better 7 e5!? cxd4 8 a3 (! 8 exf6 dxc3 9 b3 Rg6 10 Qxh7 Qxf6 ♣ or 8 Bd2 dxc3 9 bxc3 Qc7! ♣) and now:

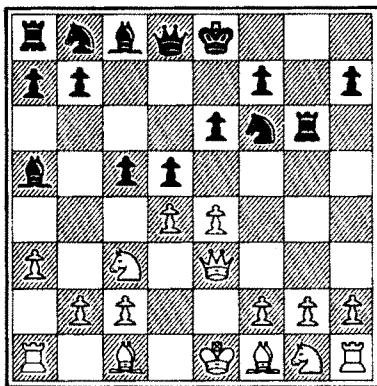
(a) 8 ... dxc3 9 axb4 cxb2 10 Bxb2 Qb6 11 0-0-0! (Hauschild. Forced, actually, in view of 11 ... Qxf2+! and 11 ... Qxb4+) and the position is unclear. A better approach is:

(b) 8 ... Bf8(!) 9 Qxf6 (9 Qh4 dxc3 10 exf6 Nd7 11 Bb5 cxb2

12 Bxb2 Qb6!) 9 ... Qxf6 10 exf6 dxc3 and Black's structure looks the better one, e.g. 11 bxc3 Nd7 12 Bb5!? Rxc2 or 11 Ne2 cxb2 12 Bxb2 Nc6 with ... Bc5, ... Bd7, and ... Rac8 coming.

7 ... Rg6  
8 Qe3 Ba5!

Most interesting, although 8 ... Bxc3+ 9 bxc3 cxd4 10 cxd4 Nxe4 is safe and perhaps even ♣ (Zeuthen and others).



9 Bd2

Again, 9 e5? Ng4 10 Qd3 cxd4 and 9 exd5? Nxd5 10 Qd3 cxd4 11 Qxd4 e5! (12 Qd3 Rd6!) are bad (all). Likewise 9 Nf3? Ng4 (or 9 ... Nxe4) 10 Qd2 dxe4 11 Ne5 cxd4! ♣ (Keres) and 9 Ne2 Nc6! (see the next note) are just about hopeless.

9 ... Nc6!

This looks even better than theory's 9 ... cxd4 10 Qxd4 Nc6 11 Qd3 (11 Bb5 Bb6! and ... Rxc2), when Moles and Wicker give 11 ... d4 12 Nb1 or 11 ... Ne5 12 Qd4 and "has Black anything better than 12 ... Nc6 = ?". Probably he does: 12 ... Neg4! 13 Nh3 e5 14 Qd3 (14 Bb5+ Bd7 15 Qa4 Bxc3 16 Bxc3 Nxe4 ♣) 14 ... Bxc3 15 Bxc3 Nxe4 16 f3 Nxc3 ♣ (17 Qxc3 d4 or 17 bxc3 Nf6). But 9 ... Nc6! puts more pressure on:

10 Nf3

What else? 10 Bb5 cxd4 11 Qxd4 Bb6 and ... Rxc2 ♣ is very strong, and 10 Nge2 fails to the simple but overpowering 10 ... Bb6! (♣♣!).

10 ... Ng4  
11 Qd3 cxd4

The same idea as in the note to Black's sixth, but here h3 was never an option for White, and the bishop is definitely better on a5 than on b4.

12 Nxd4

And now Black has two continuations. The combination with 12 ... Nxf2!? works much better than before: 13 Kxf2 Bb6 14 Be3 Qf6+ 15 Ke1 Nxd4!, since 16 Nb5 Nxb5 (This was not possible with the bishop on

c5) 17 Bxb6 Bd7 or 17 ... Nd6 wins a pawn with advantage.

Even stronger looks 12 ... Qb6(!), after which White can hardly allow 13 Be3? Qxb2 or 13 Nxc6 Qxf2+ (or just 13 ... bxc6), so 13 Ncb5 looks forced. But then among others Black has 13 ... a6, e.g. 14 Nd6+ Kd7 15 Nxc8 Rxc8 16 c3 Nxd4! 17 cxd4 Qxb2 etc. All in all, then, the 6 ... c5 system constitutes a complete answer to 4 Qg4.

## 7.3

4 Bd2

A true gambit this time, since 4 ... dxe4 5 Nxe4? Qxd4 gives White nothing but a centre pawn less. White's strategy again involves Qg4, so in some lines the play will resemble 7.1 and 7.2. The main difference is that White develops faster than in 7.2, and in particular the d-pawn will not prove defensible if Black wants to win it.

4 ... dxe4

4 ... Ne7!? is a reasonable possibility, especially versus a player who might be trying to draw in the main lines. Then 5 Bd3 is held to be best, but the odd idea 5 ... Nbc6!? has merit,

e.g. 6 Nf3 Nxd4 7 Nxd4 dxe4 etc.

5 Qg4

5 Nge2 is the only reasonable alternative, but aside from 5 ... Nf6 6 Nxe4 Bxd2+ 7 Nxd2 Nc6 8 Nf3 0-0 9 Nc3 Qd6! 10 Qd2 a6 11 0-0-0 b5 of Nagy-Gonda, corres 1948, Black can try to hold on to the pawn with 5 ... Bxc3!?, e.g. 6 Nxc3 Qxd4 7 Nb5 Qd7 etc.

5 ... Nf6

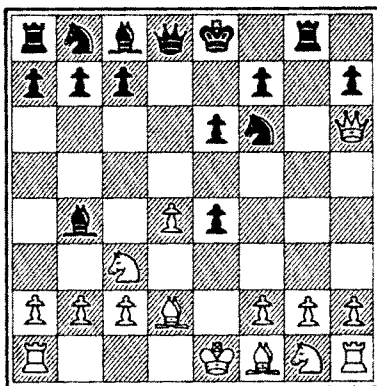
5 ... Qxd4 is also equal, and can lead to the text after 6 0-0-0 Nf6 7 Qxg7 Rg8 etc. Here 6 ... h5! is a good winning try, e.g. 7 Qe2! (best) 7 ... Bd7 8 Nxe4 (8 f3 Nc6! 9 fxe4 Qb6! 10 a3 Hausner-Uhlmann, Halle 1981, and simplest was 10 ... Bxc3! 11 Bxc3 Nf6 ♣ Uhlmann) 8 ... Bxd2+ 9 Rxd2 Qa4 10 a3 Na6! ♣ (Uhlmann).

Unfortunately, 5 ... Qxd4 has the immediate drawback that 6 Nf3! practically forces a drawn ending. If 6 ... h5, 7 Qxe6+ Bxe6 8 Nxd4 and 8 ... Bd7! 9 Nxe4 = or 8 ... Bxc3?! (not worth it) 9 Bxc3 Bd7 (9 ... Nf6 10 Nxe6 fxe6 11 Bc4) 10 Nb5 Bxb5 11 Bxb5+ c6 12 Bc4 and White cannot lose. On 6 ... Nh6, 7 Qf4 (7 Qxe6+ is also thought to be equal) 7 ... e5 (What else?

7 ... Qf6 8 Qxe4! gives way too much for a pawn) 8 Qxe5+ (or 8 Nxd4 =) 8 ... Qxe5 9 Nxe5 Ng4 (9 ... Bxc3 10 Bxc3 Nf5 11 Bc4 Nd6 12 0-0-0 f6 13 Rxd6! *Archives*, or 10 ... 0-0 11 h3 Nd7 12 0-0-0 Nxe5 13 Bxe5 Bf5 14 g4 ± Pachman) 10 Nxc4 Bxc4 11 Nxe4 Bxd2+ 12 Kxd2 ½-½ Ekstrom-Karlsson, Swedish Ch 1975.

Thus 5 ... Qxd4 is a legitimate defence, but Black must be prepared to split the point. On the other hand, this is a good illustration of why 4 Bd2 is unpopular. If Black has an option on the 5th move which either gives him the advantage or leads to utterly drawish positions, why play the line for White?

6 Qxg7 Rg8  
7 Qh6



The key position, forced from White's point of view. We

examine two moves: 7.31 7 ... Rg6; 7.32 7 ... Qxd4.

In addition, since Black is ahead in development and stands solidly, two other moves deserve consideration, i.e. 7 ... b6 and 7 ... Nbd7. For example, 7 ... b6 8 0-0-0 Bb7 9 Bb5+ ("?" Zeuthen, but Black stands well) 9 ... c6 10 Be2 Nbd7 11 f3 Bxc3 12 Bxc3 Qe7 13 Qh4 c5 14 fxe4 Nd5!? unclear Adamski-Marovic 1963; or here 14 ... Nxe4!

### 7.31

7 ... Rg6

This move has the advantage that White must decide at once where his queen is to go. It can be more ambitious than 7 ... Qxd4, but will often be riskier, too.

8 Qe3!?

Keres strongly recommended 8 Qh4 instead, and that is called "preferable" by Moles and Wicker. Then it is true that 8 ... Nc6 9 0-0-0 transposes to the well-known game Keres-Botvinnik, Hague 1948, where White was somewhat better. What seems to have escaped notice, however, is 8 Qh4 Rg4

(8 ... Qxd4 9 Nf3! Qc5 10 Nxe4, about equal) 9 Qh3 (9 Qh6 Qxd4 10 0-0-0 Qxf2! 11 Bb5+ c6 12 Nh3 Qf5 13 Rhf1 Rg6 — the point — 14 Qe3 Qc5 15 Nf4 Qxe3 16 Bxe3 Bxc3 17 bxc3 and 17 ... cxb5?! 18 Nxc6 Ng4 19 Bg5 f6 20 Bxf6 Nd7 ♣ Zoringt-Holm, Siegen 1970, or 17 ... Nd5(!) is good for Black) 9 ... Qxd4! 10 0-0-0 (10 f3?? e3; 10 Nge2 Qe5 and White can no longer get the key f3 in: ♣; 10 Be2 Rg6 11 0-0-0 transposes after 11 ... Qxf2) 10 ... Qxf2 11 Be3!? Qf5 12 Nb5 Na6!.

This intends 13 Nd4 Qg6! meeting 14 Bb5+ by ... Bd7 (Keres, Schwarz). Actually, 13 ... Qa5!? may be good too, e.g. 14 Bb5+! c6! 15 Bxc6+! (15 Nxc6 bxc6 16 Bxc6+ Ke7! 17 Bxa8 Qxa2 etc.) 15 ... bxc6 16 Nxc6 Qc7 17 Rd8+ Qxd8 18 Nxd8 Kxd8 and Black's material probably counts for more than his loose pawn structure. Note here that 11 Be2 Rg6 12 g4, as in 7.32 below, is not effective against 12 ... Qc5 13 g5 (? but there is little else) 13 ... Bxc3! with two pawns if 14 Bxc3, and the pleasant choice of 14 ... Rxc5 or 14 ... Qa3+ after 14 bxc3.

8 ... Nc6  
9 Nge2 e5!?

Batygin's move, exploiting Black's trump, his superior development. If Black wants a safer move, 9 ... Bxc3 fits the bill. After 10 Qxc3! (10 Bxc3 Qd6! ♣ Keres) 10 ... Nd5 11 Qb3 a5 12 0-0-0 a4 13 Qa3 Qf6! (various), Black looks to have fair prospects.

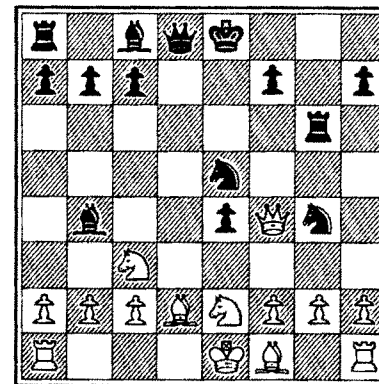
10 dxe5

10 Nxe4? Ng4 11 Qg3 (11 Qb3 Bxd2+ 12 Nxd2 Nxd4 ♣) 11 ... f5! 12 Bxb4 Nxb4 13 Qb3 fxe4 14 Qxb4 Qf6 ♣ (*Archives*).

10 ... Ng4!  
11 Qf4

11 Qxe4? Nxf2! and everything falls apart, e.g. 12 Kxf2 Qxd2 13 Rd1 Bc5+ 14 Kf3 Bg4+ 15 Qxg4 Qe3 Mate.

11 ... Ncxe5



Now Black has a nice cluster of pieces around White's king and threatens ... Bd6. The analysis and examples go:

(a) 12 Qxe4 Qe7! 13 Nf4 (13 f4 f5!) 13 ... Bf5! ♚ (Archives). A funny place to stop. Of course 14 Qxf5?? Nd3+ is mate in one more move, but 14 Nxc6 hxc6 15 Qe2 Bxc2 is not as clear, although, for example, 16 Bg5!? f6 (or 16 ... Qxg5!? 17 Qxc2 0-0-0 threatening moves like ... Re8 and/or ... Qf4) 17 Be3 (17 Qxc2 Nf3+) 17 ... Bxc3+ 18 bxc3 Bd3 19 Qd2 0-0-0 looks pretty strong (20 Rd1 Nc4; 20 Qc1 Nxf2!).

(b) 12 0-0-0 Bd6 13 Kc1 f5 14 Nb5 Nc4 15 Nxd6+ Rxd6 16 Kc1 Nxf2 ♚ (Archives).

(c) 12 h3!? Bd6 13 Qxe4 f5 14 Qa4+ (14 Qd4 c5! Archives; then 15 Qd5 Nf6! 16 Qb3 c4 and the queen is embarrassed) 14 ... Bd7 15 Qb3 Qh4 ♚ (Archives). A poor assessment, since 16 hxc4! Qxh1 17 0-0-0 is risky for both sides, although the burden of proof is still on White. A line like this illustrates how 9 ... e5!? demands home analysis.

(d) 12 Nxe4 (given as best by all commentators) 12 ... Bxd2+ 13 Qxd2 (13 Nxd2 Qe7 threatening ... Rf6 gives good play, e.g. 14 Ne4 Qb4+) 13 ... Bf5! 14 Qxd8+ (14 Qf4 Bxe4 15

Qxe4 Qd7! intending 16 f4 0-0-0 or 16 Rd1? Qxd1+) 14 ... Rxd8 15 N2c3 Re6 16 Be2 Bxe4 17 Nxe4 Nc6! 18 Ng3 Nd4 19 Rc1 Kf8 20 c3 Nxe2 21 Nxe2 Ne5 with a very good game, Schreyer-Hoffman, *corres* 1957.

The conclusion is that 7 ... Rg6 achieves easy equality if Black wants (e.g. 9 ... Bxc3), and *maybe* more if he plays aggressively, but that is not yet established.

### 7.32

7 ... Qxd4

A more forcing line than 7.31, and a big reason why 4 Bd2 is so seldom played, since White has to play accurately just to stay in the game.

8 0-0-0

Not 8 Nge2?! Qe5 9 Bf4 Qf5 ♚ (Keres).

8 ... Bf8!?

Black could try to transpose to the note to 8 Qe3!? in 7.31 by playing 8 ... Rg6. One answer would be 9 Qf4 (instead of 9 Qh4) 9 ... Bd6 10 Nge2 Bxf4 11 Nxd4 Bxd2+ 12 Rxd2 = (Pachman). The text tries to consolidate the kingside.

### 9 Qh4

Again 9 Qf4 Bd6 10 Nge2 = is possible. The 7 ... Qxd4 line leaves White some simplifying options.

9 ... Rg4  
10 Qh3 Qxf2  
11 Be2!

The only move to avoid disadvantage, since 11 Nb5 Na6 and 11 Be3 Qf5 12 Nb5 Na6 are very solid.

11 ... Rg6!?

An interesting option is 11 ... Qxg2 12 Bxg4 Qxg4 13 Qxg4 Nxc4 14 Nxe4 Bd7!, about equal. Otherwise a well-known "trap" is 11 ... Rh4!? 12 Qxh4! Qxh4 13 g3, when 13 ... Qh6! 14 Bxh6 Bxh6+ 15 Kb1 Bd7! (Keres) is best, but certainly no better for Black.

12 g4

This prevents a queen retreat to f5 and threatens 13 Be3. The only other way to look for compensation is 12 Rf1!?, when Moles and Wicker recommend 12 ... Qb6 with the idea 13 Rxf6 Rxf6 14 Nd5 exd5! 15 Qxc8+ Ke7 16 Bg5 Bh6!, but this is messy.

12 ... Qc5  
13 Be3

13 g5? Rxc5! 14 Be3 (14 Bxc5 Qxc5+ with three pawns and

the dark squares) 14 ... Qf5 15 Qh4 Rg2 16 Nh3 Bc5! ♚ was Mestrovic-Matanovic, *Kraljevo* 1967.

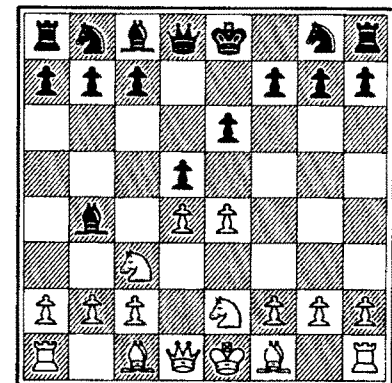
13 ... Qe5

And the position is drawn after 14 Bd4 Qf4+ 15 Be3 Qe5 etc., since 14 Qh4 Bc5! or 14 Nb5 Na6 favours Black. Here 13 ... Qa5 14 g5 Rxc5 15 Qh4! Rg6 16 Nh3 is too dangerous for the second player.

So 7 ... Qxd4 can be used as an equalizer, but if Black wants to avoid the repetition at the end he must play either 8 ... Rg6 or, later, the endgame with 11 ... Qxg2, neither of which promises much. However, it is clear that 4 Bd2 is no threat whatsoever to the soundness of the Winawer.

### 7.4

4 Ne2



Originally popularized by Alekhine's aggressive use of it in the 1930s, 4 Ne2 has been revived of late, but primarily as a means of securing riskless play for White. The avoidance of doubled c-pawns is a plus, but as a price White confines his own development and allows his centre to be challenged quickly. Among others Gheorghiu has been a proponent of the White position, while Uhlmann and Korchnoi have done very well as Black. The frequent use of 4 Ne2 over the last five years has at least led to a clarification of the variation's problems, and the establishment of some main lines.

4 ... dxe4

Those determined to avoid theory might wish to look into 4 ... Nc6!?, e.g. 5 a3 Ba5 (5 ... Bxc3+ 6 Nxc3 dxe4 is 7.41 below) 6 e5 (6 Qd3 dxe4 7 Qxe4 Nf6 = Barcza-McCambridge, Dortmund 1982) 6 ... f6 (6 ... Ne7!?) 7 Nf4 (7 exf6 Nxf6 = or 7 ... Qxf6; 7 f4 Nh6!) 7 ... Qd7 with an interesting game in store (8 Qh5+ Qf7 or 8 Bb5 fxe5 9 Qh5+ Qf7 10 Qxe5 Ne7 etc.).

5 a3

Here there is one ambitious move and one safe one: 7.41 5 ... Bxc3+; 7.42 5 ... Be7.

## 7.41

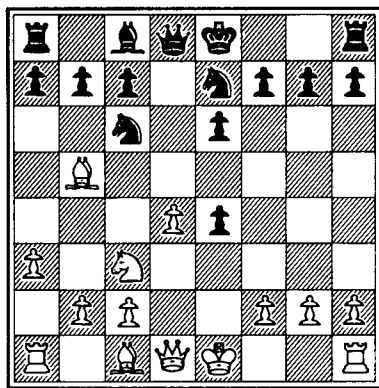
5 ... Bxc3+  
6 Nxc3 Nc6

The much-maligned 6 ... f5!? is actually playable, as I discovered from conducting the white side some years ago. The key to Black's defence, regardless of whether White plays 7 f3, 7 Bc4, or 7 Bf4, is an early ... c6, often followed by transfer of a knight to d5. Of course one could find this a slightly depressing way to conduct one's game.

7 Bb5

Not 7 Be3? Nf6, since then Bg5 (the response to 6 ... Nf6) is not available.

7 ... Ne7



8 Bg5

Probably best, although 8 Be3 may just transpose after

8 ... 0-0 9 Qd2 f5, since here 8 ... Nf5 9 Qd2 does not improve and 8 ... 0-0 9 Qd2 a6!? 10 Bxc6 Nxc6 11 0-0-0! (11 Nxe4 e5! 12 d5 Nd4 13 Bxd4 Qxd5! = Miles) 11 ... f5 12 Bg5 Qe8 13 f3! exf3 14 gxf3 gave White a nice attack in Miles-Reefshläger, Porz 1981/2. This method of opening up the g-file is White's key attacking idea.

8 Nxe4 gives no advantage after 8 ... 0-0 (or 8 ... e5!? 9 Bg5 — 9 dxe5 Qxd1+ 10 Kxd1 Bf5 = Moles — 9 ... Qxd4 10 Qxd4 exd4 11 Bxe7 Kxe7 12 0-0-0 Rd8 = Gheorghiu-Gligoric, Manila 1974; but this is dull) 9 c3 (9 Be3? f5! and ... f4) 9 ... e5 10 Bxc6 (10 dxe5?! Qxd1+ 11 Kxd1 Nxe5 ♣ Bronstein-Bondarevsky, USSR Ch 1977) 10 ... Nxc6 11 d5 Ne7 12 c4 (12 d6 cxd6 13 Qxd6 Nf5 = Tartakower-Bondarevsky, Saltsjobaden 1948; here 12 ... Nf5 = keeps more play) 12 ... f5 (Or 12 ... b5!? 13 b3 Ba6 14 Nc5 Qd6 Wicker) 13 Nc3 f4 (! To improve upon 13 ... Ng6!? 14 0-0 f4 15 f3 Nh4 16 Ne4 ± of Enevoldsen-Duckstein, Amsterdam 1966) 14 f3 Nf5 (the difference) 15 0-0 Rf6!? (15 ... a5!) 16 b4 a5 17 b5! (17 Rb1 axb4 18 axb4 Rg6) 17 ... Rg6 18 Ra2 Qe7 19 Ne4 Bd7 (19 ... a4!?) 20 a4 Rd8 21 Qe1 b6 22 Re2 Nd4 23 Rd2 Hor-

vath-Knaak, Trnava 1981, and although 23 ... Qb4!? 24 Rxd4! exd4 25 Qxb4 axb4 26 Bxf4 Ra8! was enough to draw, 23 ... Bf5 is safer. A dynamically balanced line.

8 ... f6  
9 Be3 0-0

The sometimes-played 9 ... a6 was virtually refuted in Barczay-Sharif, Dortmund 1982 due to 10 Bxc6+ Nxc6 11 Qh5+! g6 12 Qh6 with a clear plus. After 9 ... 0-0, White can no longer play 10 Nxe4? f5!, e.g. 11 Nc3 f4 12 Bd2 Nxd4 13 Bd3 e5 ♣ MacClee-Watson, Los Angeles 1982.

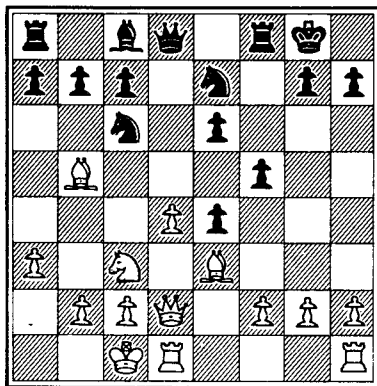
10 Qd2 f5

Also deserving attention is 10 ... e5!? 11 d5 Nd4 12 Bc4 (12 Bxd4 exd4 13 Qxd4 Nf5 ½-½ Sax-Barczay, Magyarorszag 1982) 12 ... Kh8 13 0-0-0, and now *Informant 33* gives 13 ... Bg4 intending ... c5 "unclear", which seems fair in view of 13 ... Bg4 14 Rde1 c5 15 Nxe4 Rc8 16 f3 Bh5 with pressure on d5.

11 f3

The most common, but by no means necessarily best, move. True, 11 Bg5?! h6 12 Bxe7 Nxe7 13 0-0-0 Nd5 14 Bc4 c6 15 f3 exf3 16 gxf3 Qh4 17 Ne2 f4

18 Rdg1 Qf2! was excellent for Black in Braga–Korchnoi, Sao Paulo 1979; and 11 0–0 a6 12 Bxc6 Nxc6 is equal (13 f3?! f4! 14 Bxf4 exf3 15 Rad1 e5! ♣ Radulescu–Balanel, 1948). But a major alternative is 11 0–0–0



Now 11 ... Nd5!? succeeded beyond reason in Pavlov–Uhlmann, Halle 1981, after 12 Bg5?? e3! 13 Bxe3 f4 14 Nxd5 Qxd5 15 Bxf4 (15 Bxc6 Qa2! ♣♣; the point) 15 ... Qxb5 with a winning advantage. Also 12 Bxc6 bxc6 13 Nxd5 Qxd5!, or here 13 Bg5 Qd6 intending ... h6 is nice for Black. The problem is 12 Nxd5! and 12 ... exd5 13 Bxc6 bxc6 14 Bf4 (“±” Miles), which is still unclear (e.g. 14 ... a5 15 Qc3 Ra6 16 Rhe1 Rf7 17 Qc5 g5 18 Be5 Qf8), but not much fun for the second player; or 12 ... Qxd5 13 c4 and White clearly has play for his pawn since he can com-

bine breaks like f3 and d5.

Safer, therefore, seems 11 ... a6! 12 Bxc6 (12 Be2? Nd5!; 12 Ba4? b5 13 Bb3 Na5 ♣) 12 ... Nxc6 13 f3 (Everything else is too slow) 13 ... exf3 (Two other playable moves are 13 ... e5 14 d5 Na5 15 fxe4 f4! 16 Bc5 Nc4 = and ... Nd6, as in Greif–Letelle, Mar del Plata 1955; and 13 ... b5!? 14 fxe4 Na5 15 Bg5 Qe8 16 exf5 Nc4 unclear Wade–Duckstein, Hastings 1958/9, although the latter line is not convincing) 14 gxf3 e5! with an equal game, e.g. 15 dxe5!? Qxd2+ 16 Bxd2!? Be6! (16 ... Nxe5 17 Nd5!) and 17 Bg5 h6 or 17 Bf4 Rad8 or 17 f4 Rad8. Or 15 d5 Na5!? (15 ... Ne7! is at least equal, defending the kingside and a pawn up) 16 Qe2 b5 17 Rhg1 Ciocaltea–Ornstein, Smederevska Palanka 1981, and Black should try either 17 ... Nc4 or 17 ... f4!? 18 Bc5 Rf7 19 Ne4 Nb7 with fair prospects. 15 ... Ne7 looks best, however.

11 ... exf3

Keres’ widely-quoted 11 ... f4!? 12 Bxf4 exf3 might well transpose to the next note. Also, 11 ... Nd5 is well playable, intending 12 fxe4 Nxe3 ♣ or 12 Bxc6 bxc6 13 fxe4 Nxc3 14 Qxc3 Qh4+ etc., or 12 Nxd5

Qxd5 13 c4 Qd6 =/unclear. But 11 ... exf3 is more ambitious.

12 gxf3

12 0–0–0!? looks more dangerous, since Black can hardly afford 12 ... fxe2 13 Rhg1; but then 12 ... a6 13 Bxc6 Nxc6 14 gxf3 Rf7 = is Fejgelson–Petrosian below, whereas 12 ... f4!? 13 Bxf4 e5! activates Black’s pieces, e.g. 14 Bxe5!? (14 dxe5 Qxd2+ 15 Bxd2 fxe2 16 Rhg1 Bh3; best 14 Bc4+ =) 14 ... Nxe5 15 dxe5 Qxd2+ 16 Rxd2 Be6! ♣, e.g. 17 gxf3 c6! 18 Be2 Rae8 with ... Ng6 etc. to follow.

12 ... f4!?

Safer and also equal was 12 ... a6 13 Bxc6 Nxc6 14 0–0–0 Rf7! 15 Bf4 e5! = Fejgelson–Petrosian, USSR 1979.

13 Bxf4

13 Bf2 e5! (or 13 ... Nf5=) 14 Bc4+ Kh8 15 d5 Nd4! favors Black.

13 ... e5

With at least equality, e.g. 14 Bc4+(!) Kh8 15 Bxe5 Nxe5 16 dxe5 Qxd2+ 17 Kxd2 Bh3! etc. Also 13 ... Nxd4 14 0–0–0 c5 is possible.

Thus the 5 ... Bxc3+ system provides a complete answer to 4

Ng2, particularly since Black has at least two playable options on each of the critical 10th, 11th, and 12th moves.

7.42

5 ... Be7

As usual with our “alternate” line, we will explore a repertoire with a minimum of analysis on detailed alternatives for Black. 5 ... Be7 is the sensible man’s move, with no pretensions to advantage but few problems for the defence.

6 Nxe4

6 g4!? Bd7! (or 6 ... h5!?) 7 Ng3 Bc6 8 Bg2 h6 9 Be3 Nf6 10 Qe2 Nbd7 11 0–0–0 Nb6 12 Ncxe4 Nxe4 Planinc–Ivkov, Yugoslavian Ch 1975, and instead of 13 Nxe4 Bd5! 14 f4 Qd7 ♣ intending ... Qa4, ECO gives 13 Bxe4, but 13 ... Bd5! is still a good answer (♣).

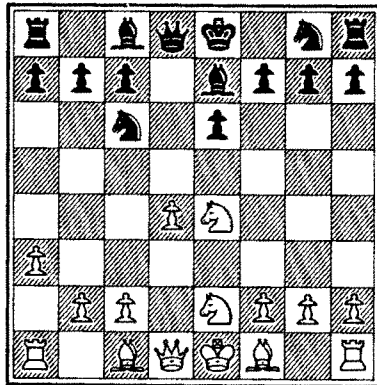
6 ... Nc6

A little simpler than 6 ... Nf6, although both moves are equal.

(see following diagram)

7 Be3

Currently the most popular set-up, but not the most challenging:



(a) 7 g3!? is best answered by 7 ... e5! 8 Be3 (8 d5 Nd4! 9 Nxd4 Qxd5 ♣) 8 ... Bg4 9 d5 Bf3 10 Rg1 Bxe4 11 Nc3 Bxd5! ♣ (Wicker).

(b) 7 Bf4 Nf6 8 Qd3 and 7 Qd3 Nf6 8 Bf4 are interchangeable: 8 ... 0-0 (8 ... b6!? 9 0-0-0 Bb7 10 N2c3 Qd7 ½-½ Gheorghiu-Miles, Baden 1980) 9 0-0-0 Nd5! (9 ... b6 is equal too, e.g. 10 Nxf6+ Bxf6 11 Qg3 Bh4 12 Qe3 Stoica-Farago, Albena 1983, and now Farago gives 12 ... Ne7! =. 9 ... Rb8!? is also possible) 10 h4!? ("!" various) 10 ... f5! (Improving upon 10 ... Nxf4?! of Scheipl-Heil, BRD Ch 1972) 11 Ng5 Rb8! 12 g3?! (12 c4 Nxf4 13 Nxf4 Bxg5 14 hxg5 Qxg5 15 Qe3 Bd7!) 12 ... b5 13 Bg2 (13 c3 a5 or 13 ... b4!?) 13 ... b4 (♣) 14 a4 b3! 15 c4 (15 cxb3 Na5) 15 ... Ndb4 16 Qe3 (16

Qxb3? Na5) 16 ... Na5 17 d5 (the only move, attacking a7) 17 ... Qe8! 18 Nc3 (18 Qxa7 Qxa4 19 Qxb8 Qa1+ leads to win of the queen and then mate; 18 Bxc7 Qxa4!) 18 ... Na2+ 19 Kb1 Nxc3+ 20 Qxc3 Bb4 21 Qd3 Qxa4 22 dxe6 Nxc4 and Black won in a few moves, Iskov-Watson, Gausdal 1978.

(c) 7 c3 Nf6 (or 7 ... b6!?, anticipating that White's f4 will be answered by ... Nh6) 8 N2g3 e5! (8 ... 0-0 9 f4!? should be met by 9 ... Nxe4! 10 Nxe4 Qd5 11 Qf3 Na5! =, but 9 Bc4! sets some problems) 9 Nxf6+ Bxf6 10 d5 Ne7 11 c4 (11 Bc4 0-0 12 0-0 Ng6 13 Ne4?! Be7 15 Qh5 Kh8! 15 Ng5 Bxg5 16 Bxg5 Qd6 ♣ intending ... f5, Gheorghiu-Uhlmann, Skopje 1972) 11 ... 0-0!? (11 ... Ng6 12 Bd3 Nh4! 13 0-0 0-0 is complex, intending ... g6, e.g. 14 f4 exf4 15 Rxf4 Be5 16 Rf1 f5! =, with the idea ... f4-f3 and or ... c6) 12 Bd3 g6 13 Bh6(?) Bg7 14 Bxg7 Kxg7 15 Qe2 Re8! 16 0-0-0 Nf5! 17 Bxf5 gxf5! 18 f4? exf4 19 Nh5+ Kh6 20 Qf3 Re3 21 Qxf4+ Qg5 ♣ Dolmadjian-Toshkov, Bulgarian Ch 1981.

7 ... Nf6  
8 Nxf6+

8 N4c3 b6! followed by ... Bb7, ... Qd7 and perhaps

... 0-0-0 is equal, and 8 N2g3 e5 equalizes on the spot. The main alternatives are 8 Qd3 b6 (8 ... 0-0 9 0-0-0 Rb8!?) 9 0-0-0 Bb7 10 N2g3 Qd7 and 8 N2c3 0-0!? (Dvoretsky gives 8 ... Nxe4! 9 Nxe4 e5 =, e.g. 10 d5 Nd4! or 10 dxe5 Qxd1+ 11 Rxd1 Nxe5; he also says 9 ... 0-0! ♣ intending ... f5-f4, but 10 g3! is a good response) 9 Ng3 (9 Qd2 e5 = Moe-Pytel, Nice 1974) 9 ... b6 10 Be2 Bb7 11 0-0 (11 Bf3 Qd7 12 d5 Ne5 =) 11 ... Qd7 =, e.g. 12 f4 Rad8 13 Bf3 Qc8! = Speilmann-Riumin, Moscow 1935, or 12 Qd2 Rad8 13 Rfd1 Qc8 = Alekhine-Euwe, match (5) 1935.

8 ... Bxf6  
9 Qd2

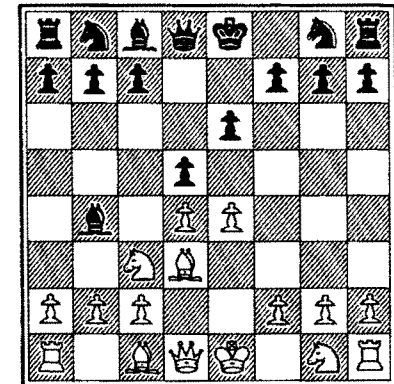
Or 9 c4 0-0 10 Qd2 b6 11 Rd1 Bb7 12 Ng3 Ne7! 13 f3 Nf5 = Tompa-Szabo, Hungary 1976.

9 ... e5

10 0-0-0 (10 d5 Ne7 =) 10 ... 0-0 (=) 11 d5 Ne7 12 Ng3 Ng6 13 Nh5 Be7 = Lilienthal-Botvinnik, Moscow 1936. A game Campora-Petrosian, Vrsac 1981 showed that Black can also play simply 9 ... 0-0 10 0-0-0 Ne7!: 11 Nc3 Nf5 12 Ne4 Be7 13 Bg5 b6 with an easy game.

## 7.5

## 4 Bd3



A neglected continuation which has never received adequate analysis, although White's results have not been bad. Black has two good approaches, but he should know what he is doing: 7.51 4 ... e5; 7.52 4 ... dxe4.

## 7.51

## 4 ... e5

By simply attacking in the centre, Black obtains an unbalanced game.

## 5 exd5

The main move. 5 a3 Bxc3+ 6 bxc3 can lead to 6 ... c4 (Easiest, although 6 ... Nc6 is

fully playable) 7 Bf1 (Considered best. 7 Be2?! dxe4! 8 Bxc4 Qc7 9 Qe2 Nd7 10 Bb2 Ngf6 11 f3 b5! Ilyin-Zhenevsky-Ragozin, Match 1930. Because 12 Bxb5? Rb8 13 Rb1 0-0 14 fxe4 Nxe4! or here 13 c4 0-0 14 Bxd7 Bxd7 15 Rb1 Qa5+ favours Black, White has to allow a queenside bind, assessed as “ $\mp$ ” by ECO) 7 ... Qa5 (7 ... dxe4!? 8 Qg4 Nf6 9 Qxg7 Rg8 10 Qh6 Rg6 is unclear, but apparently fine for Black. Another move would be 7 ... Ne7, e.g. 8 Qg4 Ng6 9 e5 Nc6 10 h4 h5 11 Qd1 — 11 Qg3 Nce7! — 11 ... Nxh4 12 g3 Ng6 = Riemsdyk-Miranda, Brazilian Ch 1974) 8 Qf3 Nc6 9 Ne2 Nge7 = Bastrikov-Dubinina, RSFSR Ch 1975.

5 ... **exd5!**

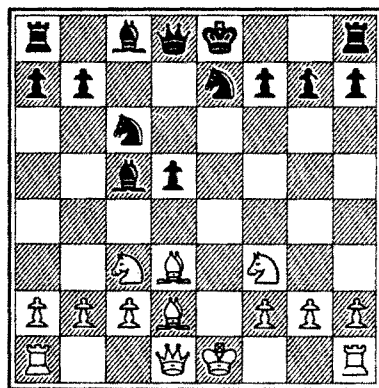
The variation with 5 ... Qxd5 6 Bd2 Bxc3 7 Bxc3 cxd4 8 Bxd4 Qxg2 9 Qf3 is not only somewhat better for White despite his pawn less, it is also very depressing to defend. The text gives a nice imbalance with a full share of the centre.

6 dxc5

The main line, although White's d3 bishop is misplaced to exploit the isolated queen's pawn. Harmless is 6 Bb5+ Nc6 7 Ne2, and now 7 ... c4 is quite

playable, or Black can go in for 7 ... Nge7 8 0-0 (8 a3 Bxc3+ 9 Nxc3 0-0 threatens capture on d4 with at least equality) 8 ... 0-0 9 dxc5 Bxc5 =. Lastly, 6 Nf3 c4! 7 Be2 Nge7 is comfortable for Black.

6 ... **Nc6**  
7 **Bd2** **Bxc5**  
8 **Nf3** **Nge7**



Usually better than ... Nf6 in these positions. Now Black has a typical isolani with White's bishops temporarily misplaced, e.g. 9 0-0 0-0 (or 9 ... Bg4 10 h3 Bh5 intending ... Bg6) 10 Bf4 Nb4 11 Na4 Nxd3 12 Qxd3 Bf5 12 Qd2 Bd6 = Bilek-Ozsvath, Budapest 1954.

7.52

4 ... **dxe4**

The natural move, since now Black will gain a tempo by attack on e4.

5 **Bxe4**

Now there are two ways to equalize: 7.521 5 ... Nf6; 7.522 5 ... c5

7.521

5 ... **Nf6**  
6 **Bf3**

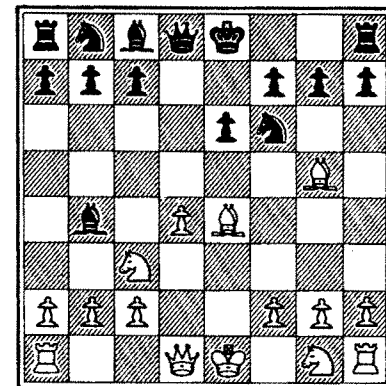
Keeping the bishop active. Others:

(a) 6 Bd3 c5 (or 6 ... Nbd7! intending ... c5) 7 a3!? (7 dxc5 Nbd7 8 Bd2 Nxc5 9 Bb5+ Ncd7 of Averbach-Botvinnik, USSR Ch 1955, is a better way for White to get to equality) 7 ... Bxc3+ 8 bxc3 Qc7 (Intending ... c4; also good is 8 ... Nbd7 with the idea ... b6) 9 Nf3 c4 (or 9 ... Nbd7) 10 Be2 Nd5 11 Qd2?! Nd7 12 a4 N7f6 13 Qg5 0-0  $\mp$  with the better pawn structure, Sherbakov-Petrosian, USSR Ch 1955.

(b) 6 Bg5 receives periodic attention.

(see following diagram)

One answer is 6 ... c5: 7 dxc5 (7 a3? Bxc3+ 8 bxc3 Qa5  $\mp$  Tal-Kärner, Parnu 1971) 7 ... Qxd1+ 8 Rxd1 Nbd7 9 Bf3 (9 c6? Nxe4) 9 ... Bxc3+ 10 bxc3 Nxc5 = (11 Be3 Nfd7!).



Another good reply is 6 ... Nbd7(!), when White in turn has several approaches: 7 Nf3 h6 8 Bxf6 Nxf6, at least equal; or 7 Bf3 c5 8 dxc5 Qa5 = Tal-Lein, USSR Ch 1971, or here 8 a3 Bxc3+ 9 bxc3 Qa5 10 Qd2 0-0 11 Ne2 Hoen-Huss, Norway 1980, and now 11 ... c4 is good, or 11 ... Re8 12 0-0 cxd4 13 Nxd4 e5 14 Nb3 Qc7 (14 ... Qa4!?) 15 Rfe1, as played, and now just 15 ... Rb8! with the idea ... b6. Or 7 Qd3!? c5! (rather than 7 ... h6 of Lutikov-Sahovic, Vurmala 1978), and 8 d5 Bxc3+ 9 bxc3 exd5 10 Bxd5 0-0, at least equal, or 8 dxc5 Qa5 =. Finally, 7 Ne2 h6 8 Bxf6 Nxf6 9 Bf3 c5 (or even Petrosian's 9 ... c6, since Black already has the bishops) 10 dxc5 (10 a3? Bxc3+ 11 bxc3 Qc7! 12 0-0 0-0 13 Rb1 Rb8  $\mp$  intending ... b6, Gipslis-Bronstein, USSR 1961)

10 ... Bxc5 11 Qxd8+ Kxd8 12 Rd1+ Ke7 ♣ Padevsky–Bronstein, Moscow 1962.

6 ... c5

6 ... 0–0 7 Ne2 e5! = is a fairly direct method, and even 6 ... Nd5!? 7 Ne2 Nxc3 8 bxc3 Bd6 led to equality in Sahovic–Rajkovic, Vrnjacka Banja 1982. More interesting is 6 ... Nc6!? 7 Ne2 e5 8 Bxc6+ (8 d5? e4!) 8 ... bxc6, which is held to be equal also, e.g. 9 dxe5 Qxd1+ 10 Kxd1 Ng4 or 9 0–0 Ba6 10 dxe5?! Bxc3 11 bxc3 Ne4! ♣ Böhm–Hecht, Amsterdam 1972. The key line here is 10 Re1 0–0 11 dxe5 Ng4 12 Bf4 of Gusev–Kalining, Leningrad 1975; after 12 ... Re8 13 Nd4, Gipslis makes the apparently good suggestion 13 ... Nxf2(!) 14 Kxf2 Bc5. Then, for example, 15 Be3 Qh4+ 16 Kg1 Rad8 could follow. Thus 6 ... Nc6 is riskier than 6 ... c5 or 6 ... 0–0, but perhaps okay, too.

7 Ne2

7 a3 Bxc3+ 8 bxc3 Nc6 is 7.522 below (=), and here 8 ... 0–0 9 Ne2 Nbd7 10 0–0 e5 = of Novak–Pranstetter, Tbilisi 1972 is okay too. 7 Be3 Nd5 (or 7 ... Nc6 =, or 7 ... cxd4 8 Qxd4 Qxd4 9 Bxd4 Nc6 10 Bxc6+ bxc6 = Moen–Renman, Eksjö 1981) 8 Bd2 Nxc3 9 bxc3

Ba5 10 Ne2 0–0 11 0–0 Qe7 = Michel–Czerniak, Mar del Plata 1950.

7 ... Nc6

8 Be3

Again, 8 a3 Bxc3+ transposes to 7.522.

8 ... cxd4

9 Nxd4 Ne5

Or 9 ... Bxc3+ 10 bxc3 Ne5, given as ♣ by Schwarz, although this is certainly exaggerated. 9 ... Ne5 leads to at least equality after 10 Be2 Nd5 11 Bd2 Nxc3 12 bxc3 Be7 (! 12 ... Ba5, about =, was Fichtl–Uhlmann, Berlin 1962) 13 0–0 0–0 14 f4 Nd7! 15 Bd3 Nc5 16 Qf3 Bd7 17 Rae1 Nxd3 18 cxd3 Qc7 19 Re3 Bf6 ♣ (two bishops on an open board), Fichtl–Uhlmann, Zinnowitz 1966. Relatively better was 10 0–0!? Nxf3+ (10 ... 0–0!?) 11 Qxf3 Bxc3 12 bxc3 Gusev–Hait, USSR 1980, and now 12 ... Qa5!? is one of several ideas, e.g. 13 Rab1!? 0–0 14 Rb3 e5! 15 Nf5 Be6! with good play.

7.522

5 ... c5

Here is an alternative move order if anything in the preceding analysis bothers Black.

6 a3

6 Ne2 Nf6 7 Bf3 (7 Bg5 cxd4 8 Bxf6 — 8 Nxd4? Bxc3+ 9 bxc3 Qa5 ♣ — 8 ... Qxf6 =) 7 ... Nc6 8 a3 transposes.

6 ... Bxc3+

7 bxc3 Nf6

8 Bf3

8 Bd3 Qc7! = threatens ... c4 again.

8 ... Nc6

Or 8 ... Qc7!? 9 Ne2 Bd7 intending 10 a4 Bc6!

9 Ne2 e5

9 ... Qa5!? 10 0–0 c4 11 a4 0–0 is a challenging idea.

10 Bg5

The only testing move since 10 Bxc6+ bxc6 11 Be3 can be met by 11 ... cxd4 12 cxd4 0–0 13 0–0 exd4 14 Nxd4 Qd5 = of Vasyukov–Golz, Gotha 1957.

10 ... exd4

Or 10 ... cxd4, e.g. 11 Bxc6+ bxc6 12 cxd4 exd4 13 Qxd4 Qa5+! 14 Bd2 Qd5 = Hort–Pietzsch, Kecskemet 1964. Groszpeter–Sinkowitz, Hungary 1978, saw 10 ... cxd4 11 0–0!?, when best was just 11 ... dxc3!, e.g. 12 Qxd8+ Nxd8 13 Nxc3 Be6 =/unclear, or perhaps 13 ... Nd7!? intend-

ing 14 Nb5 Ne6, although that is touchy.

11 cxd4

11 Bxc6+ bxc6 12 cxd4 cxd4 is the last note.

11 ... h6

Eliminating the two-bishop factor in an ending. 11 ... cxd4 is equal too. After 11 ... h6, Ortega–Uhlmann, Polanica Zdroj, continued 12 Bxf6 Qxf6 13 c3 0–0 14 0–0 Rd8 15 Qa4 Bd7 “with at least equality”, according to Moles/Wicker. They suggest 13 dxc5, but then 13 ... Ne5 14 Be4 0–0 intending ... Rd8 gives excellent counterplay.

Overall, 4 Bd3 is no particular worry, but one is advised to have a specific sequence against it.

## 7.6

4 exd5

A secondary version of the Exchange Variation (Chapter 2). That the trade of Nc3 for ... Bb4 in any way helps White can seem a dubious proposition. But there is still a lot going on as, in the words of Moles/Wicker, “each side still

has 15 men". Black in particular can play ... Bxc3 at some point and attempt to dominate the light squares, a theme with which he has been successful many times.

4 ... exd5

4 ... Qxd5 is not recommended. Now White has two main lines: 7.61 5 Qf3; 7.62 5 Bd3.

(a) 5 a3 is a loss of time: 5 ... Bxc3+ 6 bxc3 Ne7 7 Nf3 0-0 (or 7 ... Nbc6 8 Bd3 Bg4!) 8 Bd3 Bf5 9 0-0 Nbc6 10 Bf4 Treybal-Nimzowitsch, Carlsbad 1923, and Nimzowitsch recommends 10 ... Na5 ♣. Here 7 Bd3 Nbc6 8 Ne2 Bg4 is also nice for Black.

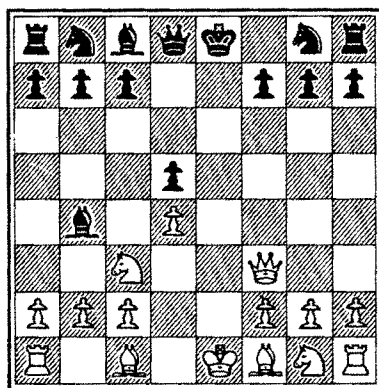
(b) 5 Be2!? Nf6 6 Nf3 0-0 7 0-0 Bf5 (7 ... Bxc3!? 8 bxc3 Ne4 intending ... Nd6 looks interesting) 8 Ne5 c6 = is from a game in *ECO*. The more flexible approach would be 5 ... Ne7 6 Nf3 Nbc6.

(c) 5 Nf3 Ne7 (Botvinnik played 5 ... Nc6 6 Bd3!? Bg4 to good effect versus Lasker in Moscow 1936) 6 Bd3 Nbc6 (or 6 ... Bg4) 7 h3 (7 0-0 Bg4 is bothersome) with two moves: 7 ... Bf5 8 Bxf5(?) Nxf5 9 0-0 Bxc3 10 bxc3 0-0 11 Qd3 Nd6 ♣ Mannheim-Nimzowitsch, Frankfurt 1930, and 7 ... Be6!? 8 0-0 Qd7 9 Bf4 Bxc3 10 bxc3

f6 11 Rb1 g5!? (or 11 ... Nd8 Moles) 12 Bg3 0-0-0 13 Qe2 (13 Nd2! Alekhine; but 13 ... Rdg8 14 Nb3 b6 is unclear) 13 ... Rde8 14 Rfe1 Nf5 15 Bxf5 Bxf5 ♣ Marshall-Nimzowitsch, New York 1927.

## 7.61

### 5 Qf3



A move Larsen was fond of at one time. White prevents the doubling of his c-pawns, prepares to pressure f6 if Black's knight ventures that way, and keeps an eye on d5. On the other hand, bringing out the queen so early tends to be problematic, for the same reason as in other openings: harassment by the enemy pieces with loss of tempi.

### 5 ... Qe7+!?

Given "!" in most sources, although Moles and Wicker claim that 5 ... Nc6 gives better winning chances. That move is also reasonably promising, e.g. 6 Bb5 Ne7 7 Bf4 (7 Bg5 f6 8 Bf4 0-0 9 0-0-0 a6 10 Bd3?! Nxd4! 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Rxd4 c5 ♣ Saharov-Krasnov, USSR 1971) 7 ... 0-0 8 0-0-0 (8 Nge2 Bf5 => 8 ... Be6! 9 Nge2 and now either 9 ... a6 10 Bd3 Qd7 11 h3 Bxc3! from Ghizdavu-Kapengut, Orebro 1966 or 9 ... Qd7 10 h3 a6 11 Bxc6 Nxc6 12 g4 b5 13 Rhg1 Rfb8 14 Ng3 Bf8! 15 Nh5 Kh8! ♣ Mestrovic-Uhlmann, Sarajevo 1965.

### 6 Ne2

(a) 6 Be3?! Nf6 (6 ... Nc6 7 Ne2 transposes to the text, and here 7 Bd3 Nf6 8 Ne2(?) Bg4 9 Qg3 Bxe2! 10 Bxe2 Ne4 11 Qxg7 0-0-0 is bad — Moles/Wicker) 7 Bd3(?) c5! 8 Kf1 Bxc3 9 bxc3 c4 10 Bf5 Bxf5 11 Qxf5 0-0 ♣ Mestrovic-Maric, Kraljevo 1967.

(b) 6 Qe3 is rather absurd, i.e. why play this line when one has the advantage of being White? Worse, White does not quite equalize(!) after 6 ... Nc6 (6 ... Be6!? Moles/Wicker) 7 Nf3 (7 Bb5 Bf5 8 Qxe7+ Nxe7 9 Bf4 Bxc2 10 Bxc7 Rc8 11 Bf4

a6 ♣ Saharov-Antoshin, Sochi 1966) 7 ... Bf5 8 Bd3 Bxd3 9 cxd3 0-0-0 10 0-0 Qd7! ♣ Ajala-Farago, Harrachov 1967.

6 ... Nc6  
7 Be3 Nf6  
8 a3!?

Probably better than 8 h3 Bxc3+ 9 bxc3 Ne4, and White is in quite a bind, 10 0-0-0 failing to 10 ... Qa3+ 11 Kb1 Nxc3+ 12 Nxc3 Qb4+ etc. (*ECO*).

8 ... Bxc3+  
9 bxc3 Ne4

9 ... Bg4 10 Qg3 does not achieve much.

### 10 Qh5! Be6

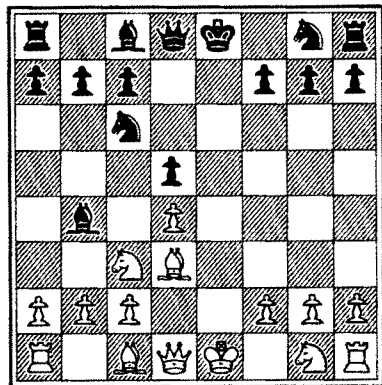
Biyiasis-Watson, Vancouver 1977. After 11 f3 g6 12 Qh6 Nd6 13 Ng3 0-0-0 14 Kf2 f6 15 Bd2 Na5 ♣, Black had a nice positional edge.

## 7.62

### 5 Bd3

The obvious developing move, but Black can bring his pieces out very efficiently.

5 ... Nc6



6 Ne2

(a) Recently 6 a3!? has been played a few times, e.g. 6 ... Bxc3+ (6 ... Be7 is passive, if equal) 7 bxc3 Nge7 (or 7 ... Nf6!? — stopping Qh5 — 8 Bg5 Qe7+ 9 Ne2 Bd7 10 0–0 h6 11 Bf4 0–0–0 with fair prospects, Miles–Short, British Ch 1979) 8 Qh5!? Be6! (8 ... g6? 9 Qf3! ±) 9 Ne2 Qd7 10 Ng3 (10 0–0 Bf5 ♣ Uhlmann) 10 ... 0–0–0 11 0–0 Rde8 12 a4 g6 13 Qf3 h5 14 h4 Nf5! 15 Bg5 (15 Nxf5 Bxf5 16 Bxf5 Qxf5! 17 Qxf5 gxf5 ♣) 15 ... Rhf8 16 Bf6 Nxc3 17 fxc3 Bg4 18 Qf2 Re6! 19 Rab1 (19 Bg7? Rfe8 20 Qxf7? R6e7) 19 ... Rfe8 20 c4 Be2 ♣ Casper–Uhlmann, Leipzig 1982.

(b) 6 Nf3 Bg4 7 Be3 Nf6 and a good light-square example was Belenzon–Watson, Phoenix 1976: 8 a3? Bxc3+ 9 bxc3

Na5! 10 h3 Bh5 11 g4(?) Bg6 12 Ne5 Ne4! 13 c4 (13 h4 Nc4!) 13 ... Nxc4 14 Nxc4 dxc4 15 Bxc4 Qf6! (threatening ... Qc6 and ... 0–0–0) 16 Rb1?? Nc3 0–1.

(c) 6 Be3 can be answered by 6 ... Nf6 (since 7 Bg5 is not an option) or by 6 ... Nge7 7 Qf3 Be6 = Kozomera–Duckstein, Sarajevo 1967.

6 ... Nge7  
7 0–0

7 Bg5 f6 8 Bf4 Bf5 (8 ... Bg4! looks more pointed) 9 0–0 Bxc3!? (9 ... 0–0 =) 10 bxc3 Bxd3 11 Qxd3!? Na5(?) 12 Qg3! Nf5 13 Qh3 Sliwa–Botvinnik, Moscow 1956, and 13 ... Ne7 trying to repeat was best.

7 ... Bg4

Most interesting, although 7 ... Bf5 is considered quite level, e.g. 8 Ng3 Bxd3 9 Qxd3 Bxc3 (or 9 ... Qd7) 10 Qxc3 (10 bxc3 0–0 11 Ba3 Na5 or 11 ... Re8 =) 10 ... 0–0 11 Bg5?! f6 12 Bd2 Qd6! 13 Qd3 f5 14 Rfe1 f4 ♣ O'Siochru–Moles, Cork 1971.

8 f3 Bf5

8 ... Be6 is also playable.

### 9 Re1

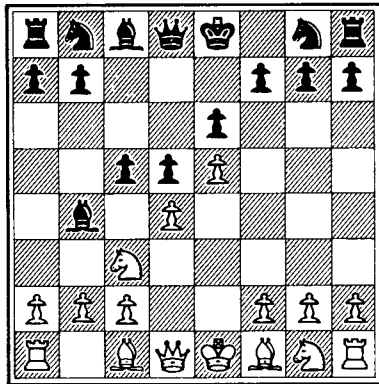
Or 9 Bf4 Bxc3 10 bxc3 0–0 11 Ng3 Bxd3 12 cxd3: Szabo–Geller, Göteborg 1955. After 9 Re1, Nogueiras–Sisniega, Camaguey 1977 went 9 ... Qd7 10 a3 Bxc3 11 Nxc3 0–0 12 Be3 Rfe8 =. Black's two knights might prove more valuable than

White's two bishops in such a position.

4 exd5 should not bother Black. Indeed, probably for the reasons outlined in Chapter 2 (The Exchange Variation), Black's successes outnumber White's in games which extend beyond the opening moves.

## 8 Winawer: Various 5th Moves

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bb4 4 e5 c5



Now White's first choice has always been 5 a3, but these alternatives are consistently tried out: 8.1 5 Bd2; 8.2 5 dxc5; 8.3 5 Qg4.

For the last five years or so, 5 Qg4 has been more popular than the other two moves, but that is not to say fashion cannot change. Note that alternatives are hard to find, since 5 ... cxd4 threatens to break up White's centre. Nonetheless, it is re-

markable that 5 Nf3 is not even mentioned in the major sources. If 5 ... Ne7, 6 a3 and 6 dxc5 transposes respectively to the main line and to 9.2 below. On 5 ... Nc6, 6 dxc5 again transposes, this time to the hypercritical 5 dxc5 Nc6 6 Nf3. The only logical independent move would be 5 ... cxd4, when 6 Nxd4(?) Qc7! apparently backfires, so White should play 6 Qxd4, e.g. 6 ... Nc6 7 Bb5 (7 Qg4?! Nge7 is 5 Qg4 Ne7 6 dxc5 Nbc6 7 Nf3 below, but with White's c-pawn gone!) 7 ... Qa5 8 Bd2 Ne7! (8 ... Bxc3? 9 Bxc6+ favours White) 9 Bxc6+ (9 a3 0-0!) 9 ... bxc6 (9 ... Nxc6 10 Qg4 0-0 11 0-0 with a3 or Bh6 to follow) and Black stands satisfactorily with a strong centre and two bishops, e.g. 10 0-0 0-0 11 a3 Bc5 12 Qg4 (12 b4 Bxd4 13 bxa5 Bxc3 ♣) 12 ... Qc7.

### 8.1

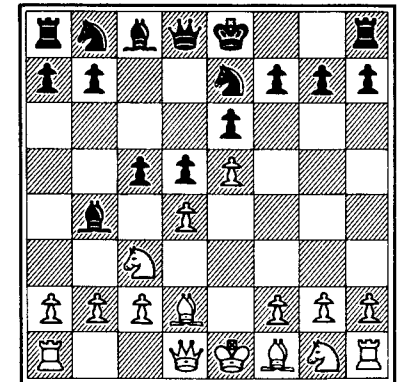
5 Bd2

White's intentions are clear: he avoids doubled pawns and threatens 6 Nb5.

5 ... Ne7

The most ambitious. An alternative equalizer is fairly simple this time, so it goes in a note: 5 ... Nc6 6 Nb5 (6 Qg4?! Nge7 7 Qxg7 Rg8 8 Qxh7 cxd4 9 Nb5 Bxd2+ 10 Kxd2 Nxe5 ♣ Haag; 6 Nf3 cxd4 7 Nb5 Bc5! 8 a3 Nge7 — or 8 ... a6 9 b4 Be7 = — 9 b4 Bb6 10 Bd3 — 10 Nd6+? Kf8 intending ... Bc7 — 10 ... Ng6 11 Qe2 Bc7! 12 Bg5 Qd7 13 Bxg6 Christoffel–Botvinnik, Groningen 1946, and, as so often, 13 ... fxg6! would give Black a fine game — Keres) 6 ... Bxd2+ 7 Qxd2 Nxd4 8 Nxd4 (8 Nd6+ Kf8 9 0-0-0 Nh6! 10 Bd3 f5 ♣ or 10 ... f6 ♣) 8 ... cxd4 9 Nf3 (9 Qxd4 Ne7 10 Nf3 transposes; 9 f4 Ne7 10 Nf3 0-0 11 Nxd4 f6 =, or here 9 ... Qb6!? 10 0-0-0 Ne7 11 Nf3 Bd7 12 Nxd4 0-0 = intending ... Rac8 and/or ...f6) 9 ... Ne7 10 Qxd4 (10 Bd3 Nc6 11 0-0 Bd7!? 12 b4 f6 13 exf6 Qxf6 14 b5 Ne7 15 Nxd4 0-0; or

here 11 ... Qb6 or 11 ... Qc7 — Moles and Wicker; 10 Nxd4 Nc6 11 Bb5 Qc7 12 f4 Bd7 13 Qc3 Rc8 = Moles and Wicker) 10 ... 0-0 11 Bd3 Nc6 12 Qe3 (12 Qg4? f5! ♣ Steiner–Szabo, Budapest 1948) 12 ... f5 13 0-0 Bd7 (=) 14 c4!? f4 15 Qe2 Qe8! 16 Rde1 Qh5, with dynamic equality, Fuchs–Franz, Kielbaum 1958.



After 5 ... Ne7, White has two approaches: 8.11 6 a3; 8.12 6 Nb5.

(a) 6 Nf3 cxd4 7 Nb5 transposes to 6 Nb5, but Black also has 6 ... Nbc6 7 dxc5 Ng6!? (or 7 ... 0-0 8 Bd3 f6!) 8 Bb5 Bxc5 9 h4(?) f6 ♣ Lee–Short, British Ch 1977, e.g. 10 exf6 Qxf6 11 Bg5 Qf5! 12 Bd3 Qg4 etc.

(b) 6 dxc5 Nbc6 7 Qg4 0-0 8 0-0-0 or 8 Nf3 is a direct transposition to 5 Qg4.

## 8.11

6 a3 Bxc3

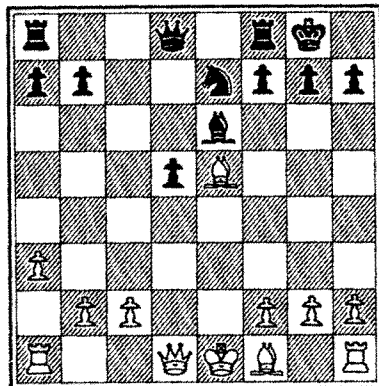
7 bxc3 is inconsistent, as the bishop has gone to d2 for no reason, e.g. 7 ... Nbc6 8 Qg4 0-0 9 Nf3 f6 ♣ Steiner-Eliskases, 1933, or here 8 Nf3 Qc7 9 Bd3 Bd7 10 0-0 c4 (or 10 ... f6) 11 Be2 f6 ♣; compare the main lines of Chapter 10.

7 ... Nbc6

Most direct, although 7 ... b6 is also well established: 8 b4 (8 Qg4 0-0! 9 Nf3 Ba6 =; 8 Nf3 Ba6 9 Bxa6 Nxa6 =, e.g. 10 0-0 Nb8! 11 b4 Nd7 12 Qe2 0-0 13 Bb2 Qc7 ♣ Sydor-Marsalek, Polish Ch 1972) 8 ... Qc7 9 Nf3!? (9 bxc5 bxc5 10 dxc5 Nd7 11 Nf3 Nxc5 12 Bb4 0-0, at least =, Wittkowski-Pietzsch, Warsaw 1959) 9 ... cxb4 10 Bxb4 Ba6 11 Bd3 Bxd3 12 Qxd3 (12 cxd3? Nbc6 13 Rc1 Qd7 14 Bd6 0-0 ♣ Pachman-Uhlmann, Dresden 1957) 12 ... Nbc6 13 Bd6 Qd7 14 a4 Na5 15 Nd2 Rc8 16 0-0 0-0, lightly ♣ (due to the pawn structure and ... Nc4) Sanguinetti-Fuchs, Munich 1958.

8 Nf3 cxd4  
9 Bxd4

9 Nxd4!? leads to the complex line 9 ... Nxe5 10 Nxe6 Bxe6 11 Bxe5 0-0



Black has a lead in development: 12 Bd3 (12 Be2 Nc6 13 Bg3 Qf6 14 c3 d4! Moles and Wicker) 12 ... Nc6 13 Bg3 Qf6 14 0-0!? (14 c3 d4 Moles and Wicker; but perhaps 14 ... a5(!) is better, e.g. 15 a4 d4 etc.) 14 ... Qxb2 15 Rb1 Qxa3 16 Rxb7 Rfe8!? 17 Qh5 (Better than 17 Re1? Re7! 18 Re3 Qa2 ♣ Tringov-Uhlmann, Skopje 1972) 17 ... h6 18 f4 Re7 19 Rb3 (? 19 Rxe7 Qxe7 20 f5 Bd7 21 f6 Qe3+ 22 Kh1 Qg5 23 Qf3 Be6 etc.) 19 ... Qc5+ 20 Bf2 Qd6 21 f5 Bd7 ♣ Obukhovsky-Hasin, USSR 1973.

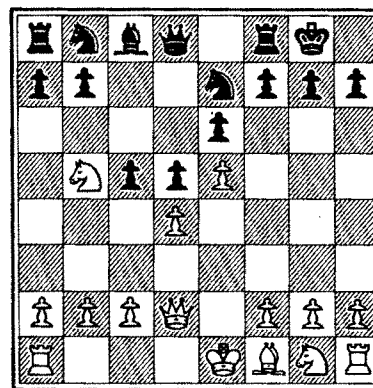
9 ... Nf5

Or 9 ... Nxd4 10 Qxd4 Nc6 11 Qg4 0-0 =.

But 9 ... Nf5 is more interesting: 10 c3 Bd7 (10 ... Ncxd4 11 cxd4 Qb6 12 Qd2 Bd7 intending ... Bb5 — Schwarz) 11 Be2 Rc8!? (11 ... Ncxd4 12 cxd4 Qb6 =, as in the last note; or 11 ... Nfxd4 12 cxd4 Qb6 13 b4 Ne7 14 0-0 0-0 15 Qd2 Bb5 =, intending ... Rfc8-c4, Estrin-Doroskevich, Polanica Zdroj 1971) 12 0-0 0-0 13 Qd2!? Nfxd4 14 cxd4 Na5! ♣ Savon-Hort, Skopje 1968.

## 8.12

6 Nb5 Bxd2+  
7 Qxd2 0-0



White's hope is to secure his centre and the advantages of space and better bishop. But his development has not been speedy and the centre can be subjected to considerable press-

ure from ... Nf5 and ... f6. Indeed, White has to be careful just to maintain a balance in the position. Here are the tries: 8.121 8 c3; 8.122 8 f4; 8.123 8 dxc5; 8.124 8 Nf3.

Not 8 Nd6? cxd4 9 Nf3 Nbc6 10 Nxc8 (10 Nxd4 f6! ♣ Schwarz, although 10 ... Nxe5 is clear enough) 10 ... Rxc8 11 Bd3 f6 (simplest) ♣.

## 8.121

8 c3 Nbc6

Or "8 ... a6! 9 Na3 Qb6 unclear" (Farago).

9 Nf3!

Otherwise the centre is collapsing, e.g. 9 Nd6? f6! or 9 f4!? cxd4 10 cxd4 (10 Nxd4 f6! ♣) 10 ... Nf5 (10 ... Qb6 11 Nf3 Bd7!? 12 Nc3 Nf5 13 Na4!?) 11 Nf3 f6! 12 Bd3 a6 13 Bxf5 axb5! 14 Bd3 Qa5 ("♣" ECO) 15 Qxa5 (15 Ke2 fxe5 16 Qxa5 — 16 fxe5 Nxd4!+ — 16 ... Rxa5 17 fxe5 Bd7 18 a3 Rfa8 ♣ Kuneth-Oppenreider, corres 1951) 15 ... Rxa5 16 Kd2 Bd7!? (16 ... fxe5) 17 a3 Rfa8 18 Rac1 b4 19 axb4 Ra4 20 b5 Nxd4 ♣ Lilienthal-Mikenas, USSR 1940.

9 ... a6

9 ... f6 is about as good after 10 exf6 Rxf6 11 Be2.

### 10 Na3!

Clearly better than 10 Nd6? cxd4 11 cxd4 f6 12 Nxc8 (or 12 Bd3 fxe5 13 Nxc8 Rxc8 14 dxe5 Qe8 15 0-0 Ng6 16 Rfe1 Rxf3! 17 gxf3 Nh4 18 Qf4 Qh5 ♯ Poletayev-Sokolsky, corres 1950-1) 12 ... Rxc8 13 exf6 Rxf6 14 Bd3?! Qd6 15 0-0 Rcf8 16 Rae1?! Rh6 17 h3 Rxf3 ♯ Wagner-Mainz, corres 1959.

10 ... cxd4  
11 cxd4 Nf5

Or 11 ... f6 =. After 11 ... Nf5, Stolz-Troianescu, Bucharest 1953 went 12 Nc2 Qb6 13 b3 Kh8! (13 ... f6(!) and 13 ... Bd7 are the ways to play for advantage) 14 g4?! (14 Be2 =) 14 ... Nfe7 15 Bd3 f6! and Black had the advantage.

The ineffectiveness of 8 c3 is demonstrated by the many pitfalls White must avoid, and by his failure to clearly equalize even with perfect play.

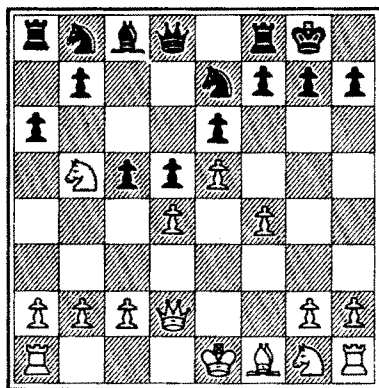
### 8.122

#### 8 f4?!

A move queried by most sources, and if playable, only barely so.

8 ... a6

Simplest, although 8 ... Qb6 and even 8 ... cxd4 are fully equal.



### 9 Nd6

Putting White in trouble, but the other move, 9 Nc3!?, looked anything but effective in Kupreichik-Farago, Polanica Zdroj 1981: 9 ... cxd4 10 Ne2 Nbc6 11 Nf3 Nf5! 12 0-0-0 Ne3 13 Re1 Nc4 14 Qd3 Qa5! 15 Kb1 Qb4! 16 b3 Na3+ 17 Ka1 Qa5 18 c3 dxc3 19 Ng5 g6 20 Qh3 h5 21 Rc1 d4? (21 ... Nb4! 22 Nxc3 Nb5 ♯ Kupreichik) 22 Ng3 f5?! 23 Nxb5 gxf5 24 Qxh5 Qc7 25 h4 with an incredibly complicated position which turned out about equal (although White won). Aside from the game continuation with 21 ... Nb4!, 11 ... f6 and 14 ... f6 both look strong.

9 ... cxd4  
10 Nf3 Nbc6  
11 Bd3

11 0-0-0 f6 12 Nxc8 Rxc8 13 exf6 Rxf6 ♯ Bogdanovic-Ivkov, Sarajevo 1963, since 14 Nxd4 Nxd4 15 Qxd4 Qc7 wins the critical f-pawn. 11 Nxd4 Nxd4 12 Qxd4 f6 is not much better.

11 ... f6  
12 0-0 Bd7

Or 12 ... fxe5 13 fxe5 Rxf3! 14 Rxf3 Nxe5 15 Rh3 Qxd6 ♯ Janosevic-Marovic, Vrsac 1977. After 12 ... Bd7, Gasanov-Bagirov, Azerbaidzhan 1960, went 13 Qf2 Be8 (or 13 ... Nc8 14 Qh4 h6 ♯ Schmid) 14 Nxe8 Qxe8 15 Nxd4 Nxd4 16 Qxd4 Nc6 17 Qb6 fxe5 18 fxe5 Qd7 19 Rfe1 Rf4 ♯.

### 8.123

#### 8 dxc5

In some ways the best idea: since White has not the resources to defend pawns on both d4 and e5, he concentrates on e5 and clears an active square on d4 for his knight. The drawback is further loss of time.

8 ... Nd7!

Leading to at least equality. 8 ... Nbc6! is interesting, although not convincing, with the gambit line 9 Nf3 b6! 10 cxb6 (10 Qc3 Rb8) 10 ... Qxb6 11 0-0-0! (11 Qc3 Rb8 12 b3 f6!?, or 12 ... Ba6 13 a4 Rfc8 14 Nd6 Rc7; 11 Bd3? Ng6! 12 Qe3 Ngxe5 13 Nxe5 Qxe3+ 14 fxe3 Nxe5 ♯ Brown-Watson, New York 1979) 11 ... Rb8 12 b3 Qc5 13 Nbd4 a5 14 Kb1 a4 15 Bd3 h6 ("unclear" ECO; perhaps ±) Spassky-Bronstein, USSR Ch 1957.

### 9 f4!?

9 Qc3 a6 (or perhaps 9 ... Nc6! 10 Nf3 f6 11 exf6 Qxf6! 12 Qxf6 Rxf6 13 a3 Nxc5 = Enevoldsen-Unzicker, Travemünde 1950) 10 Nd6 Qc7 11 Nf3 (11 b4? a5 or 11 ... b6 ♯ Moles and Wicker) 11 ... Qxc5 12 Qxc5 Nxc5 13 Bd3 Nc6 14 0-0 Rd8, at least =, Bogoljubov-Berger, 1927.

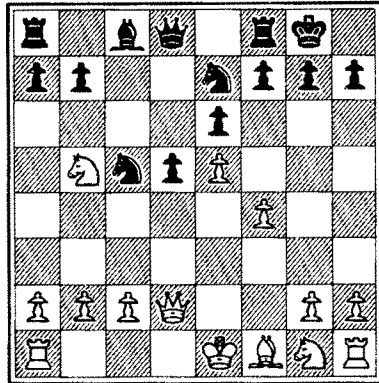
9 Nf3 (best?) is unmentioned anywhere, presumably because 9 ... Nxc5 equalizes so easily.

9 ... Nxc5

(see following diagram)

### 10 Bd3

An improvement over 10 Nd6? f6 11 Qe3? Qa5+! 12 Qd2



Nc6 ♯ Janosevic–Ivkov, Belgrade 1969. Ivkov suggests 10 Nf3, but as Moles and Wicker say, that is hard to believe after simply 10 ... Ne4, when the queen does not have many squares, and ... Qb6 and/or ... f6 are coming.

After 10 Bd3, Moles and Wicker suggest 10 ... f6 or 10 ... Qb6 11 0–0–0 Nc6 “with good play”. Combining plans may be best, i.e. 10 ... Qb6 11 0–0–0 f6!.

At any rate, 8 dxc5 seems to leave White struggling to hold his game together, and offers practically no chances for advantage.

### 8.124

#### 8 Nf3

Common sense development, although White cannot

8 ... a6(!)

8 ... cxd4 is less active, e.g. 9 Nbx4 (9 Bd3 Nbc6 10 N5xd4 f6! = or 9 0–0–0 Nbc6 10 Bd3 f6 =) 9 ... Nbc6 10 Bd3 Nxd4 (10 ... f6!?) 11 Nxd4 Qc7 12 Qe3 Nc6 = Stoltz–Ekstrom, Zaastreek 1946.

9 Nc3

9 Nd6 cxd4 10 Nxd4 Nbc6 11 f4 f6! (*ECO*).

9 ... cxd4!?

9 ... Nbc6(!) is attractive, with the idea 10 dxc5 Ng6 and White cannot hold his centre. So even 8 Nf3 does not assure White a draw, which would perhaps be the proper result from the text move.

10 Nxd4 Nbc6  
11 f4 Nxd4

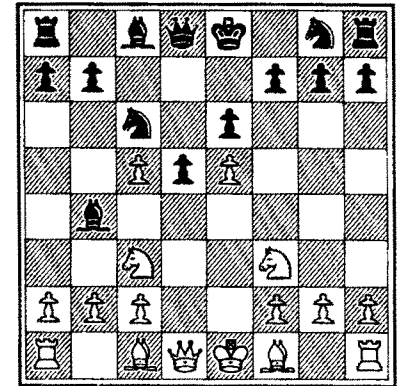
Omari–Golz, Leipzig 1960. Equal, to all appearances, e.g. 12 Qxd4 Nc6 13 Qd2 f6 14 exf6 Qxf6 15 g3 Bd7, and instead of 16 0–0–0?! Be8 17 Bd3 Nb4! ♯, 16 Bg2! Rac8 17 0–0 Qd4+! = is a possible order.

The more one looks at it, the less 5 Bd2 e5 6 Nb5 impresses, since White just does not seem to have time to shore up his centre.

## 8.2

5 dxc5

This can devolve into a two-fisted struggle between White's active pieces and Black's extra pawns. We shall show one risky and one safe response: 8.21 5 ... Nc6; 8.22 5 ... Ne7.



8 Nb5! and try 7 ... Bxc5, so that if 8 Nb5, 8 ... Qb8 9 Bf4 Bd7, or here 8 ... Qd8) 7 ... Nge7 8 Be2 (Again “book”. Here 8 a3!? Bxc3+ 9 bxc3 is unclear after either 9 ... Qa5 or 9 ... Ng6 10 Bg3 h5!? intending 11 h4 Ngxe5, or even 9 ... f6!?. On the other hand, 8 Bd3? d4 9 a3 seems wrong on two accounts: 9 ... Ba5 10 b4 Nxb4 etc. and 9 ... dxc3 10 axb4 cxb2 11 Rb1 Nd5 etc.) 8 ... f6 (! Theory gives 8 ... a6 9 0–0 Bxc5 10 Bd3 ± and 8 ... Ng6 9 Bg3 ±) 9 exf6 Qxf4 10 fxe7 Bxc5 with what looks like good play.

I do not see anything wrong with this line, which perhaps underscores the general harmlessness of 5 dxc5.

### 7 Bd3!?

A speculative gambit sequence, but 7 Bb5 0–0 and 7

## 8.21

5 ... Nc6

Black can get the position he is aiming for by 5 ... Ne7 first, but this order is more forcing, and offers an interesting 6th-move alternative.

6 Nf3

6 Qg4!? Ne7 transposes to 5 Qg4 below, and 6 Bf4(?) d4 7 a3 Ba5 8 b4 Nxb4 etc. is just bad for White.

(see following diagram)

6 ... Nge7

Very attractive here is 6 ... Qc7 (or 5 ... Qc7 6 Nf3 Nc6) 7 Bf4 (The book move, although 7 Bd2!? is interesting. Black should avoid 7 ... Nxe5?!

Bd2 Ng6 8 Nb5 Bxd2+ 9 Qxd2 0-0 are harmless at best.

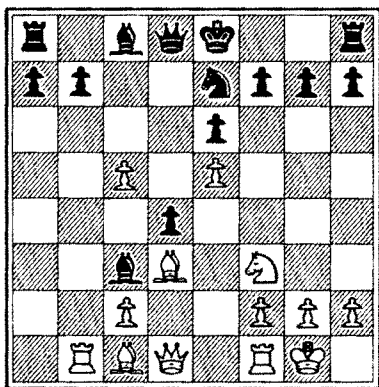
7 ... d4

Again, 7 ... Qc7!? should be considered, in view of 8 Bf4 d4!, 8 Bd2 Nxe5, or 8 0-0 Bxc3 9 bxc3 Nxe5, although in this line 10 Nxe5 Qxe5 11 Be3!? is interesting.

8 a3 Ba5  
9 b4 Nxb4  
10 axb4 Bxb4  
11 0-0

Forced, since 11 Bb5+ Bd7! 12 Qxd4 Bxc3+ 13 Qxc3 Bxb5 14 Nd4 Ba6 is good for Black (several commentators). Now White gets considerable pressure for his pawn, primarily because of threats to transfer a knight to d6 via d2 or g5 and e4.

11 ... Bxc3  
12 Rb1



The key position. Black has two attractive courses:

(a) 12 ... h6 13 Nd2! (13 Nh4 Qd5! 14 f4 Bd7 15 f5 exf5 16 Bxf5 Zinser-Ackerman, *corres* 1964, and now 16 ... Bxf5! 17 Nxf5 Nxf5 18 Rxf5 0-0-0 19 Qg4 Qe6 "leaves White struggling" — Moles and Wicker) 13 ... Bxd2 14 Bxd2 Bd7! 15 Qg4 (15 Rxb7 Bc6 16 Rb4 Qd5 and ... Qxe5 ♯) 15 ... Bc6 16 Rb4 Qd5 17 Rxd4 Qxe5 18 Re1 (Honfi-Farago, *Hungarian Ch* 1974) 18 ... Qf6 19 Bc3 Qg5 20 h4! (Rizzitano) 20 ... Qxg4 21 Rxg4 0-0-0! 22 Rxg7! Rhg8 =.

(b) 12 ... Qc7 is at least playable, too, e.g. 13 Bf4 h6, and if White plays the normal 14 Nd2, then 14 ... Bxd2 forces 15 Qxd2 (else the e-pawn hangs), which is undesirable (compare (a)). So 13 Qe2 h6 14 Nd2 Bxd2 15 Bxd2 is probably best, with 15 ... Bd7 unclear.

If none of this appeals, 6 ... Qc7!? should be examined.

## 8.22

5 ... Ne7

A very solid solution, intending ... Nd7, ... Nxc5 etc., with possible harassment of the e-pawn.

## 6 Nf3

6 Qg4 transposes to 8.3 5 Qg4 below.

6 ... Nd7

6 ... Nbc6 is 8.21 again.

7 Bd3!?

7 Bf4 Bxc3+ (7 ... Nxc5 8 Qd4!? Qa5 9 Bd2 Nf5 10 Qf4 is complex) 8 bxc3 Nxc5 =. 7 Qd4 Bxc5 8 Qg4 Ng6 or 8 ... 0-0 =.

7 ... Qc7

Or just 7 ... Nxc5 =. There is little evidence to go on here to decide, for example, whether the trade-off of ... Qc7 for Bf4 favours White or Black.

## 8 Bf4

A wilder continuation is 8 0-0 Bxc3 9 bxc3 Nxc5 and now 10 Be3 Nxd3 11 cxd3 0-0 (*ECO*), or 10 Ba3!? Bd7 11 Rb1!? (11 Nd4 a6 12 f4 Na4 unclear) 11 ... b6 12 Re1 Rc8! 13 Bf1 Stein-Bronstein, *Moscow* 1964; 13 ... 0-0 (=; Euwe). Or perhaps here 13 ... Na4!?, e.g. 14 Qc1! Nxc3! (15 Bd6 Qb7 16 Bd3!? Nxb1 17 Qg5 Bc6! 18 Ba6 h6! 19 Qxg7 Rg8 20 Qf6 Rg6! etc.).

8 ... Nxc5

9 0-0 Bxc3

And Black equalizes after 10 bxc3 by 10 ... Bd7 or the im-

mediate 10 ... Nxd3 11 cxd3 0-0 12 Rc1 Bd7 13 c4 Gheorghiu-Just, *Skopje* 1972, and here 13 ... dxc4 14 Rxc4 Qa5 is at least equal, intending ... Nd5 and an eventual queenside advance.

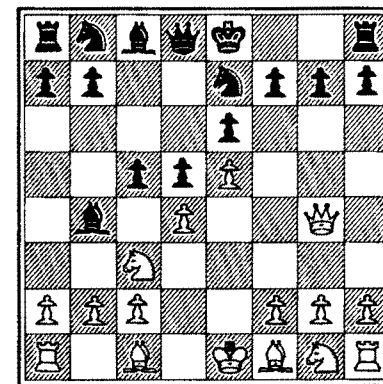
5 dxc5 has not been seen of late, probably in despair of improving much on lines such as those above.

## 8.3

5 Qg4

An aggressive, development-conscious sortie, more pointed (and more popular) than 5 Bd2 or 5 dxc5. Of course the move does neglect protection of d4, at least temporarily, and therein lies Black's counterplay.

5 ... Ne7



Now comes a fork in the road, although one line may lead to the other: 8.31 6 dxc5; 8.32 6 Nf3.

What else? 6 Bd2? cxd4 7 Qxd4 Nbc6 is bad and 6 Qxg7?! fails to 6 ... Rg8 7 Qh6 (7 Qxh7? cxd4 8 a3 Qa5! ♣♣, since 9 Rb1 dxc3 10 axb4 Qa2 wins) 7 ... cxd4 8 a3 Bxc3+ (Simplest, yet 8 ... Ba5 9 b4 Bc7 10 Nb5 a6! favours Black too) 9 bxc3 Qc7 10 Ne2 dxc3 11 f4 Bd7 12 Rb1 Nbc6 13 Ng3 0-0-0 14 Bd3 Nd4 15 Qh5 Qc5 ♣ Sigurjonsson-Uhlmann, Hastings 1975/6.

The most complicated variant is 6 a3(?) Qa5 (! 6 ... Bxc3+ would be the main line with 7 Qg4 — see Chapter 9), which is held to be practically winning for Black:

(a) 7 Ne2 cxd4 8 axb4 Qxa1 9 Nb5 0-0! 10 Nc7 Nbc6 11 Nxa8 Bd7 12 Kd1 d3! 13 cxd3 Qa4+ 14 Kd2 Nxb4 0-1 Engholm-Freyer, corres 1968.

(b) 7 axb4 Qxa1 8 Kd1 cxd4 9 Nb5 0-0! 10 Nf3 (10 Nc7 Bd7! 11 Nxa8 Na6 ♣ Korchnoi) 10 ... Nbc6 11 Bd3 Ng6 12 Re1 Nxb4 ♣ Jansa-Korchnoi, Luhacovice 1969.

(c) 7 Bd2 (best) 7 ... cxd4 8 axb4 Qxa1+ 9 Nd1 and 9 ... Nf5! (Moles) or 9 ... Nbc6 10 Nf3 Bd7 11 Qxg7 Rg8 12 Qxh7 a6 ♣ intending ... 0-0-0

(Uhlmann) gives Black the advantage.

### 8.31

#### 6 dxc5

Attacking b4 and beginning a fight for control of d4 with pieces.

#### 6 ... Nbc6

6 ... d4!? 7 a3 Qa5 8 Rb1! is not worth it in view of Black's options, e.g. if he wants something wilder than the text, he can try 6 ... Bxc3+ 7 bxc3 Qc7 (or 7 ... Nd7 8 Nf3 Qc7, transposing) 8 Nf3 (8 Qxg7 Rg8 9 Qxh7 Nd7 10 Ne2 Nxe5, at least equal, Duckstein-Uhlmann, Wageningen 1957) 8 ... Nd7 9 Qxg7 Rg8 10 Qxh7 Nxe5 and now:

(a) 11 Be3!? Ng4 12 Bb5+ Bd7 13 Bxd7+ Kxd7! ♣ Husak-Smith, corres 1962.

(b) 11 Nxe5 Qxe5+ 12 Kd1 Bd7!? (12 ... Rh8! 13 Qd3 Rxh2 ♣) 13 Qd3 Nf5 14 Rb1 Bc6 15 Rb4 0-0-0 16 Bf4 Qf6 17 Bd6 e5 18 Qh3! Rh8 19 Qg4 = Boskovic-Watson, New York 1977.

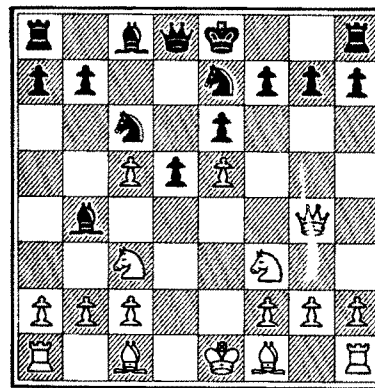
(c) 11 Nd4!? Qxc5 12 Bd2 Nc4!? (12 ... Bd7!) 13 f4 Bd7 14 Bxc4 dxc4 15 Qe4 0-0-0 16 g3 Rg4 17 Rb1 Nd5 unclear, Verber-Kus, Chicago 1982.

(d) 11 Qh5!? Nxf3+ (11 ... Ng4!? would be enterprising) 12 Qxf3 Bd7 and Black has lots of play, but this may be the critical line.

6 ... Bxc3+ throws into some question the efficacy of 6 dxc5, even should White improve upon the main line which follows.

#### 7 Bd2

7 Nf3!? was considered refuted a few years back, but there is more to say about it now:



7 ... d4 (7 ... 0-0 8 Bd3!? intending 8 ... Ng6? 9 Qh5! or 8 ... Nf5 9 Bd2 is uncomfortable) 8 Bb5 (8 a3? Qa5 ♣♣) 8 ... Qa5!? (8 ... Kf8!? — see the next paragraph) 9 Bxc6+ bxc6 (9 ... Nxc6? 10 Qxg7 Rf8 11 Bh6! Bxc5 12 0-0-0 dxc3 13 Rd6! ±± Sokolov-Starastin,

Gorky 1962) 10 Qxd4 (10 Qxg7?? Rg8 11 Qxh7 Ba6! 12 Ng5 Bxc3+ 13 Kd1 0-0-0 14 Nxf7 d3! 0-1 Aarseth-Rittner, corres 1966-71; in view of 15 Nd6+ Rxd6 and ... Qa4) 10 ... Nf5 11 Qc4! (11 Qe4?? Bxc3+ 12 bxc3 Qxc3+ 13 Kd1 Rb8! ♣♣ and 11 Qd2?? Ba6 12 Nd4 0-0-0 13 Nb3 Rxd2 14 Nxa5 Re2+ 15 Kd1 Rd8+ 0-1 were two correspondence games, which does not say much for the subtlety of chess by mail!) 11 ... Ba6 12 Qb3 Qb5 13 Kd1 (13 Bd2?? Bxc3 14 Qxb5 Bxd2+ was — you guessed it! — another correspondence game) 13 ... Qxc5 14 Bd2 Bc4 (=; this is very hard to improve upon, e.g. 14 ... Qxf2 15 Qxb4 Qxg2 16 Re1 Qxf3+ 17 Kc1 = or 14 ... 0-0-0 15 Ke1, at least =) 15 Qa4 (15 Ne4? Bxb3 16 Nxc5 Bxc5 17 axb3 Bxf2 ♣ Banas) 15 ... Bxc3 16 Bxc3 0-0 (16 ... Bd5!? is a thought) 17 Nd2 Rfd8 18 Kc1 Banas-Prandstetter, Czechoslovakian Ch 1978, and instead of 18 ... Bd5 19 Qf4 Bxg2 20 Rg1 Bd5 21 Nb3 Qc4 22 Qxc4 ½-½, 18 ... Bb5!? intending 19 Qf4 Nd4 20 Bxd4 Rxd4 (21 Qe3 Qd5) would be a way to try for more.

Also worth mentioning here is 8 ... Kf8!?, an attempt to win material without the problem of

Bh6 which ... 0-0 would incur. Then Banas gives 9 Bxc6 Nxc6 10 a3 Qa5 11 Rb1 "unclear", which may be forced unless White can justify 11 axb4 Qxa1 12 0-0!? dxc3 13 Bh6 Qxf1+ or (better, if still speculative) 12 Ne2 Nxb4 13 0-0. After 11 Rb1, play might go 11 ... dxc3 12 b3! (12 0-0? cxb2 or 12 axb4 Qa2 is a tempo worse than this) 12 ... Qa6!? 13 axb4 Qa2 14 0-0 Qxb1 15 Bh6 Qxf1+ 16 Kxf1 gxh6 17 Qh4 with an odd position which pretty much defies analysis (mine, anyway).

7 ... 0-0

In general, White's Bd2 encourages ... 0-0, since the aggressive moves Bg5 and Bh6 are only playable at loss of tempo. Fairly similar is 7 ... Ng6 8 Nf3 0-0 (or 8 ... Bxc5 9 Bd3 Bd7 10 0-0 Nb4 = Keller-Hug, Zurich 1975) 9 0-0-0 f5 10 exf6 Qxf6 11 Qg3 Bxc5 = Vasyukov-Kuzmin, USSR Ch 1974.

8 Nf3

(a) 8 0-0-0 is given "!" in some sources. This line could come from 5 Bd2 Ne7 6 dxc5 Nbc6 7 Qg4 0-0 8 0-0-0, too. Black can play 8 ... Bxc5!? 9 Nf3 Ng6 10 Qh5 f6 11 exf6 gxf6 with equal prospects, as in Iv-

kov-Uhlmann, Wageningen 1957, or perhaps 8 ... Qa5 (threatening 9 ... Nxe5) 9 a3 Bxc3 10 Bxc3 Qxc5 intending ... Nf5, although that is unclear. A third move is untested, but looks quite thematic: 8 ... f5(!), e.g. 9 exf6 Rxf6 and now the only worry looks to be 10 Bd3 e5 11 Qh4 (11 Qh5 h6!), but then 11 ... Nf5! 12 Bxf5 Bxf5 13 Bg5 Bxc3 14 Bxf6 gxf6 seems to at least give good counterplay after 15 bxc3 Qa5!.

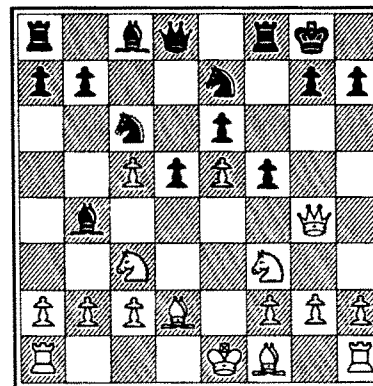
(b) 8 f4?! is too slow, as illustrated by Nash-Watson, Columbus 1977: 8 ... f5! (8 ... f6!? 9 0-0-0!? or 9 Nf3) 9 exf6 (else ... d4 and ... Qd5 etc.) 9 ... Rxf6 10 Qe2 Ng6 11 Nh3 e5! 12 fxe5 Ngxe5 13 Bg5 Bxh3 14 Bxf6 Qxf6 15 gxh3 d4 ♣♣.

(c) A similar idea to 8 0-0-0 is 8 Bd3, as in Block-Leroy, corres 1969, but after 8 ... f5 9 exf6 Rxf6 10 0-0-0, 10 ... e5(!) would transpose to (a), instead of 10 ... Qa5?! 11 Qh5 g6 12 Qh4 Rf7 13 Nf3 Qxc5 14 Rfe1 with excellent chances for White.

8 ... f5!

(see following diagram)

The key to Black's counterplay, both preparing ... d4 (without the response Ne4 being possible) and denying



White the attacking chances associated with Bd3. Again 8 ... f6?! 9 0-0-0! favours White (Bronstein-Schmid, Vienna 1957).

9 Qh4

(a) 9 exf6 would be more consistent, but then ... e5 comes too quickly, e.g. 9 ... Rxf6 10 0-0-0 (what else?) 10 ... e5 11 Qh5 Rf5! 12 Qh4 Bxc3! 13 bxc3 (13 Bxc3 Rf4! Uhlmann; then 14 Qg3 Rg4 15 Qh3 Ng6 16 g3 Rd4 is a possible follow-up) 13 ... Qa5 ♣ Pietzsch-Uhlmann, East German Ch 1963.

(b) 9 Qg3 d4 (or 9 ... Ng6 10 Bd3!? d4 11 Nb5 Bxd2+ ♣ Strenzwilk-Bradford, St. Paul 1982) 10 Nb1 (10 Nb5? Bxd2+ 11 Kxd2 — 11 Nxd2 f4 — 11 ... a6 12 Nd6 Qa5+ 13 Kd1 Qxc5 ♣ Jansa-Pietzsch, Bad Liebenstein 1963) 10 ... Bxc5

and Black has the better game with moves like ... Ng6 (threatening ... f4) and ... Qb6 in the air.

9 ... Ng6

The safest, although 9 ... d4(!) 10 Ne2 Bxd2+ 11 Nxd2 Qd5 12 Nb3 Ng6 is okay too. Then Estrin-Rittner, corres 1965-6, went 13 Qg3? f4! 14 Qf3 Qxe5 15 0-0-0 Qg5! ♣, but Schwarz's "13 Qh3 ±" does not convince, e.g. 13 ... a5 (! or 13 ... Ngxe5!? 14 0-0-0 Ng4) 14 0-0-0 a4 or here 14 a4 Ngxe5 ♣.

10 Qxd8

10 Qh3? Ngxe5 11 Nxe5 Nxe5 12 Qe3 Nc6 ♣ Popovych-Mednis, US Ch 1972.

10 ... Rxd8  
11 Na4! Bd7

"=", according to analysis by Mednis, who points out that instead of 11 Na4, 11 a3 Bxc3 (or 11 ... Bxc5) 12 Bxc3 d4 is ♣. After 11 ... Bd7, Black's centre pawns may actually grant him some edge, according to Moles and Wicker.

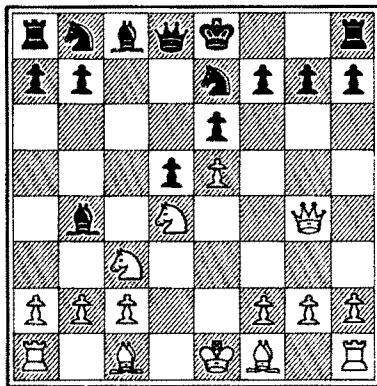
8.32

6 Nf3

Superficially, this move makes the most sense, since it supports d4 and e5 while improving White's development. Nevertheless, it allows Black strong and immediate counterplay in the centre and on the queenside.

6 ... Nbc6!?

Certainly the most attractive move on principle, but the alternative 6 ... cxd4(!) is much better than its reputation, and may even be a refutation of 6 Nf3. After 7 Nxd4, there are two ideas:



(a) 7 ... Qc7!? 8 Bb5+! Nd7! 9 0-0 Grigorov-Lukov, Bulgaria 1976, and now 9 ... 0-0(!) 10 Nxe6 fxe6 11 Qxb4 Nxe5 (Minev) looks fine, or here 11 Bxd7 Bxd7 12 Qxb4 Nc6 13 Qd6 Qxd6 14 exd6 Nd4 15 Bg5 Nxc2 16 Rac1 Nb4 with a fair share of the play.

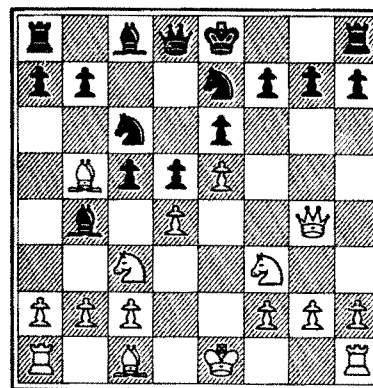
(b) But even more attractive is 7 ... Ng6(!) 8 Nf3!? (or 8 Bb5+ Bd7 9 0-0, but 9 ... Bxc3!? 10 bxc3 Qc7 11 Bd2 0-0 leaves White struggling, and a recent game Murey-Sigurjonsson, Brighton 1983, went 9 ... 0-0! 10 Bd3 — 10 Nxe6? Bxc3! — 10 ... Nxe5 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Qh5+ Kg8 13 Qxe5 Nc6 ♯; Black's bishops and centre dominate) 8 ... Nc6 9 Bd2 (9 Bb5 Qa5) 9 ... d4 10 Ne4 Bxd2+ 11 Nexd2 Qa5 ♯ Kuzmin-Dolmatov, Minsk 1982. White needs improvements badly here.

7 Bd2

(a) 7 Qxg7?! Rg8 8 Qh6 (forced; 8 Qxh7 cxd4 9 a3 Qa5! wins, since the bishop on c1 is unprotected) 8 ... cxd4 (“=” says ECO, enigmatically) 9 a3 Bxc3+!? (Or 9 ... Ba5(!) 10 b4 Bc7 ♯; but not 9 ... Qa5?! 10 axb4! Qxa1 11 Nb5 with threats) 10 bxc3 Qc7 11 cxd4!? (The best practical try? Otherwise White is a tempo down on the main lines of Chapter 9) 11 ... Nxd4 12 Nxd4 Qc3+ 13 Qd2 Qxa1 14 Bb5+ (14 f4 Bd7 15 Nb5 Bxb5 16 Bxb5+ Nc6 and White lacks compensation) 14 ... Bd7 15 0-0 J. Littlewood-Morley, British Ch 1977. “White should lose”, according to Moles and Wicker, but they

do not say how. Perhaps 15 ... Rc8(!) 16 Qb4 Qc3 17 Bxd7+ Kxd7 18 Qxb7+ Rc7 19 Qb5+ Nc6 is a fair sample continuation.

(b) 7 Bb5!? is a later, logical-looking addition to White's bank of ideas.



Now Grigorov-Marszalek, Pazardzik 1978, continued 7 ... cxd4!? 8 Nxd4 0-0 9 Nxc6 Bxc3+ 10 bxc3 bxc6 11 Bd3 (At first sight 11 Bg5!? looks strong, since 11 ... cxb5 12 Bf6 g6 13 Qg5 Re8 14 g4! wins; but 11 ... Qc7! seems to be a solution, based on the line 12 Bxe7 Qxe7 13 Bxc6 Qc5! 14 Bxa8 Qxc3+ and wins. 11 Bd3 is the typical Winawer trade-off, giving White two bishops and kingside space at the cost of horrible queenside pawns). Now, instead of 11 ... Qa5? 12 Bd2 f5 13 exf6 Rxf6 14 Qh5 Ng6 15 c4! (as played), Marszalek

gives 11 ... f5 (“=”) and 11 ... Qc7!?. Both look sufficient, e.g. 11 ... f5 12 exf6 Rxf6 13 Bg5 Rf7 14 Qh4 h6 intending ... e5, or 11 ... Qc7(!) 12 Bf4 Ng6 13 Bg3!? (13 Qh5 Ba6! or 13 0-0 f5) 13 ... Nxe5 14 Bxh7+ Kxh7 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Bxe5 Qe7 intending ... f6 and ... e5.

From the diagram, 7 ... 0-0!? also looks playable, e.g. 8 Bg5 (8 Bxc6 bxc6, so as to answer Bh6 with ... Nf5) 8 ... Qa5! 9 0-0 Bxc3 10 Bxc6 Nf5! and Black's queenside play comes to the rescue, e.g. 11 bxc3 bxc6 12 Bd2 Qa4 13 R(either)c1 f6 etc. A game Hebden-Plaskett, London 1982 tested 7 ... 0-0, but with 8 0-0!? cxd4 (8 ... Nxd4 is equal, but dull) 9 Ne2 Qc7 (9 ... f5 looks good, too) 10 a3 Ba5 11 b4 Bb6 12 Bf4 (12 Bd3 f5!) 12 ... Ng6 13 Qh5 Nxf4 14 Nxf4 f6 15 Bd3 (What else?) 15 ... g6 16 Bxg6, and now aside from 16 ... Nxe5, as played, does not 16 ... fxe5 17 Ng5 Rxf4 18 Bxh7+ Kf8 lead to a win?

Finally, 7 ... Bxc3+ 8 bxc3 Qa5 is a straightforward defence, after which Hebden-Vaganian, Hastings 1982/83 continued 9 Bxc6+ bxc6 10 Bd2 (10 0-0!?) 10 ... Qa4! 11 0-0 Nf5 12 Rfc1 0-0 =. At any rate, Black can both defend and cre-

ate counterchances against 7 Bb5.

(c) 7 a3 is probably the main alternative, when 7 ... Bxc3+ 8 bxc3 0-0 transposes to the 7 ... 0-0 defence to 7 Qg4. That is rather popular for Black of late, but I will note two alternatives, since they have hardly been looked at. 7 ... Qa5!? 8 Bd2! (ideas like 8 axb4!? Qxa1 9 Kd1 Nxd4(!) and 8 Ra2!? Bxc3+ 9 bxc3 cxd4 are not convincing) 8 ... cxd4 9 Nxd4 Nxd4 10 Qxd4 Nc6 11 Qg4 Bf8 12 Nb5 (12 0-0-0!?) 12 ... Qd8 13 0-0-0! Nxe5? 14 Qg3 f6 15 f4 Murey-Tiller, Randers 1982, and White has a strong attack after 15 ... Nc6 16 f5 e5 17 Qf3!, as in the game, or after 15 ... Nf7 16 c4!. 13 ... a6! would improve, however.

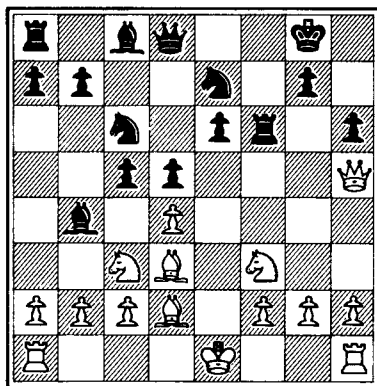
7 ... Bxc3+ 8 bxc3 Qc7!? is a unique move order which could transpose to the main line 7 Qg4 Qc7 of Chapter 9 after 9 Qxg7 Rg8 10 Qxh7 cxd4 11 Kd1!?, but White may be able to do better with 11 Bf4, e.g. 11 ... Bd7 12 Bd3 0-0-0 13 Bg3 (13 0-0 f5!) 13 ... dxc3 14 0-0 (±?) Rauzer-Rabinovitch, Leningrad 1936, although this is still interesting. Instead of 9 Qxg7, Diaz-Vilela, Cuban Ch 1982, went 9 Bd2 0-0 10 Bd3 f3 11 exf6 Rxf6 12 Qh5 g6!? with approximate equality; here

12 ... h6 intending ... Bd7-e8 with ... c4 is also logical. Of course those who do not want to go into 7 a3 Bxc3+ should also strongly consider the 6 ... cxd4 option.

7 ... 0-0  
8 Bd3 f5!  
9 exf6 Rxf6

Note the similarity to variations with 5 a3 Bxc3+ 6 bxc3 Ne7 7 Qg4 0-0. Here White has not expended a tempo on a3, but the move Bd2 is not particularly useful, since the bishop would rather go to g5 or h6 in one jump, and the d4 square has no pawn protection. For now, 10 ... e5 is threatened.

10 Qh5 h6!?



A move which has been passed over without comment, but why not 10 ... g6(!), intending to sacrifice on f3? For example:

11 Qh4 Rxf3! 12 gxf3 Nxd4 13 Qg3 c4 or here 13 Qf6 Bd7 (or 13 ... Qf8) 14 Bg5 (14 Bh5 Nef5) 14 ... Nec6 etc. Since 11 Qg5 Rxf3 does not appear to improve in any meaningful way, and 11 Qg4? or 11 Qh3? is met by 11 ... e5, 11 Qh6 is probably best. But then 11 ... Rxf3 has some good points anyway, e.g. 12 gxf3 c4 13 Be2 Nxd4 or even 13 ... Nf5 14 Qg5 Be7! etc. 11 ... Qf8 is less interesting, but gives a balanced endgame.

11 a3 Ba5

Clearer is 11 ... Bxc3 12 bxc3 (12 Bxc3 cxd4 13 Nxd4 e5) 12 ... c4 13 Be2 Nf5 intending ... Nd6, e.g. 14 Ne5 Nd6 15 Nxc6 bxc6 16 Bf3 e5! or 14 0-0 Nd6 15 Ne5 Ne4 with ... Rf5 and in some cases ... e5 to follow.

The text is Sax-Nunn, Budapest 1976, which continued 12 0-0-0 (12 dxc5? e5) 12 ... cxd4!? (12 ... Nxd4(!) or 12 ... c4 gives more winning chances) 13 Ne2 Bb6 14 h4!? (14 Bg5 hxg5 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8+ Ng8 17 Bh7 leads to a forced

draw, according to analysis by Byrne and Mednis) 14 ... Bd7 15 Bg5 Qe8! 16 Qg4? (16 Qxe8+ and 17 Bxf6 is best, when with best play the game is equal — Byrne and Mednis) 16 ... e5 17 Qg3 Re6 ♯.

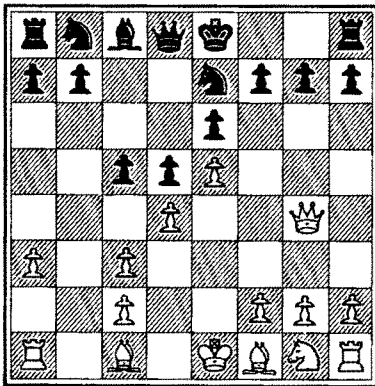
6 Nf3 gives Black particularly dangerous counterplay. Note especially the analysis of 6 ... cxd4(!), White's 7th-move options, and 10 ... g6 in the main line. White has a long ways to go to make this idea playable again.

Of the three options discussed in this chapter, 5 Qg4 gives rise to the most complex play, and in particular a type of play where Black must face a kingside attack. But due to the unstable situation of the centre, Black can defend the threats against his monarch by appropriately energetic play versus d4 and e5. Apparently the first player simply lacks the lead in development or the dominance in the centre which would justify his early flank excursion. This provides the rationale behind his main move, 5 a3, an analysis of which follows.

## 9

## Winawer: Main Line with 7 Qg4

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bb4 4 e5 c5  
5 a3 Bxc3+ 6 bxc3 Ne7 7 Qg4



This aggressive queen sortie introduces what may be the quintessential Winawer line. White tries to show that Black has abandoned his kingside by ceding the king's bishop, whereas the second player counts on his structural advantage and development to provide him counterchances. In the late forties and early fifties, 7

Qg4 was considered a complete answer to 5 ... Bxc3+ and 6 ... Ne7. As time went on, Black discovered resources which had the effect of making this (instead of e.g. 5 ... Ba5) the main line. In the early sixties, and once more in the mid-seventies, theory again seemed to favour the White pieces, but there always seemed to be another way for Black to arrange his forces to advantage. Today the essential validity of 5 ... Bxc3+ has been established, so that the positional lines of Chapter 10 (and of course 3 Nd2) are seen more often at the highest levels of the game. In subdued form, debate continues over the ultimate merits of White's attack. But for now, 7 Qg4 has become relatively rare on the international scene. I will be giving only one main system against it (the alternate Winawer System

is analysed in Chapter 11) with, however, numerous valid Black alternatives in the notes.

7 ... Qc7

One can hardly recommend 7 ... 0-0 when the text is so much fun! Why play the French if not to grab the opportunities to play its most interesting lines? By the way, 7 ... cxd4 8 Qxg7 Rg8 9 Qxh7 Qc7 leads to the same position, and here 8 cxd4 Qc7 9 Kd1 0-0 10 Bd3 f5 is equal. Just in case the next note does not appeal.

8 Qxg7

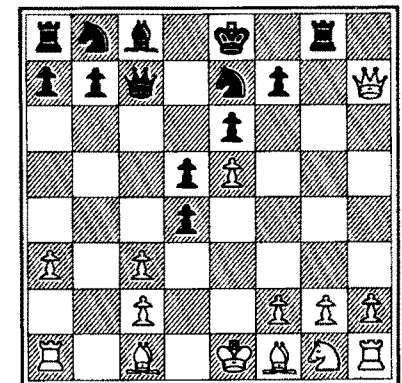
The only real option is 8 Bd3!?. Then play can go 8 ... cxd4 (8 ... c4 9 Be2 0-0 10 Nf3 Nbc6 is solid and equal, as in Sax-Farago, Romania 1982; 8 ... h5!? 9 Qxg7 Rg8 10 Qh6 cxd4 11 Ne2 was Velimirovic-Uhlmann, Bern 1973, and here Uhlmann gives 11 ... dxc3 as unclear) 9 Ne2 dxc3 10 Qxg7 Rg8 and now:

(a) 11 Qh6!?. has two answers: 11 ... Nbc6 12 Bxh7 Rh8 (or 12 ... Rf8!? 13 Qg7 Bd7 14 Bh6 0-0-0 unclear — Moles) 13 Qg7 (else 13 ... Nf5) 13 ... Qxe5 14 Qxe5 Nxe5 15 Bd3 Nxd3+ 16 cxd3 e5 17 Nxc3 Bf5 with good play (Moles). Or 11 ... Nd7 12 Bf4 Nxe5 13 Bxh7 Rxg2 14 Kf1 Rg4 15 h3 Rxf4 ♣

(Uhlmann), but here 14 Qf6 =/unclear (ECO) improves.

(b) 11 Qxh7 Nbc6 12 f4 (Keres. 12 Bf4?! Bd7 13 0-0 0-0-0 14 Qh5 d4 15 Bg3 Be8! 16 Qf3 Nxe5 17 Qf6 Bc6! 18 Rfe1 Rxg3! ♣ Unzicker-Uhlmann, Varna 1962) 12 ... Bd7 "about equal" (Moles), to which ECO adds 13 0-0 0-0-0 "unclear". An interesting position: if 14 Qxf7 (14 Nxc3 Nxe5!), 14 ... Rdf8 15 Qh5 (15 Qh7 Nxe5! 16 fxe5? Qc5+ etc.) 15 ... Rh8 16 Qg4?! (to avoid repetition) 16 ... Qb6+! and ... Nxe5 is strong. Otherwise play will resemble the main lines, White having his king's bishop developed, but Black having the white queen trapped offside on h7 to compensate.

8 ... Rg8  
9 Qxh7 cxd4



A crossroads, We look at: 9.1  
10 Kd1; 9.2 10 Ne2.

## 9.1

### 10 Kd1!?

Euwe's move, both avoiding the piece congestion Ne2 brings and planning Nf3 with perhaps Ng5 and Bd3 or h4-h5 to follow. The disadvantage is obvious: White's exposed king. But his king hardly ever reaches real safety in the 10 Ne2 lines either, and 10 Kd1 is highly rated by *ECO*. Another plus (from White's point of view) is that the line is less analysed than 10 Ne2. In my opinion Black has good play but the position demands great precision.

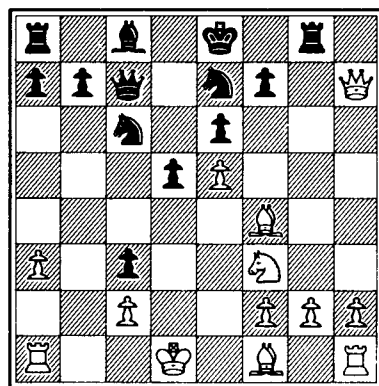
10 ... Nbc6  
11 Nf3

11 f4 Bd7 12 Nf3 causes few problems after 12 ... 0-0-0 (12 ... dxc3 13 Ng5 Rxc3 14 fxc3 0-0-0 is also playable, e.g. 15 Qxf7? Nf5 14 Bf4 Qb6 17 Bd3 Nxe5! ♣ with the idea 18 Bxe5 Qf2, Traxler-Olsommer, Swiss Ch 1962) 13 Qd3 (13 cxd4? Nf5!, e.g. 14 c3 Rh8 15 Qxf7 Rdf8 16 Qg6 Nce7 and 17 ... Qxc3 with ... Ba4+ to follow) 13 ... dxc3 14 Qxc3 d4!

15 Qc5 (15 Qc4 Nd5 16 Bd2 f6! 17 Kc1 Nb6 — or 17 ... Kb8!? — 18 Qb3 fxe5 19 fxe5 Nxe5 20 Nxd4 Nec4 with good play, Vasyukov-Krasnov, USSR 1960) 15 ... Nd5 16 Bd2 b6 17 Qc4 f6! 18 Kc1 Kb7! 19 g3 Rc8 20 Bd3 Qd8 ♣ and Black switched to the attack in Kosenkov-Novotelnov, USSR 1961.

11 ... dxc3  
12 Ng5!?

(a) 12 Bf4!?



In fact, *ECO* grants it "±!", quoting 12 ... Bd7 13 Ng5(!?) Rxc3 14 Bxc3 Qxe5 15 h4 ± from Scriba-Dahl, corres 1977 (also Sanz-van der Sterren, Marbella 1982). A game of note here is given by Moles: 13 ... 0-0-0! (instead of 13 ... Rxc3) 14 Nxf7 Qb6! 15 Nxd8 Qd4+ 16 Qd3 Qxf4 17 Nxc6

Nxc6 18 Qxc3 Qxf2 19 Qd2 Qc5 with interesting play for the material, Moe-Holm, Denmark 1970. The other logical try in this order is 13 Bg3, e.g. 13 ... 0-0-0 14 Bd3 Qb6 15 Ke2, roughly equal, Kuijpers-Padevsky, Moscow 1963, or here 15 h4!?

In Wiedenkiller-Watson, Oslo 1980, I came up with an improvement for Black, i.e. 12 ... Qb6(!). Now f2 is attacked, and Black has a tactical resource planned: 13 Ke1 Bd7 14 Ng5 Nxe5! 15 Bxe5 Rxc3 16 Bf6 (16 Bxc3 Qc7!) 16 ... Rg6!? (16 ... Rg8! ♣, e.g. 17 Bxe7 Kxe7 18 Qh4+ Kd6 19 Qf4+ e5! etc.) 17 Bxc3 Rc8 18 h4! (intending Rh3) 18 ... e5! 19 Qh8+ Ng8 20 h5 Rg5 21 Bxe5? (But 21 h6 Rxc3 22 h7 Kf8! 23 hxc3+ Rxc3 24 Qxe5 Rxc2 25 Be2 Bg4! ♣♣) 21 ... Rxc2 22 Be2 Bb5 23 Kd1 Rxe2 24 Re1 Qxf2 0-1.

The critical line here is probably 12 ... Qb6 13 Bg3!?, when 13 ... Qb2 (13 ... Bd7 is Kuijpers-Padevsky, but avoiding Ng5) 14 Rc1 Qxa3 (or 14 ... Bd7 15 Bd3 Qxa3 16 h4 Qc5, transposing) apparently holds up well, e.g. 15 h4 Bd7 16 Ng5 (16 Bd3 Qc5 17 Ng5 0-0-0!? — or 17 ... Rf8 — 18 Qxf7 Be8 19 Qxe6+ Bd7 is promising for Black; here 18 Nxf7? Rxc3!

intends ... Qf2 with too many threats) 16 ... Rf8 and Black has queenside play and pawns worth an exchange, e.g. 17 Be2 Nf5 18 Bh5 Nxc3! 19 fxc3 0-0-0 or 17 Bd3 Nb4 18 Be2 Qb2 19 Nxf7 Rxf7 20 Bh5 0-0-0 21 Qxf7 Na2 etc.

(b) 12 h4!?

was tried in Davies-Watson, Manchester 1978. After 12 ... Bd7 13 Ng5, 13 ... Nxe5!?

is perhaps playable, e.g. 14 Bf4 f6 15 Qh5+ N7g6 16 Bd3 f5! unclear, but this is certainly risky. The game went 13 ... Rf8 14 f4 Nf5 15 g4 (15 Bd3 Qb6!?) 15 ... Ng3 16 Rg1 Nxf1 17 Rxf1 and now 17 ... 0-0-0! was best, since 18 Nxf7 Rxf7 19 Qxf7 Nd4 leaves White in serious trouble against the threats of ... Qc4, ... Ba4, and ... Nxc2 or ... Qd3+.

(c) Other moves are less pointed, e.g. 12 Rb1!? Bd7 13 Bg5 0-0-0 14 Qd3 Minic-Ivkov, Yugoslavian Ch 1965, and now 14 ... d4 = or 14 ... Rxc3!?

15 Nxc3 Nxe5 (unclear — *ECO*) 16 Qd4 Kb8 17 Ba6 b6 18 Rb3 f6 19 Nf3 Nxf3 20 gxf3 e5 21 Qxc3 Bc6 22 Rg1 ½-½, as played. Or 12 Bg5 Bd7 (12 ... Qb6!?) 13 Bf6 Qb6!?, e.g. 14 Ng5 0-0-0 15 Nxf7 Nf5! intending ... Qxf2.

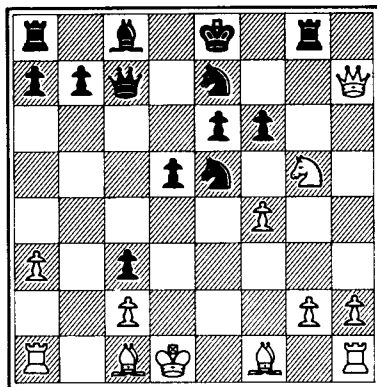
12 ... Nxe5

Korchnoi's idea 12 ... Qxe5!? 13 Qxf7+ Kd7 works well after 14 Nf3 Qh8! or 14 Bf4 Qd4+ or 14 f4 Qd4+ followed by ... Kc7!. But in Winston-Watson, New York 1977, White played simply 14 Nh7!, and after 14 ... Qd4+, 15 Ke1! (instead of 15 Bd3) would have been strong, e.g. 15 ... Ne5 16 Nf6+ Kd8 (16 ... Kd6 17 Bf4!) 17 Qh5 threatens the rook and 18 Be3 (17 ... Ng4 18 Nxcg8!).

### 13 f4

13 Bf4 is cleverly met by 13 ... Qb6! 14 Bxc5 (14 ... Qd4+ and 14 ... Qxf2 were threats) 14 ... Rxc5 15 h4 (15 f4 Qe3 16 Qd3 Rxe5; 15 Qh4 Rf5; 15 Bxc3 Qxf2; 15 Be2 Rxc2! 16 Bg3 Nf5 17 Bh5 Qd4+ 18 Ke1 Qe4+ 19 Be2 Bd7 ♯ Schutt-Balogh, corres 1971) 15 ... Rg8 (15 ... Qxf2!? 16 Bxc3 Rg4 17 Bb5+ Bd7 18 Rf1 Rxh4 19 Qg7 Qc5 20 Qxf7+ Kd8 21 Qf8+ Kc7 22 Ba5+ b6 23 Qxa8 Bxb5 Kotenko-Korelov, USSR corres Ch; 24 Qxa7+ =) 16 Bxc3 (16 Ke1 Bd7 17 Rh3 Rg4! 18 Rf3 0-0-0 ♯ Matulovic-Uhlmann, 1967) 16 ... e5! 17 Qd3 Qc7! (Moles). Black stands well, threatening 18 ... Bf5 19 Qb5+ Nc6 etc., whereas 18 Rb1 Bd7 19 Bb4?! (otherwise ... 0-0-0) 19 ... Bf5! is similar.

13 ... f6!



An idea of Uhlmann's which the author has used on several occasions. The "main line" 13 ... Rxc5!? 14 fxc5 N5g6 has never been solved, and certain variations such as 15 h4 e5 16 Be2!? and 15 Be2 e5 16 Rf1 Be6 17 h4 are untested.

### 14 fxe5!?

Two dangerous alternatives:  
(a) 14 Bb5+ Bd7 15 Nxe6 Qb6 (Uhlmann) 16 Bxd7+ Kxd7 17 fxe5 Griego-Watson, Boston 1981, and now the most ambitious course was 17 ... Kxe6!, e.g. 18 exf6 Nf5 19 Rf1 (19 Re1+ Kxf6) 19 ... Qd4+ 20 Ke1 Qxf6 with the superior attack; or 18 Qh3+ Nf5 19 Rf1 Qd4+ 20 Ke1 Qxe5+ 21 Kd1 Qd4+ 22 Ke1 Rae8!.

(b) 14 Qh5+ N5g6!? (Perhaps better 14 ... Kd8, when 15

Nf7+!? Nxf7 16 Qxf7 is unclear, but 16 ... Qc5!? 17 Qxf6 Bd7 planning ... Qf2 is promising; 15 fxe5 fxc5 16 Qh5+ is the main line text) 15 Nh7 (15 Bb5+!? Bd7 16 Nxe6 Qb6 17 Bxd7+ Kxd7 18 f5 Nxf5! with a pawn and development in the ending) 15 ... Kf7 (15 ... Rh8 16 f5 exf5 17 Bd3 unclear) 16 g4!? (16 Bd3) 16 ... Qc5 17 g5 (17 Bd3 Qd4) 17 ... Qd4+ 18 Bd3 e5 19 gxf6 e4 20 fxe7 exd3 etc. Of course 14 ... Kd8 is more solid.

14 ... fxc5  
15 Qh5+ Kd8  
16 Bxc5 Qc5!

As suggested by Moles. Black intends ... Bd7 and ... Kc7, to untangle. In the meantime, White's king and dark squares are exposed.

### 17 h4!

17 Qh4?! Rxc5! 18 Qxc5 Kc7 19 Bd3 Bd7 20 g4 Rf8 21 Re1 Rf3! ♯ was Popovych-Watson, New York 1980, which finished quickly after 22 Kc1? (But 22 a4 Qd4!, e.g. 23 Qxe7 Rxd3+ 24 Kc1 Rd1+! 25 Rxd1 Qe3+ 26 Kb1 Qb6+ etc.) 22 ... Rxd3 23 cxd3 Qf2 ♯♯.

The text is best, preparing Rh3; yet Black has further resources.

17 ... Bd7  
18 Rh3 Kc7!

Better than 18 ... d4 19 Qf7, as given by Moles. Black makes the usual pawn sacrifice for structural superiority.

19 Bxe7 Qxe7  
20 Rxc3+ Bc6

Now Black intends to invade on the kingside with moves such as ... Rh8, ... Raf8, and ... d4. Popovych-Watson, New York 1981, continued 21 Rf3! Raf8! 22 Rb1 d4 23 Rxf8, and although Black won with 23 ... Rxf8, best was 23 ... Qxf8! ♯, with ... Qf4 and ... Bxc2 in the air.

The system with 13 ... f6 appears to give Black a complete answer to 10 Kd1.

## 9.2

### 10 Ne2

This introduces one of the most controversial and exciting of Winawer lines, in which White gains a powerful passed h-pawn, keeps the two bishops, and can win a pawn or two in some variations. In return, Black gets superior development, good play along the c-, g- and h-files, and ongoing chances against White's king.

10 ... Nbc6  
11 f4

Poor are 11 cxd4? Nxd4! and Bd2?! dxc3 12 Bxc3 Nxe5. 11 Bf4!? has not been refuted, but 11 ... Bd7 (11 ... dxc3!? threatening ... Nxe5) 12 Rb1 dxc3 13 h4 0-0-0 of Bakali-Uhlmann, Lugano 1968, gave Black a good game: 14 Qd3 Ng6 15 Bg5 Ngxe5 16 Qxc3 Rdf8 17 Nd4 Nxd4 18 Qxd4 Nc6 19 Qc5, and here 19 ... b6 preparing ... f6 should favour Black.

11 ... Bd7  
12 Qd3

The alternatives tend to transpose, as White needs his queen back for defence, and in order not to get her trapped after ... 0-0-0 and ... Nf5. Some independent orders:

(a) 12 cxd4? Nxd4.

(b) 12 h3 dxc3 13 g4 0-0-0 14 Qd3 was the order of Byrne-Uhlmann, Monte Carlo 1968, which is analysed under 13 h3 below (9.25).

(c) 12 h4 will also transpose after 12 ... dxc3 13 h5 0-0-0 14 Qd3 or 12 ... 0-0-0 13 Qd3 (else ... Nf5) 13 ... dxc3, both to 9.26 below.

(d) 12 g3 is pretty slow: 12 ... dxc3 (or 12 ... 0-0-0 13 Qd3 dxc3 14 Nxc3 Hartmann-Golz, Leipzig 1960, and al-

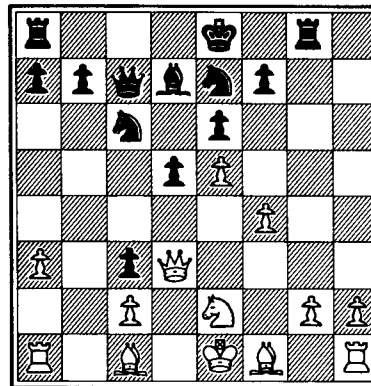
though 14 ... a6 15 Rb1 Na5 was equal, the immediate 14 ... Na5(!) intending ... Nc4, ... Nf5, and ... Qc5 looks best) 13 Be3 (13 Qd3 0-0-0 is the last note, and here 13 ... d4!? is also possible, e.g. 14 Nxd4 Nxd4 15 Qxd4 Qc6 16 Rg1 Nf5 17 Qd3 0-0-0 or here 17 Qf2 Qe4+) 13 ... 0-0-0 14 Qxf7 Nf5 ("=/unclear" ECO) 15 Bf2 Rh8! 16 g4 (The queen is threatened by ... Rdf8, ... Rfg8, and ... Nd8/... Rh6) 16 ... Raf8 17 Qg6 Nce7 18 Qg5 Rfg8 19 Qf6 Rh6 20 Qf7 Be8! 21 Qxg8 (21 Qxe6+ Bd7 22 Qf7 Be6 ♣♣) 21 ... Nxc8 22 gxf5 Qh7! ♣♣ Meystre-Walter, corres 1962.

(e) 12 Rb1 transposes after 12 ... 0-0-0 13 Qd3 (13 cxd4 Nxd4! ♣) 13 ... dxc3 to 12 Qd3 dxc3 13 Rb1 0-0-0; and after 12 ... dxc3 13 Be3!? 0-0-0 14 Qd3 Nf5 or 14 ... d4 to the 13 Be3 line of the next note. Finally, 12 ... dxc3 13 Qd3 is 12 Qd3 dxc3 13 Rb1 below.

12 ... dxc3

(see following diagram)

The position from which the action really begins. The main moves, all important, are: 9.21 13 Rb1; 9.22 13 Nxc3; 9.23 13 Ng3; 9.24 13 Qxc3; 9.25 13 h3; 9.26 13 h4.



Others:

(a) 13 Ra2? 0-0-0! “♣” (Moles); compare other lines, over which Black is effectively a tempo up.

(b) 13 Be3 has never done very well. Aside from 13 ... d4!? 14 Bf2 0-0-0 15 Nxd4 Nxd4 16 Qxd4 b6 17 Bh4 Bb5 (equal) of Spassky-Korchnoi, Belgrade 1977/78, the normal 13 ... Nf5! is quite good: 14 Bf2 (14 Bd4 0-0-0 15 Bxc3 d4! 16 Bd2 f6! 17 exf6 e5! 18 0-0-0 Rge8 19 g4 e4 ♣ Fichtl-Golz, Dresden 1959; 14 Nd4 can be answered by 14 ... Nfxd4 15 Bxd4 0-0-0 16 0-0-0! Nxd4 17 Qxd4 Qa5 18 Qb4, about equal. Still better looks 14 ... Nxe3! 15 Qxe3 Qb6 16 Rd1 Nxd4 and 17 Rxd4 Qb1+ 18 Kf2 a5! with the idea ... b5-b4, or 17 Qxd4 Qb2 planning 18 Qb4 Qxc2 19 Qxb7 Qe4+ 20 Be2 Rxc2! —

Moles) 14 ... 0-0-0 (or 14 ... d4!? 15 Ng3 0-0-0 and 16 Nxf5 exf5 17 Bh4 Rde8 18 Kf2 Rg4 19 g3 Rxe5! 20 fxe5 Nxe5 with a winning attack Cobo-Ivkov, Havana 1963; or here 16 Ne4 Nxe5! 17 fxe5 Qxe5 with a strong attack — Zeuthen) 15 Rb1 (15 Ng3 d4!? would be the last note) 15 ... d4 16 Ng3 f6! 17 Nxf5 exf5 18 exf6 Qxf4 ♣ Fuchs-Uhlmann, Dresden 1956.

The themes of the play from the diagrammed position are best explained by example.

## 9.21

### 13 Rb1

A popular move which fulfills several aims. Now ... Qb6 is no longer possible and if Black answers Nxc3 with ... a6 (to prevent Nb5) and ... 0-0-0, the pseudo-sacrifice Qxa6 may work.

13 ... 0-0-0

13 ... d4 is also good, intending 14 Nxd4 Nxd4 15 Qxd4 Nf5 with compensation. If then 14 Ng3 0-0-0 15 Ne4?, 15 ... Nxe5! 16 fxe5 Qxe5 is too good, and here 15 Be2 Nf5 equalizes. But the immediate 13 ... Nf5!?, widely recommended, seems well met by 14 h3(!).

## 14 Nxc3

Threatening Nb5. Here 14 Qxc3!? won a big point in Mecking-Uhlmann, Manila 1976, after 14 ... Nf5 15 Rg1 f6!? 16 g4 (16 exf6 d4 17 Qd3 e5! unclear — Minic) 16 ... Nh6 17 exf6 Rxc4 18 Be3 Rxc1 19 Bxc1 Nf5 20 Rd1! Rf8 21 Rd3, and now 21 ... Nd6 was interesting (Minic). Another perhaps better approach would be 14 ... d4(!), e.g. 15 Nxd4 Nd5 16 Qc4 Nxd4 17 Qxd4 Qxc2 with excellent play, or 15 Qd3 Nd5 intending ... f6. I do not think 14 Qxc3 poses too many problems — compare 13 Qxc3 below — but it could be an incentive to play 13 ... d4.

## 14 ... Na5!

Guarding b5 and threatening ... Nc4.

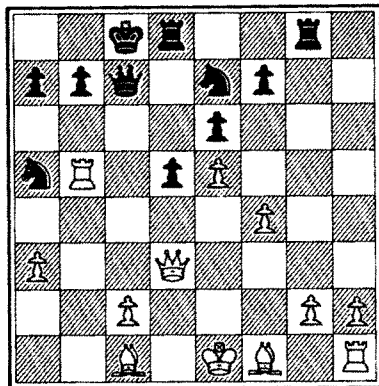
## 15 Nb5

15 Be3 Kb8 16 Nb5 is no improvement after 16 ... Bxb5 17 Qxb5 Nf5 18 Bd2 Nc4 with good play (Moles).

## 15 ... Bxb5

## 16 Rxb5

16 Qxb5 Nc4 (or 16 ... Kb8) 17 Bxc4 dxc4 18 Bd2? (18 0-0 Rd5! 19 Qb4 Nf5 ♣) 18 ... Rd5 19 Qb4 Rxc2 ♣ Bachschmidt-Gragger, corres 1968.



## 16 ... Kb8

“!” (Pytel), although it is pretty much a matter of taste. 16 ... Nf5 is natural and also sufficient: 17 g3 Rh8!? (or 17 ... Nc4 18 Be2 Qc6 19 Rb3 Qc5 = Sherbakov-Krasnov, USSR 1959) 18 Bg2 a6 19 Rb4 Qc5 20 Bd2? (20 h3 Rdg8 21 g4 Nh4 Botterill) 20 ... Rxh2! 21 Rxh2 Qg1+ ♣ Casse-Botterill, England 1978.

## 17 g3

Best, according to Moles. 17 Bd2?! Nc4 18 Bc3? Nf5 was Dorowa-Pietzsch, East German Ch 1958, which continued 19 Rb3 Nce3 20 g3 Rc8 21 Bh3 Nxc2+! ♣ (22 Qxc2 Nd4).

## 17 ... Rc8

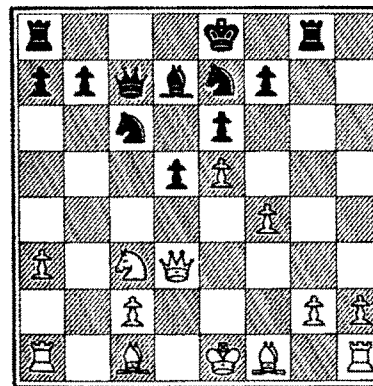
## 18 Bd2?!

The same plan, a mistaken one because White gives up e3.

18 Kd1 should be tried, although Black is better. After 18 Bd2, Schubert-Milovukovic, corres 1981, continued 18 ... Nc4 19 Bb4 Qd7! 20 Rc5 Nf5 “♣” (*Informant*). Black has more than enough for a pawn with his beautifully-posted knights and better pawn structure (... N4e3 and ... Qa4, or ... d4 and ... Qd5 can follow, as well as just ... a5).

## 9.22

## 13 Nxc3



Directly capturing the pawn with a threat of Nb5. As in the last section, however, this gives Black good play down the c-file as well as better development. The difference here is that White will often send his h-pawn running.

## 13 ... a6

Stopping Nb5 and in some cases providing support for a later ... Bb5 or ... Nb5. A fascinating option, too risky to recommend as a first choice, is 13 ... Nf5!? intending 14 Nb5(?) Qd8 (with the idea ... Oh4+), or 14 Rb1 Ncd4, or 14 g4!? Rxc4 15 Bh3 Nxe5 16 fxe5 Qxe5+ 17 Kf2, which is very complex (17 ... Rc4!?).

## 14 Rb1

The most serious try, again stopping 14 ... 0-0-0 due to 15 Qxa6!. 14 Be3 loses time, as usual, after 14 ... Nf5, e.g. 15 Bf2 Rc8 16 Kd1!? Na5 ♣ Hamblin-Tate, Manchester 1970. And 14 g3 is most simply met by 14 ... Rc8 15 Ne2 Nf5 16 Bh3 (16 Bg2 Na5 Moles) 16 ... Nce7! ♣, with threats of ... Bb5 and ... Qxc2, Bagin-Konstantinov, Saratov 1948.

14 Bd2 is the main option, yet it is rather slow after 14 ... Rc8 and now:

(a) 15 h3 Na5! 16 g4 Nc4 17 Ne2 Nxd2 18 Kxd2 Qa5+ 19 Kd1 Rc4 ♣ or here 16 Qh7 Qc5 17 g4 Qa7! threatening ... Rxc3 Monti-Janata, 1963.

(b) 15 g3 Na5 16 Nd1 Nc4 17 Bc3 Bb5 18 a4 (18 Qf3 d4!) 18 ... Nb2 ♣♣ Kupper-Schmid, Zurich 1954.

(c) 15 Ne2 Nf5 16 g4? Nxe5!! 17 fxe5 Qxe5 18 Bc3 Rxc3! 19 Qxc3 d4 20 Qd3 Ne3 Balashov–Sitzky, USSR corres ch 1950. Black threatens ... Qa5+ and ... Bb5 or ... Bc6–e4. Balashov tried 21 Kd2, but 21 ... Rxc4 22 a4 (versus ... Bb5) 22 ... Qg5! 23 Kc1 Nc4+ 24 Kb1 Bb5! 25 Qh7 Qc5 was crushing. A pretty game.

(d) 15 h4 is given by ECO, with 15 ... Nf5 16 h5 Ncd4 17 Rc1 f6! 18 exf6 Kf7 19 h5 Qd8 20 Be3 Qxf6 = Zhuravlev–Doroskevich, USSR 1976. Zhuravlev mentions 15 ... Nxe5!?, but best of all seems just 15 ... Na5(!) intending ... Nc4 (at least equal).

14 ... Na5

Considered most accurate by current theory, although a careful 14 ... Rc8 may be okay, too: 15 h4 Nf5 16 h5 N3d4 17 h6 Nb5 18 Nd1 Nbd4 19 c3 Bb5 20 Rxb5 Nxb5 21 a4 Nbd4! Oechslein–Walter, corres 1968–71, leading to apparent equality (Moles).

15 h4

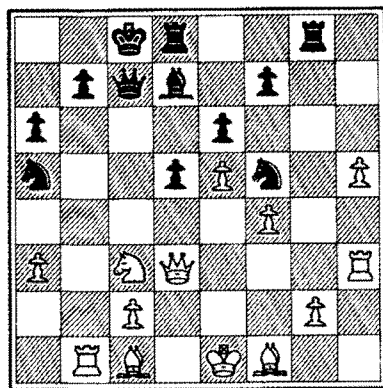
15 h3 could be met by 15 ... Rc8. In Domier–King, Calgary 1977, play went 15 ... Nc4!? 16 g4 0–0–0 17 Bg2 Qc5 (or 17 ... Bc6) 18 Rb3 Bc6 (18 ... Ng6 may be more accu-

ate, as now White reorganizes) 19 Bf3 Ng6 20 Ne2 Qa5+ 21 Bd2 Qc7 22 h4? Ngxe5! and Black went on to win by taking on f3 and pushing his centre pawns.

15 ... Nf5  
16 Rh3 0–0–0

Uhlmann's idea, to use Black's rooks on the kingside if necessary while continuing to advance with his minor pieces.

17 h5



17 ... Nc4

A terrific position for analysis. 17 ... Rg4 is doing well, too, with the idea 18 h6? Rh8 19 h7 Rg7 ♣, as in Dueball–Uhlmann, Raach 1969. Moles 18 Qf3! gives the most problems, e.g. 18 ... Rdg8 19 h6 R5g6 20 h7 Rh8 21 g4 Nd4!? 22 Qf2! (22 Qd3 Nb5; 22 Qd1 Qc5

and ... Nb5) 22 ... Ndc6 23 Na4! Rxc4 24 Be3 Rg7 25 Nb6+!? Kb8 26 Nxd7+ Qxd7 27 Bxa6 Rgxh7 28 Rxh7 Rxh7 29 Qg1! "with initiative for White" (Kastner). The final position is not clear at all, however. Black could play 29 ... Qd8!, thinking about counter-attack via ... Qh8. It is hard for White to use his bishops, since his back rank needs defence. On the other hand, 25 Bb6 may improve for White.

Perhaps it is all academic, as 21 ... Ne7(!) (instead of 21 ... Nd4!?) succeeded in Baluev–Nikolic, corres 1974/5: 22 a4 Nc4 23 Bd3 Rg7 24 Qe2 Ng6 25 Bxc4 Rgxh7! 26 Rxh7 Rxh7 27 Nxd5 Rh1+ 28 Kd2 exd5 29 Bd3 d4! ♢♢.

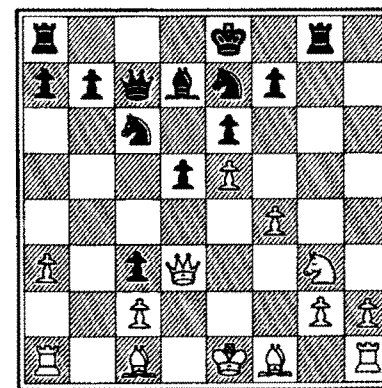
After 17 ... Nc4, Hort–Uhlmann, Hastings 1970–1 continued 18 Rb4!? (18 Ne2 Qc5; for 18 h6, see the next paragraph) 18 ... Bc6 (18 ... b5 should be considered, intending ... Qc5, ... Bc6 and ... a5. It takes a long time for White to get anywhere on the kingside, if he can at all) 19 Ne2 Bb5 20 a4, and now instead of 20 ... Nxe5!? 21 Qc3 Bxe2 22 fxe5 with a slight endgame advantage to White, Moles suggests 20 ... Bc6! threatening ... a5 and ... Bxa4. He gives 21 Nc3 Qa5! and 21 Nd4 Nxd4 22 Qxd4

a5 23 Rb1 Bxa4 24 Qa7 b5!.

More critical is 18 h6, e.g. 18 ... Rg6 19 h7 Rh8 20 Qf3 Nce3?! 21 Bxe3 Qxc3+ 22 Bd2 Qxf3 23 Rxf3 Rxh7 24 Rc3+ Bc6 25 Kf2 with White advantage (25 ... d4 26 Rxc6+!) Kastner–Maxwell, New York 1970. But here 20 ... Rgg7! improves, with the idea 21 g4 Nfe7! and White cannot defend both the g- and h-pawns (23 Bd3 Nxe5). Thus the whole line with 13 Nxc3 affords Black long-term positional pressure with excellent tactical chances.

## 9.23

13 Ng3



With this move White delays recapture on c3 in favour of development by Be2 and 0–0.

He intends to keep open options like Ne4 (after ... d4) or Nh5. Of course White's grip on d4 is weakened and, as will be seen, ... Nf5 may even gain in strength, since Nxf5 ... gxf5 strengthens Black's grip on the centre and kingside.

**13 ... 0-0-0**

Fuchs-Uhlmann, Zinnowitz 1967 went 13 ... Qb6!? 14 Qxc3 Nd4! 15 Bb2 ½-½. Moles continues 15 ... Nef5! 16 Nxf5 Nxf5 with compensation.

**14 Be2**

14 Nh5 d4 15 Nf6 Rg6 threatens ... Nxe5, or Black can try 15 ... Nxe5!? 16 Qe4 N5c6 17 Nxc8 Rxc8 Larsson-Thiele, corres 1968, and now 18 Bd3 e5 is "promising" (Moles), whereas White's 18 Rb1? e5 19 Bc4 Bf5 20 Qe2 e4 was ♯.

**14 ... Nf5**

Here 14 ... Kb8 intending ... Qb6 is an option, but the text is thematic.

**15 Nxf5 exf5**

**16 0-0**

(a) 16 Qxd5? Be6 17 Qf3 Bd5 ♯.

(b) 16 Bf3 Qb6!? 17 Qxc3 Kb8 18 Qb3 Qxb3 19 cxb3 Nd4 20 Kf2 Nxb3 21 Rb1 Ba4 = Ree-Darga, Amsterdam 1969.

Here 16 ... d4 17 0-0 (or 17 Rb1 f6! 18 exf6 Rae8+ with advantage — Moles) transposes to the text line.

(c) 16 Qxc3 Qb6!? is the last note, or 16 ... Rxc2 17 Bf3 d4 18 Qc5 Rg6 unclear.

**16 ... d4**

**17 Bf3**

17 Rb1 may transpose after 17 ... Be6 18 Bf3, and here 18 a4 Na5 19 Rb4 Nc6 20 Rb5!? a6 21 Rc5? Kb8 22 Ba3 Qb6! ♯ was Pavlov-Gunsberger, Romania 1958. A simple answer to 17 Rb1 is 17 ... f6, e.g. 18 exf6 Rdf8 19 Bf3 Rxf6 20 Re1 Re6 = Ivkov-Sofrevsky, Yugoslavian Ch 1962.

**17 ... Be6**

Several games have shown that 17 ... Rg6! (intending ... f6) is good, perhaps even better than the text. After 18 Re1:

(a) 18 ... Be6 19 Rb1 a6 20 a4 f6 21 exf6 Rxf6 is fine. In fact, Black won after 22 Ba3 (22 Rxe6? Rxe6 23 Qxf5 Qd7 24 Bg4 Rae8 25 Qg5 d3! won quickly in Jordan-Anton, corres 1973) 22 ... Bd5 23 Bxd5 Rxd5 24 Re8+ Rd8 25 Rxd8+ Qxd8 26 Re1 Qd5! 27 Re8+ Kc7 and ... b5(♯) in Gulich-Lehmann, corres 1973.

(b) 18 ... Qb6! 19 a4?! (19

h3? also took a fall in Stojanovski-Despotovic, corres 1974 5: 19 ... Ne7! 20 Kh1 Bb5 21 Qd1 Bc6 22 a4 Rdg8 23 Ba3 Rxc2! etc.) 19 ... Nb4 20 Qc4+ Bc6 21 a5 (21 Bxc6 Qxc6 ♯) 21 ... Qb5! 22 Qxb5 Bxb5 23 Bd1 Bc6! 24 g3 Be4 ♯ Rossini-Despotovic, Italy 1975.

After 17 ... Be6, the main line goes 18 Rb1 and Black could take ECO's draw by 18 ... Ba2 19 Ra1 Be6 20 Rb1 Ba2 etc.; but he also has 18 ... Na5 or 18 ... Qa5!?, e.g. 19 Rb5 Qa6 20 Rf2 Kc7 21 Rb1 Qa4 22 Qb5 Qxb5 23 Rxb5 a6 24 Rb1 b5 ♯ Burnevsky-Zagorovsky, USSR 1969.

## 9.24

**13 Qxc3**

Traditionally this capture has been frowned upon, since it exposes the queen to attack down the c-file and fails to get the king's knight out of the way for development (which 13 Nxc3 does with tempo). But 13 Qxc3 does keep some control over d4, and may hold a rough equality.

**13 ... Nf5**

13 ... 0-0-0 makes a good, less committal alternative, but

after 14 Ng3 of Matulovic-Liebert, 1963, 14 ... Nf5! as in 9.23 is better than 14 ... f6.

**14 Rb1**

14 Ng3 Nxc3 15 hxc3 Rc8 16 Bd3!? Qb6 ♯ Simunek-Zlebchik, corres 1969, and 14 h4 Rc8 (or 14 ... 0-0-0 =) 15 Ra2 Ncd4 16 Qxc7+ Rxc7 17 Kf2 Ba4 = Zagorovsky-Rittner, corres 1968, are not impressive for White.

14 Bd2!? has been played a few times. 14 ... 0-0-0 is the solid and obviously sound answer (perhaps intending ... d4, ... f6, and ... e5 etc.); but 14 ... Qb6!? will also grant Black chances (and ultimately equality): 15 g3! (15 Qb3 Ncd4! Pachman; 15 a4? Rc8 16 a5 Qd8 17 Qd3 a6! 18 Ra3 Na7 ♯ Bogdanovic-Uhlmann, Sarajevo 1963) 15 ... Rc8 16 Qb3 Ncd4 (16 ... Qc7 17 Qc3 Qd8!; 17 Qb2!? Moles) 17 Qxb6! (17 Nxd4? Qxd4! ♯ Cobo-G. Garcia, Havana 1963) 17 ... axb6 (17 ... Nxc2+? 18 Kf2 axb6 19 Ra2 ♯ Moles) 18 Nxd4 (18 Ra2 Rxc2) 18 ... Nxd4 19 Bd3 Nxc2+ =, but with no winning chances (Moles).

**14 ... d4**

Simplest. 14 ... 0-0-0 should also be okay, when 15 Rg1 (! 15

Be3? d4!) is Mecking-Uhlmann of 9.21 above (13 Rb1 0-0-0 14 Qxc3 Nf5 15 Rg1).

### 15 Qc4 Qa5+!?

Of course 15 ... 0-0-0 is playable too, e.g. 16 Bd2 f6! 17 exf6 Rdf8 (or 17 ... Nd6) with good play. The text is slightly speculative.

### 16 Bd2 Qxa3

This is Portisch-Uhlmann, Monte Carlo 1968. After 17 Rxb7, Portisch gives 17 ... Ne3! 18 Bxe3 dxe3 19 Qc3 (19 Qb3 Qa5+ 20 c3!? Ke7 21 Qd1 Rgd8 led to a draw in two games) 19 ... Qxc3+ 20 Nxc3 Nd4 21 Ne4 Bc6 = (22 Nd6+ with a perpetual).

Thus 13 ... 0-0-0 or 13 ... Nf5 14 Rb1 d4 15 Qc4 0-0-0 are the best winning tries, if Black wishes to avoid a draw.

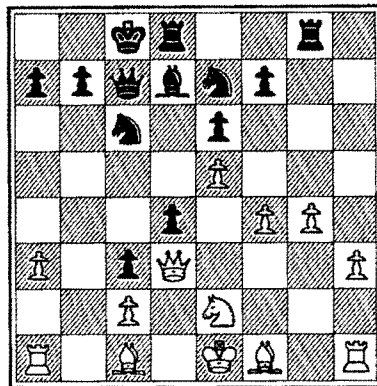
## 9.25

### 13 h3

A move which has not seen much action, but makes sense in that it attempts (through 14 g4) to neutralize both the eternal pressure down the g-file exerted by Black's rook and the powerful outpost on f5 for his knight. The negative sides of

this plan are fairly clear: White delays his development still further and loosens his pawn structure to the extent that a sacrifice on e5 gains force. This line can also arise from 12 h3 dxc3 13 g4 0-0-0 14 Qd3.

13 ... 0-0-0  
14 g4 d4



The main position. Black intends a violent approach with ... Ng6 and ... Ngxe5 or, denied that, he may play for ... f6 and ... e5. White has these possibilities:

(a) 15 Rb1 Nxe5!? (15 ... Ng6 is logical — compare the text — and even 15 ... Be8 16 Bg2 Ng6 is interesting) 16 fxe5 Bc6 17 Rg1 Ng6 18 Bf4!? Nxf4 19 Nxf4 Qxe5+ 20 Ne2 Rd5 21 Bg2 Bb5 22 Qe4? (22 Rxb5 Rxb5 23 Qxd4 Rb1+ 24 Kf2 Qd4+ 25 Nxd4 Rxl 26 Kxgl

Rd8 = Uhlmann) 22 ... d3! 23 Qxe4 Rxe4 24 Rxb5 Byrne-Uhlmann, Monte Carlo 1968, and here 24 ... Rxe2+! 25 Kd1 Rd2+ 26 Kc1 Rxc2+ 27 Kb1 Rd8! was to Black's advantage.

Uhlmann has suggested the improvement 18 Qg3, when Larsen's 18 ... Be4!? is very unclear, e.g. 19 Bg2 could lead to 19 ... Bxc2 20 Rxb7 Qc4 21 Qf3!? (... d3 is a big threat) 21 ... Nxe5 22 Rb8+ Kd7 23 Qb7+ Kd6 24 Rxd8+ Rxd8 25 Bf4 d3. Complex, to say the least.

(b) 15 Ng3 Ng6 16 Bg2 (16 Be2? is worse) 16 ... Ngxe5 17 fxe5 Nxe5 18 Qe2 Nxe4 "with some chances for Black" (Moles), an understatement considering his three mobile centre pawns and attack on the g-file for the piece.

(c) 15 Bg2 Qb6!? (Uhlmann; 15 ... Na5!? Moles, intending 16 Nxd4? Bc6! or 16 0-0 Bc6 or 16 Qxd4 Bc6, in each case with counterplay) 16 Ng3 (16 0-0 Nxe5!? 17 fxe5 Bb5 18 Qf3 Bxe2 19 Qxe2 d3+ 20 Qf2 d2) 16 ... Na5 (!) 17 a4 (17 Ne4 Bb5 18 Qg3 Nf5 and ... Ne3; or here 18 Qf3 d3, or 18 ... Ng6 19 Nd6+ Rxd6! 20 exd6 Nh4 etc.) 17 ... Bc6 18 0-0 (18 Ne4 Nf5!) 18 ... Bxg2 19 Kxg2 Ng6 with even material and positive chances based on ... Qc6+ and

... Nc4, with ... Nh4(+) in some cases. White's c1 bishop could be passive for a long time, since e3 needs defence.

Clearly 13 h3 needs a closer look. For now, Black's counter-attack looks both adequate and exciting.

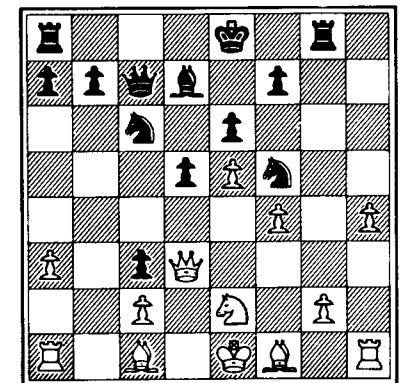
## 9.26

### 13 h4

Zeuthen comments: "No reason to hesitate!?" The idea is to advance the h-pawn as quickly as possible in order to tie down Black's rooks.

13 ... Nf5

As usual, 13 ... 0-0-0 is also possible, but the text is more energetic.



**14 h5**

14 Rb1 d4 15 h5 can be similar, e.g. 15 ... 0-0-0 16 h6 Rg6! (to keep this rook active) 17 h7 Rh8 18 Rh5!? (with the idea Qh3 and g4) 18 ... Qa5!? (or 18 ... f6!? 19 exf6 Be8 Lundquist, when 20 Rxf5 exf5 achieves nothing; compare the note to 17 Rh5 in the text below) 19 g3 (19 Qh3 Qd5 intending ... Qa2 or ... Qe4 — Lundquist) 19 ... Rg7 20 Kf2 (20 Qe4 Qd5!; 20 Bg2 Rgxh7! 21 Rxh7 Rxh7 22 g4 Rh2 23 Bxc6 Bxc6 24 gxf5 Qd5! ♣ Lundquist) 20 ... Qc5 21 Bg2 Nā5 Arnlind-Lundquist, corres 1958, and Lundquist gives 22 Be4 Rgxh7!? as leading to equality, based on 23 Rxh7 Rxh7 24 Bxf5! =, and not 24 g4 Rh2 and 25 Kg1 Rxe2 etc.

Of course 14 ... 0-0-0 is also perfectly playable; compare the text.

**14 ... 0-0-0**  
**15 h6 Rg6**  
**16 h7 Rh8**  
**17 Rh5**

Vasyukov-Doroskevich, Moscow 1967 saw 17 Rb1 f6!? (17 ... d4 would be the note to 14 h5 above) 18 exf6 Be8 19

Qxc3 Rxh7 20 Rxh7 Qxh7 21 Rb3 ½-½. Ivkov adds 21 ... d4! ♣, which is plausible.

**17 ... f6!**

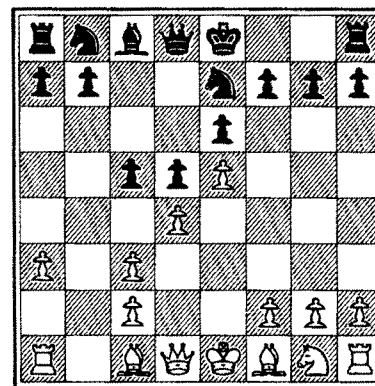
The aggressive approach. Now Carleton-Botterill, British Ch 1978, continued 18 exf6 Be8 19 Rxf5 (both h7 and f6 hang) 19 ... exf5 20 Qxf5+ Kb8! 21 Nxc3 Qxh7! 22 Be3 d4 23 Bxd4 Bd7! (23 ... Nxd4 24 Qe5+ unclear) 24 Be5+ Ka8 25 Qe4 Qh4+ 26 Kd2 Nxe5 27 fxe5 Rg4 28 Qe1 Rg3! ♣ with too much attack.

There is still leeway for improvement in these 10 Ne2 main lines, but the impression after many years is that White has to search for equality and, with precise play by Black, he does not always get it. As a general note, endings tend to favour the second player, who has the superior pawn structure and (usually) the more active pieces.

The failure of 7 Qg4 to swing the balance of power eventually led players of White back to the basics of development and central control. In the next chapter we shall discuss the most common modern moves, 7 Nf3 and 7 a4.

## 10 Winawer: Positional Main Lines

**1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bb4 4 e5 c5**  
**5 a3 Bxc3+ 6 bxc3 Ne7**



Rather than go in for the complications of 7 Qg4 (Chapter 9), White will usually play one of the positional continuations introduced by 7 Nf3 or 7 a4. Both of these moves are designed to protect White's centre and to find activity for his minor pieces before undertaking aggressive action. A particularly interesting aspect of

this strategy is that both White and Black now have the potential to attack on *either* wing, i.e. White can launch pawn storms such as f4-f5 or h4-h5 on the kingside, not to mention a piece assault with Nf3-g5 and Bd3; or he can play a4 and Ba3 with Rb1 on the queenside. Sometimes he will combine threats by dxc5 and Nf3-d4, poised to attack on both wings. For his part, Black can attack along the c-file versus the pawns on c2 and c3, blockade with, for example, ... Bd7-a4 or ... Qa5-a4, or move on the kingside with ... 0-0, ... f6 and consequent attack along the f-file. To be sure, there are many additional strategies which will become clear from the examples to follow.

To begin with, White has: 10.1 7 Nf3; 10.2 7 a4.

Some other moves, a few of which can transpose:

(a) 7 f4?! gives away light squares and cuts off White's bishop on c1. A good answer is 7 ... Qa5 8 Bd2 (8 Qd2 c4?! 9 Nf3?! — 9 a4 Moles — 9 ... Nd7 10 Nh4!? Nb6 11 Qe3 Na4 12 Bd2 Qb5! ♣ von Gottschall–Tarrasch, Nürnberg 1888. Better simply 8 ... Nbc6 or 8 ... Qa4!?) 8 ... Qa4! 9 Nf3 b6 (or 9 ... Nbc6 10 Qb1 c4 11 g3 Bd7 12 Bh3 0–0–0 ♣ Kazic–Trifunovic, 1945) 10 Be3!? Ba6 11 Bxa6 Nxa6 12 0–0 Nf5 13 Bf2 cxd4 14 cxd4 Rc8 ♣ Pfeifer–Teschner, West Germany 1955.

(b) 7 Bd3 commits the bishop rather early, e.g. 7 ... Nbc6 8 Qg4 c4 9 Be2 0–0 10 h4!? f5!? (or 10 ... f6!) 11 Qg3 Qa5 12 Bd2 Qa4 ♣ Heuer–Dvoretzky, USSR 1972.

(c) 7 h4 makes sense, to weaken the dark squares on the kingside by h5–h6 or at least claim space on that wing. But it is rather early for more pawn moves. One fairly effective reply is the manoeuvre 7 ... Qa5 8 Bd2 Qa4, which tends to work when White plays slowly. Then White could continue 9 Nf3 (9 Qb1 c4 10 h5 h6 11 Nf3 S. Bernstein–Bereira, corres 1954, and now 11 ... Nbc6!, e.g. 12 g4 Bd7 13 g5 hxg5 14 Bxg5 0–0–0 is equal — Moles) 9 ... Nbc6 10 h5 cxd4 (Safer

10 ... h6 11 Rh4 c4 12 Rf4 Bd7 13 g4 Rf8 14 g5 — lest ... 0–0–0 and ... f6 — 14 ... hxg5 15 Nxg5 Nf5 16 Bh3 Nce7 with a good game — Moles) 11 Rh4 Nf5 12 Rf4 f6! 13 exf6 gxf6 14 g4 e5! 15 Rxf5 Bxf5 16 gxf5 dxc3 17 Bxc3 0–0–0 (Evans), a very promising position for Black considering the 5(!) isolated White pawns and Black's active, centralized position.

The other answer to 7 h4 is 7 ... Nbc6 8 h5 h6 (or 8 ... Qa5 9 Bd2 Bd7 Uhlmann, intending 10 h6 gxh6) 9 Qg4 (9 Nf3 Qc7 10 a4? cxd4 11 cxd4 Nb4! ♣ Levy–Ivkov, Stockholm 1970/1) 9 ... Qa5 10 Bd2 Bd7! 11 Qxg7 0–0–0 12 Qg4 (virtually forced) 12 ... Qa4 13 Nf3 Qxc2 14 Qf4 Qe4+ 15 Be2 cxd4 16 cxd4 Nf5 ♣ Drimer–Duckstein, Raach 1969.

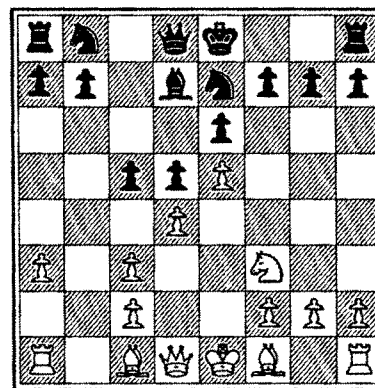
(d) 7 Ne2!? is an original idea, tried by Wedberg versus Renman in Eksjö 1981. That game went 7 ... Bd7!? 8 a4 Nbc6, with a position we will analyse in 10.2 below, under the order 7 a4 Nbc6 8 Ne2!? Bd7.

In my opinion, the immediate 7 Ne2 is less accurate due to 7 ... Qc7!. This first of all prevents 8 Nf4 and 9 Qg4 (also 8 Bd2 Nbc6 stops 9 Nf4) because of pressure on the d-pawn; at the same time, Black leaves

open the option of ... b6 and ... Ba6, e.g. 8 g3 b6 9 Bg2 Ba6 10 0–0 Nbc6 ♣.

## 10.1

7 Nf3 Bd7



7 ... Bd7 is well-known today, but it was quite rare when Uhlmann first had insight into its merits in the early sixties, and did not really catch on until he had demonstrated its soundness and flexibility.

The idea is to force 8 a4, a move White sometimes does without after 7 ... Nbc6, 7 ... Qc7, or 7 ... Qa5. Recently, White has tried some other moves, with these choices: 10.11 8 dxc5; 10.12 8 h4; 10.13 8 a4.

(a) 8 Be2 Ba4! illustrates Black's idea: 9 Rb1 (9 Be3 Qc7 10 0–0 cxd4 11 Bxd4 Nbc6 12 Bd3 Nxd4 13 cxd4 Rc8 ♣; 9 0–0 Qc7 10 c4 dxc4 11 dxc5 Nd7 12 Rb1 Nxc5 13 Bxc4 0–0 ♣ Ravinsky–Bondarevsky, USSR 1936) 9 ... Qc7 10 dxc5 (Otherwise White suffers from the c-file pressure with no counterplay) 10 ... Nd7 11 Rb4 Bc6 (11 ... Nxc5?? 12 Rxa4) 12 Rg4 Kaplan–Moles, Skopje 1972, and instead of 12 ... Ng6, about equal, Black has 12 ... 0–0!, e.g. 13 Qd2 f6! (Moles). This is not possible in the 8 dxc5 lines below because White's bishop is on d3.

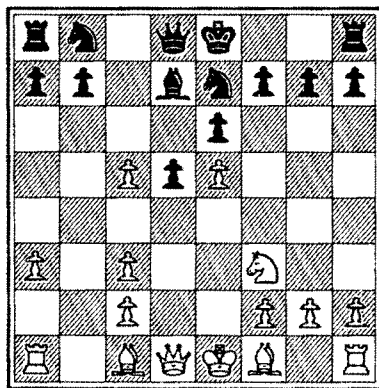
(b) 8 Bd3!? is obscure but not bad. One safe solution: 8 ... c4 9 Be2 Ba4 10 Ng5 Qa5 11 Bd2 h6 12 Nh3 Nbc6, or here 9 Bf1 Qa5 10 Bd2 Nbc6 11 g3 f5 (or 11 ... 0–0–0 =) 12 exf6 gxf6 13 Bg2 0–0–0 14 0–0 Nf5 “unclear” (ECO). Black stands very comfortably. Similar would be 8 ... Qa5 9 Bd2 c4 etc.

More dynamic is 8 ... Ba4!? 9 Ng5 (! 9 0–0 Qc7 10 Re1 h6 11 Rb1 Nd7 ♣) 9 ... h6 10 Qh5 g6 11 Qh4 Westerinen–Webb, Roskilde 1978, and now 11 ... Nd7! is better than 11 ... Nf5 12 Bxf5 gxh5?! 13 Qh5 Qe7 14 Nh3 ± intending Bg5. After 11 ... Nd7, play might go 12 dxc5

Nxc5 13 Be3 (13 Nxf7? Kxf7 14 Qf6+ Kg8 ♯; 13 0-0 Qd7! 14 Nf3 Nxd3 15 cxd3 0-0-0 =, or here 14 Be3 Nxd3 15 cxd3 Bc2!) 13 ... Nxd3+ 14 cxd3 Qa5 (14 ... Qd7!?) 15 Bd2 (15 0-0 Nf5 16 Qh3 Qxc3 or 16 ... Bc2; 15 Nxf7!? Qxc3+ 16 Ke2 Nf5! 17 Qf6 Qb2+ 18 Bd2! Nd4+ =, and not here 18 Kf3? 0-0! 19 Qxg6+ Ng7) 15 ... Nf5 16 Qh3 d4(!) 17 Ne4!? (17 cxd4 Qd5 18 Ne4 0-0-0) 17 ... Qxe5 18 f4!? Qg7 19 g4 dxc3 20 Bxc3 Nd4 unclear!

## 10.11

8 dxc5



Probably the most important anti-Winawer weapon developed in the last ten years. Spassky introduced it versus Korchnoi in the 1977/8 Candidates

Matches and, in spite of losing two games and drawing one, he established 8 dxc5 as a system which could very easily give White the advantage, the main line going 8 ... Qc7 9 Bd3 (9 Rb1 Ng6! 10 c4 Bc6, at least equal, de Firmian-Watson, Los Angeles 1982) 9 ... Ba4 10 Rb1! Nd7 11 Rb4 Bc6 12 0-0 Nxc5 13 Rg4 Ng6 14 Nd4! 0-0-0 15 f4, at least  $\pm$ .

Belyavsky-Foisor, Bucharest featured a try to improve by 10 ... Nec6!? (stopping Rb4) 11 0-0 Nd7 12 Be3, but after 12 ... Ndx5? 13 Nxe5 Nxe5 14 Bf4, White had a big edge, e.g. 14 ... f6 15 Bxe5! fxe5 16 Qh5+ Kf8 17 f4 e4 18 f5! etc. But the recommended 12 ... 0-0-0 ("=/unclear" — various) should also favour White, I think, after 13 Re1! Ndx5 14 Nxe5 Qxe5!? (14 ... Nxe5 15 Bd4! Nxd3 16 Qxd3 threatening 17 c6 and 17 Bxg7, or here 15 ... f6 16 c6!  $\pm$ ) 15 Qg4! d4 (to protect the bishop on a4) 16 cxd4 Nxd4 17 Bg5 and White should win.

Worth looking into here is 8 ... Qc7 9 Bd3 Na6!?, not expending time on another bishop move. Then critical is 10 Bxa6 bxa6 11 Be3 Bb5, e.g. 12 a4 Bc4 13 Qd4 a5!? 14 Kd2 0-0 unclear, intending ... f6. But the best solution may be:

8 ... **Ba4(!)**  
9 **Rb1**

Easy equality comes from 9 Bd3 Nd7, e.g. 10 Be3 Qc7 11 0-0 (11 Rb1 Nc6!) 11 ... Nxc5 12 Bxc5 Qxc5 13 Ng5 h6 14 Qh5 g6 15 Qh4 Bd7 = Planinc-Farago, Novi Sad 1978. And 9 Nd4!? Nd7! 10 Bb5 Bxb5 11 Nxb5 0-0! is at least equal, e.g. 12 Nd6 Nxc5 13 Be3 b6 etc.

9 ... **Nd7!**

Renman's gambit move, giving up the b-pawn outright for piece play. 9 ... Qc7 10 Bd3 would transpose back to Spassky-Korchnoi above.

10 **Rxb7\***

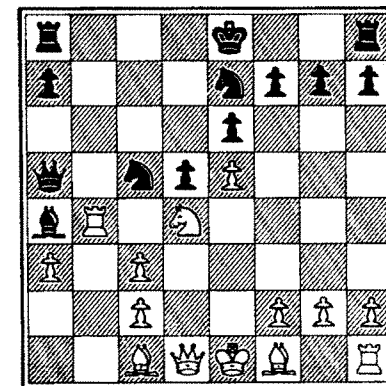
This has not worked out so well, but it does practically eliminate ... 0-0-0 as an option and it wins a pawn. The choices do not seem very attractive, e.g. 10 Rb4 Bc6 11 Be3 Qa5, or 10 Be3, when at worst Black has 10 ... Qc7 11 Bd3 0-0-0 followed by ... Nxc5. 10 Bd3 Nxc5 11 0-0 develops safely, but is harmless.

10 ... **Nxc5**  
11 **Rb4** **Qa5**

Essential to prevent 12 Rxa4 and to guard against Be3. The weakness of White's queenside pawns begins to loom as a factor.

12 **Nd4**

Perhaps 12 Bd2!?, but, for example, 12 ... 0-0 13 Rg4!? f5 14 exf6 Rxf6 15 c4 Qc7 leaves Black very active.



12 ... **0-0**  
13 **Qg4!?**

The threat is ... Qc7, ... a5, and ... Ne4 and/or ... Rab8. In deFirmian-Watson, Berkeley 1983, White tried 13 Bd3 Qc7! (13 ... Nxd3+? 14 Qxd3 with a pawn and good attacking chances) 14 0-0 (14 f4 a5 15 Rb1 Ne4 ♯; 14 Qe2 a5 15 Rb1 Nxd3+ and c3 or e5 falls; 14 Nf3!? Ng6 15 0-0 Nxe5!? or 15 ... Bd7; here 15 Bxg6 fxe6! is forced, but good for Black who has ... h6, ... Be8 for defence, if necessary) 14 ... a5 15 Rxa4 (Forced, lest 15 ... Qxe5 with complete control. 15 Bxh7+? Kxh7 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17

Nb5 Bxb5 18 Rh4 f5 19 exf6 Rxf6 and White lacks compensation whether or not he takes the rook on a8) 15 ... Nxa4 16 Qh5 Ng6 (16 ... g6? 17 Qg5!) 17 Nf3 Nc5 18 Bd2 (18 Ng5 h6 19 Nxf7 Nf4!) 18 ... Nxd3 19 cxd3 Rfb8 20 d4 Rb2 ±±.

13 ... Qc7  
14 f4 a5!

Messa–Renman, Reggio Emilia 1982. Now a rook retreat such as 15 Rb2 fails to 15 ... Ne4 ±, so White tried 15 Rxa4!? Nxa4 16 Nb5 Qc5 17 Qh3 Rab8 18 Be3 Qc6 19 Bd3 g6 20 Nd4 Qxc3+ 21 Kf2 Nc5 22 Rd1 Rb2 with a winning game, although things were still suspenseful after 23 Kf3 Nxd3!? 24 Rxd3 Qe1 25 Kg4! a4 26 Qh6 Nf5 27 Nxf5 exf5+ 28 Kg5 Qa5 (Just in time!) 29 Qh3 Rxc2 30 Bd4 Rxc2+! 31 Kh6 (31 Qxg2 Qd8+ 32 Kh6 Qh4 Mate) 31 ... Rg4 32 Bf2 Rc8 33 e6 Qd8 34 exf7+ Kxf7 0–1.

## 10.12

8 h4

A move which can be employed now or on a later move. In any case, the typical position arises after:

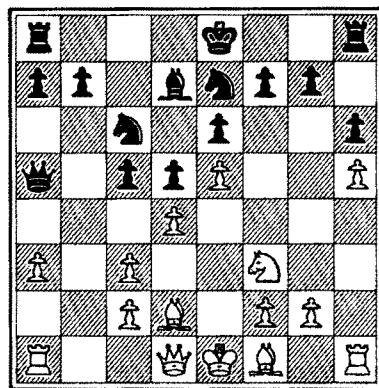
8 ... Qa5

Of course 8 ... Ba4!? and 8 ... Qc7 are also possible.

9 Bd2 Nbc6

Here 9 ... Qa4!? 10 h5 (10 dxc5 Qe4+!; 10 Qb1!?) 10 ... h6 11 Rh4 gains some time on the earlier 7 h4 line.

10 h5 h6



A position which has undergone some scrutiny in the last few years. White has:

(a) 11 Rb1 Qc7 (11 ... 0–0–0!?) 12 Bf4 c4 (Versus 13 dxc5, but 12 ... cxd4 13 cxd4 0–0–0 is not bad either, when Black plans ... Kb8–a8, ... Na5 etc.) 13 Qd2 (13 Qc1!? Lputjan) 13 ... 0–0–0 14 Be2 Rdg8 15 g4 Qa5 16 Qc1! f5! 17 g5 hxg5 18 Bxg5 Be8 19 Qb2 b6 with some kind of dynamic balance, Makarichev–Lputjan,

USSR Ch 1980/1. The game was eventually drawn, but at this point White's inferior pawns could be reason to prefer Black's position.

(b) 11 Rh4 (White defends d4 again and intends to harass the Black kingside with Rf4 and g4–g5, or swing to the queenside after dxc5) 11 ... 0–0–0! (The most recent move, but it is not clear that 11 ... c4 or Rantanen–Vaganian, Tallin 1979 is not better. That game continued 12 Rg4 Rg8 13 Nh4 0–0–0 14 Qf3 — 14 a4!? — 14 ... Qa4! 15 Kd1 Nf5 16 Nxf5 exf5 17 Rh4 Be6 and Black stands very solidly, White's bishops being rather useless. The proper result might be a draw, but Black eventually won) 12 dxc5 Qxc5 (“?” ECO. It recommends 12 ... f6!, and indeed 13 Qe2 Qc7! or 13 c4 Qc7 looks fine for Black) 13 Rb1 g5 (13 ... f6 still seems playable) 14 Ra4 Na5 15 Bb5 Tcheshkovsky–Lputjan, USSR Ch 1980/1. ECO gives this “±”, but the game went 15 ... Nc4 16 Nd4 Kb8 with a complex position which Gipslis assesses as “double-edged with mutual chances”. It is hard to judge, but one does feel that 12 ... f6 would be a cleaner and more thematic solution to Black's problems.

## 10.13

8 a4

Finally, we have this move, the automatic choice for many years and still the main line. White prepares Ba3 (if it is allowed) and prevents a blockade on his a4 square.

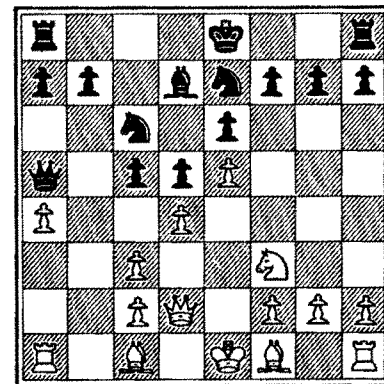
8 ... Qa5

I give this move first because it forces White to commit himself, but 8 ... Nbc6 is not bad by any means.

Now we come to a major split of the chapter, a choice which also arises after 7 a4 Nbc6 8 Nf3 Qa5: 10.131 9 Qd2; 10.132 9 Bd2.

### 10.131

9 Qd2 Nbc6



## 10 Be2

By no means the only move, but the most often played. Others:

(a) 10 Bb5!? allows a simple 10 ... f6 or the more ambitious 10 ... Nxe5!? 11 Nxe5 Bxb5 12 Ba3! Ba6 13 Bxc5 f6 14 Nd3 Nc6 15 0-0 Kf7 16 Rfe1 Rhe8 ("⚭" ECO) Mnatsakanian-Korchnoi, Erevan 1965.

(b) 10 dxc5?! Ng6 11 Qe3 Qc7 12 c4 dxc4 13 Bb2 Nb4 "⚭" (Kmoch).

(c) 10 g3 has the usual reply 10 ... f6, or perhaps 10 ... Rc8!? 11 Bg2 cxd4 12 cxd4 Qxd2+ 13 Bxd2 Nf5 etc.; compare 10 Be2 Rc8 below.

(d) 10 Ba3 tries for the ending immediately, but Black has never had problems here: 10 ... cxd4 11 cxd4 Qxd2+ 12 Kxd2 Nf5 13 Bb2 (13 c3 Na5! 14 Ra2 Rc8 15 Bb5 h5 16 Bb4 Nc4+ ⚭ Fiensch-Franz, East Germany 1958; 13 Rb1!? b6!? 14 c3 Na5 15 Bb4 Nc4+ 16 Bxc4 dxc4 17 a5 Bc6 = Kan-Botvinnik, Sverdlosk 1943) 13 ... Na5 14 Ke1 (A recent try. 14 Bc3 Nc4+ 15 Bxc4 dxc4 16 Bb4 Bc6 17 Kc3 Rc8 of Shamkovich-Petrosian, USSR Ch 1960, favours Black if anyone and here 17 ... Bd5 led to a Black advantage in Hazai-Psakhis, Sochi 1982) 14 ... Rc8 15 Bd3

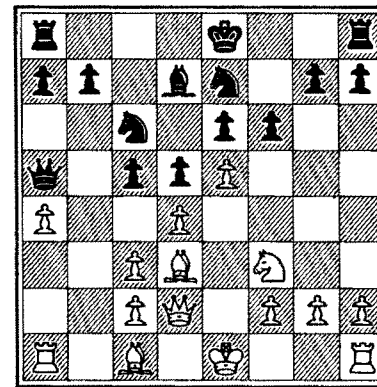
Nc4 16 Bc1 (the point) 16 ... 0-0 17 Ke2 Rc7 = Kura-jica-Cuartas, Biel 1981. For more on these endings, see the next note and, for example, the note on 11 Ba3!? below.

(e) 10 Bd3 is a common move and deserves considerable attention. Ivkov (a consummate handler of the Winawer) produced something new versus Vitolins in Riga 1981 by going into the ending (previously thought to be bad at this point): 10 ... cxd4!? 11 cxd4 Qxd2+ 12 Bxd2 (12 Kxd2 is considered worse, since it does not prevent ... Na5, and indeed 12 ... Na5! looks best and equal; compare 10 Be2 Rc8 11 Ba3 in the main line) 12 ... Rc8! (Leaving the knight on e7 to watch the queenside and preventing 13 Bc3? due to 13 ... Nxe5 etc.) 13 Rb1 (13 Ra3, to prepare Bc3, can be met by 13 ... Rc7 14 Bc3 f6, e.g. 15 Kd2 Kf7 16 Rb1 h6 =) 13 ... Rc7 14 a5 (Following the recommended plan, but 14 Ke2 = is more flexible) 14 ... a6! 15 Bc3 Na7 16 Bb4 Bb5 17 Bd6 Rd7 18 Nd2 Bxd3 19 cxd3 Nf5 20 Bc5 Nb5 21 Nb3 h5 22 g3 f6 with at least equality.

There are two more conventional solutions to 10 Bd3. One is 10 ... c4, e.g. 11 Be2 f6 12 0-0 0-0-0 (or 12 ... 0-0!?

Ivkov) 13 Ba3 Ng6 (13 ... Rdf8!? intending ... Rf7 is Botvinnik's suggestion, one of several alternatives here) 14 Bd6 Rde8 15 Rfb1 (15 Rfe1 Nd8 intending ... Nf7 is a good plan, or 15 ... h5 16 h4, as in Fischer-Sherwin, US Ch 1960/1, and now 16 ... Nce7! = intending ... Nf5) 15 ... Nce7 16 Bb4 Qc7 17 Bd6 Qa5 18 Qe1!? (18 Bb4 =) 18 ... h5 19 Bf1 Nf5 = Biering-Marszalek, Primorsko 1979.

Finally, Black can play the dynamic 10 ... f6



(e1) 11 exf6 gxf6 12 dxc5 (12 0-0?! c4! 13 Be2 0-0-0 14 Ba3 Nf5 15 Rfb1!? Rdg8 16 Rb5 Qc7 17 Rab1 b6 18 Ra1 h5 19 Bc1 Nd6 ⚭ Wilson-Glueck, St. Paul 1982, or here 15 Rfe1 h5 16 Bf1 h4 ⚭ or Williams-Schmidt, Nice 1974. There is no

White attack in these lines) 12 ... e5 13 c4 dxc4 14 Bxc4 Qxc5 15 Bb3 0-0-0 16 0-0 Nf5!? (More ambitious than 16 ... Bg4 = of Stein-Doroskevich, USSR Ch 1970) 17 Ba3 Qb6 18 Qc3 Kb8 (Moles), and now, for example, 19 Rfb1 Ncd4 20 Nxd4 Nxd4 21 Bc4 Qc7 22 Qb4 Bc6 etc. with attack.

(e2) 11 0-0 fxe5 (or 11 ... 0-0-0, e.g. 12 Re1 fxe5 13 dxe5 h6 14 Ba3 Rdf8 =) 12 dxe5 (12 Nxe5 Nxe5 13 dxe5 0-0 is easy for Black) 12 ... 0-0 13 Re1 (13 Ba3 Rxf3!? Moles; 13 c4 Qc7 or 13 ... Qxd2 =) 13 ... h6 14 Ba3 Smyslov-Uhlmann, Havana 1964, when 14 ... Be8 15 Qe3 b6 16 Nd2 Nf5 was equal, and 15 Nh4!? (Brooks) 15 ... g5 is very complicated. Otherwise, Black can choose 14 ... Kh8 with equality. The solution with 11 ... 0-0-0 looks simplest, however.

Thus Black should play 10 ... c4 for safe equality, 10 ... f6!? to create an imbalance, and 10 ... cxd4 if he wants an ending.

## 10 ... Rc8!?

Another subtle Uhlmann move, designed to improve Black's chances in the ending after ... cxd4 etc., e.g. now 11 0-0 cxd4 12 cxd4 Qxd2 13 Bxd2 Nf5 (or 13 ... f6 =) 14 c3 Na5 =

Matthews–Moles, Belfast 1967, presents no problems for the second player.

Note that 10 ... f6 11 exf6 (11 0–0 fxe5 12 dxe5 0–0 13 Re1 h6 = is simpler than in (e2) above, due to White's passive bishop on e2) 11 ... gxf6 12 0–0 (Or 12 dxc5 0–0–0 13 0–0 e5, transposing) 12 ... 0–0–0 13 dxc5 e5 14 c4 transposes to (e1) in the last note (=), and here 14 Ba3 Rhg8 15 Rfb1 Ng6 16 g3 Nf4 17 Bf1 Bg4 (Moles) gives free play.

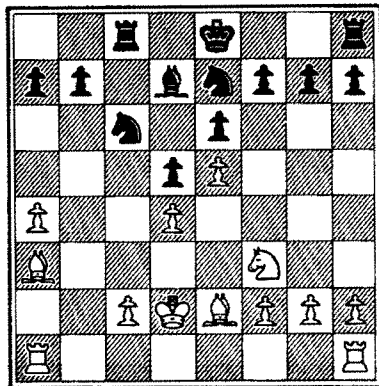
### 11 dxc5

(a) 11 h4!? cxd4 12 cxd4 Qxd2+ 13 Bxd2 Nf5 of Koenig–Watson, Boston 1981, showed a direct advantage of 10 ... Rc8 after 14 Bc3?? Nxe5, but 14 c3 Na5 would have been very comfortable for Black anyway, and here 14 ... f6 is also good.

(b) An interesting challenge to theory came about after 11 Ba3!? cxd4 12 cxd4 Qxd2+ 13 Kxd2

(see following diagram)

In Hort–Arapovic, Sarajevo 1980, Black proceeded “normally” with 13 ... Nf5 14 c3! h5!? 15 Rfb1 Na5 16 Bc5! b6 17 Bb4 Nc4+ 18 Ke1 f6 19 a5 b5 20 a6! with a slight advantage to White. *ECO* gives 14 ... Na5 15



Rfb1 Bxa4 16 Bb4 Nb3+ 17 Rxb3 Bxb3 18 Bb5+ Kd8 19 Ng5 Nh6 20 Rxa7 “=/unclear”; but Robert Byrne gave the nice line 16 g4(!) Nh6 17 Bd6! Nb3+ 18 Rxb3 Bxb3 19 Rxa7 Bc4 20 Bxc4 dxc4 21 Rxb7 Nxc4 22 Re7+ Kd8 23 Rxf7. This looks great for White, who intends Ng5 or Rxg7, e.g. 23 ... Nh6 24 Ra7! Nf5 25 Ng5 or 23 ... h6 24 d5! and 24 ... exd5 25 Nd4 or 24 ... Nxf2 25 Nd4 Ne4+ 26 Ke3 ±.

This could all use tests, of course, but I suggest 13 ... Na5(!) 14 Rhb1 b6! straight away, and I do not think Black need be worried, e.g. 15 Ba6 Nc4+ 16 Ke1 Nxa3 or 15 Bb4 Nc4+ 16 Kd1 Nec6. With several examples to go by, it is safe to say that ... Nf5 should not be an automatic move in these endings, as it often just loses a tempo and, worse, fails to sup-

port the key queenside squares.

(c) 11 Bd3!? seems to just waste a tempo on 10 Bd3, but now 11 ... c4?! and 11 ... f6? 12 exf6 gxf6 13 dxc5 e5 14 Nh4! show up the loss which ... Rc8 entails: ... 0–0–0 is not possible in either case. On the other hand, 11 ... cxd4! 12 cxd4 Qxd2+ 13 Bxd2 is fine for Black, e.g. 13 ... Nf5 (or 13 ... f6 =, but here ... Nf5 forces queenside concessions with c3 or the loss of bishops) 14 Bxf5 exf5 15 Ke2 (15 0–0 Nd8 16 Ra2 Rc4 = Bogdanovic–Uhlmann, Sarajevo 1969) 15 ... Nd8 16 c3 Rc4 17 a5 Bb5 18 Rhb1 a6 ♣ Földi–Portisch, Hungarian Ch 1959.

The text (11 dxc5) is Smyslov's move, winning d4 for a knight, gaining some room, and using the tripled pawns for restraint on the black centre.

11 ... Ng6  
12 0–0

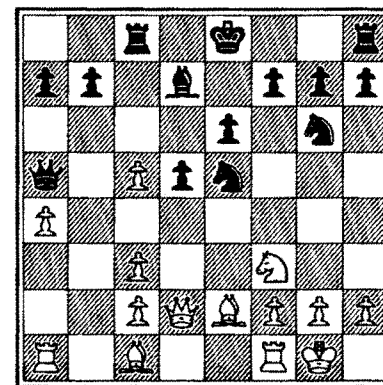
Everyone's main line. An interesting deviation is 12 Qe3, when Black can equalize but no more by 12 ... d4!? 13 Nxd4 Nxd4 14 Qxd4 Qxc5 (Maybe 14 ... Rxc5!? 15 Be3 Rxe5 16 0–0 Bc6 is playable) 15 Be3! Qxc3+ 16 Qxc3 Rxc3 17 Kd2 Rc8 18 Rfb1 Bc6 19 Bb5! 0–0 20 Bxc6 Hartston–Webb, England 1973, and Eales gives

20 ... Rfd8+ 21 Kc1 Rxc6 =.

In this case perhaps 12 ... a6!? could be considered, with 13 0–0 Qc7 14 Nd4 Qxe5 as the idea.

12 ... Nxe5!?

An underestimated move, I believe. Smyslov–Uhlmann, Mar del Plata 1966, continued 12 ... 0–0 13 Qe3 Qc7 14 Nd4! Qxe5 15 Nb5 Qxe3 16 Bxe3, and here instead of Uhlmann's 16 ... a6 17 Nd6 Rc7 18 a5! ±, 16 ... Rb8! 17 a5 (Necessary, to prevent ... Na5–c4) 17 ... a6 18 Nd6 Nce7 19 Rab1 Bc6 = was Pope–Davis, Australia 1975, since ... Nc8 will eliminate the knight on d6 and leave White's extra pawn in the form of the tripled c-pawns and isolated a-pawn. Black actually got the advantage, but the game was drawn.



## 13 Nd4

"!" (ECO and others). 13 Nxe5 Nxe5 14 Qe3?! was Hartston-Uhlmann, Hastings 1972/3: 14 ... Ng6 15 Ba3 Bc6 16 f4 0-0 (♭) 17 Qh3 Rcd8 18 Bb4 Qc7 19 Bd3 f5! 20 Qg3 Rf6 21 Qe3 (21 a5) 21 ... a5 22 Ba3 Bxa4 23 Bb2 Bc6 ♭.

White's 14th was suspect, although Uhlmann gives 14 Qd4 f6 15 Bh5+ g6 16 f4 Nc6 17 Qxf6 Rf8 18 Bxg6+ hxg6 19 Qxg6+ Kd8 ♭♭. Also, the game Gligoric-Moles, simultaneous 1966/7 need not have ended so abruptly after 14 Qg5!? Ng6 15 c4 dxc4?? 16 c6! ±±; after just 15 ... 0-0!, White still has not developed and his extra doubled c-pawn in case of 16 cxd5 exd5 17 Qxd5 does not impress, e.g. Black could play 17 ... Bc6 18 Qh5!? (18 Qf5? Bxg2!) 18 ... Be4 with ongoing pressure.

## 13 ... a6(!)

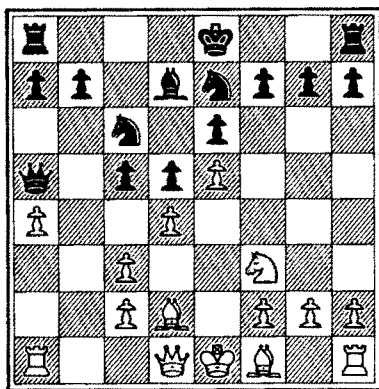
This seems obviously better than 13 ... 0-0(?) 14 Ba3 Rfd8 15 Bb4 Qc7 16 Nb5 ± of Kaplan-Tukmakov, Puerto Rico 1971. 13 ... a6 banks on the fact that Black is not really behind in development, so a tempo can be expended to prevent Nb5. I do not see a useful plan for White, as the natural line 14 f4

Nc6 15 f5 does not achieve anything after 15 ... exf5! 16 Nxf5 (16 Qe3+ Nce7 or even 16 ... Nce5!?) 16 Bxf5 17 Rxf5 Qxc5+ 18 Kh1 Nce7 19 Rf3 0-0 20 Ba3 Qc6 and Black still has an extra pawn with a fairly solid position.

Overall, 10 ... Rc8 is clearly a more risky strategy versus 10 Be2 than 10 ... f6, but it seems sufficient and full of interesting byways.

## 10.132

9 Bd2 Nbc6



9 Bd2 abandons the idea of Ba3, but keeps the kingside dark squares covered while shoring up the weak c3 square and toying with the idea of c4, undoubling the c-pawns. Black's main aim will be to

break up the centre, with or without ... c4.

## 10 Be2

The recent lack of success for this move has stirred interest in several others:

(a) 10 Bd3? worked well in Arnason-Farago, Sochi 1981, after 10 ... f6!? 11 0-0 fxe5? 12 c4 Qc7 13 Nxe5 Nxe5 14 Bf4! cxd4 15 Re1 ±, but either 10 ... c4 11 Be2 (11 Bf1 is too slow) 11 ... f6 or 10 ... f6 11 0-0 c4 12 Be2 lead to the same position, when 12 ... Ng6 is good, but simplest is 12 ... fxe5 13 Nxe5 Nxe5 14 dxe5 0-0 15 f4 Be8 16 Bg4 Qb6+ 17 Kh1 Bg6 18 Qb1 Qc6! 19 Qb5 Qc8! 20 Ra2 Be4 ♭ or even ♭. Nikolic-Ivkov, Sarajevo 1967.

(b) 10 h4!? is similar to 10.12 above, but here White has a4 in, a move he avoided in that line. The most logical answer is 10 ... f6 (10 ... 0-0-0 11 h5 h6 and 10 ... c4 are also okay) 11 h5 fxe5 12 dxe5 (12 Nxe5 Nxe5 13 dxe5 h6 =; 12 h6!? gxh6 13 Nxe5 Nxe5 14 dxe5 0-0-0 15 Rxh6 Qc7 and ... Nf5) 12 ... 0-0-0 13 Bd3 (13 h6 gxh6! intending ... Be8-g6 in some cases) 13 ... Qc7 14 Kf1! h6! 15 Be3 Na5 16 Nd2 Rhf8 17 Kg1 (17 Qg4 Nf5!) 17 ... Nf5 18 Bf4 Kb8 ♭ Rantanen-Helmers, Norway 1981.

(c) 10 Bb5!? is a Robert Byrne idea, hoping to provoke 10 ... a6?, when 11 Be2! transposes to normal lines but with a Black weakness on b6. Vaganian's reply in Moscow 1975 was 10 ... Qc7 11 0-0 0-0 12 Re1 b6 13 Bd3 h6, and here Byrne tried 14 Bf4 (14 Bc1!?) 14 ... Ng6 15 Bg3 Nce7! =. In Halle 1981, Uhlmann attempted to refute 10 Bb5 versus Hazai: 10 ... c4("!!") 11 Qc1(?) f6 12 exf6 gxf6 13 0-0 Rg8 14 Re1 Kf7! (A favourite spot for Uhlmann's king) 15 Kf1 Nf5 16 Bf4 h5 17 h3 Rg6 (♭) 18 Qa3 h4 19 Nh2 Rag8 20 Ng4 Rxg4! 21 hxg4 Rxg4 (♭) 22 Bh2 Qd8 23 f3 Rg6 24 Qc1 Qg8 25 Qd2 Ng3+! 26 Rxg3 Rxg3 ♭ intending ... h3. Here 11 0-0 f6 does not seem to help much, and 11 Ng5 h6 12 Qh5? g6 13 Qh3 Nxe5! wins a pawn, so at the moment 10 ... c4 is the move to beat if White wants to salvage 10 Bb5.

(d) 10 g3 can be met by 10 ... Qc7 with the idea ... Na5-c4, or by 10 ... 0-0 11 Bh3 f6 12 exf6 Rxf6 =. But the most serious drawback was shown in Kavalek-Hort, Waddinxveen 1979: 10 ... 0-0-0(!) 11 Bh3 f5! 12 Bg2 (12 exf6 gxf6 13 0-0 e5 14 Bxd7+ Rxd7 15 c4 Qc7 ♭ Doda-Raicevic, Banovici 1979) 12 ... h6 13 h4 Qc7 14

Bc1! (Else ... Na5-c4 follows) 14 ... cxd4 15 cxd4 Nb4 16 Kd2 Be8! 17 Ba3 Nbc6 18 Bd6 Rxd6! 19 exd6 Qxd6 20 Kc1 f4! ♣ with a strong attack.

(e) 10 c4?! does not make sense until ... f6 is in, because the light squares are weakened: 10 ... Qc7 11 cxd5 exd5 (or 11 ... Nxd5; compare 10 Be2 f6 11 c4 below) 12 dxc5? (But 12 c3 0-0 is comfortable for Black, who can pressure d4 with ... cxd4, ... Bg4, ... Nf5 etc.; 12 ... 0-0 (Or 12 ... Nxe5 13 Nxe5 Qxe5+ 14 Be2 Bg4! 15 f3 Bd7 16 0-0 Qd4+ ♣ Moles) 13 Be2 Nxe5 14 0-0 Nxf3+ 15 Bxf3 Qxc5 ♣ Dubinin-Boleslavsky, USSR Ch 1947.

(f) 10 Ng5 is rather slow, since after 10 ... h6 11 Nh3 (11 Qh5 g6 12 Qh3 cxd4 13 cxd4 Qb6), 11 ... Qc7! hits d4, e.g. 12 Qg4 Nf5 and 13 Bd3 cxd4 ♣, but how else to defend the d-pawn?

10 ... f6!

The old move was 10 ... c4, but then 11 Ng5(!) caused Black certain difficulties. I myself discovered 10 ... f6 because I had won two games with 11 Ng5 and could not decide what I would have done against this simple pawn push. Theory at the time said only that after 11 c4 Qc7 12 exf6 gxf6 13 cxd5,

“the opening of the position will enhance the power of the bishops” (Moles). But a closer look reveals that the opening of lines favours Black’s knights at least as much as the bishops, and White’s centre may become weak in short order.

### 11 c4

Still the main line, but it is not the only move any more:

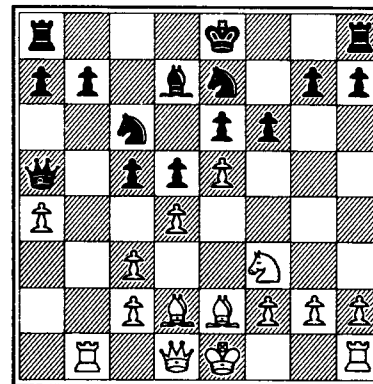
(a) 11 0-0 has hardly been seen, but it is natural to lend support to e5. One answer is 11 ... fxe5!? 12 dxe5 (12 Nxe5 Nxe5 13 dxe5 0-0 14 c4 Qc7 15 f4 Bc6 =, or here 15 Bg5?! Bc6 16 Re1 Nf5 17 Bd3 h6 18 Bc1 Rad8 ♣ Formane-de Cavott-Loman, Amsterdam 1980) 12 ... 0-0 (12 ... 0-0-0 13 Re1 transposes to 11 ... 0-0-0) 13 Re1 Ng6 14 Bf1 Qc7 and now White should try 15 g3 with the idea 15 ... Ncxe5?! 16 Nxe5 Nxe5 17 Bf4 Rxf4 18 gxf4 and Black’s game does not convince due to the threat f5, but 15 ... Rae8 or 15 ... h6 looks fine.

Black can also play 11 ... 0-0-0, e.g. 12 Qc1!? (12 Re1 fxe5 13 dxe5 Ng6 14 Bf1 Qc7 15 g3 Rdf8 16 Bh3 h6 intending ... Rf7; here 12 ... c4 13 Bf1 transposes to a known 10 Be2 c4 line, about equal) 12 ... Qc7 13 Qa3 c4 14 Re1 Ng6 15 exf6

gxf6 16 Bh6 Rdg8 17 Qc1 e5 18 dxe5 fxe5 19 Qd2 Bf5 20 Bg5 Be4!? 21 Bxd8 Qxd8 22 g3 Nf4 with a strong attack, Marfia-Watson, Columbus 1977.

(b) 11 exf6 gxf6 12 c4 transposes to the text, as does 12 0-0 0-0-0 13 c4; here 13 Re1 c4!? 14 Qc1 Rhg8 = was Tringov-Timman, Plovdiv 1983. The attempt to bind the kingside by 12 Nh4!? 0-0-0 13 Bh5 did not do well after 13 ... Qc7 14 Be3 Ng6! 15 Bxg6 hxg6 16 Nxg6 Rxh2 17 Rg1 Rh7 18 Nf4 cxd4 19 cxd4 Kb8 20 Qd2 Ka8! planning ... Bc8 and ... e5, Gold-Watson, New York 1978.

(c) 11 Rb1!? is the latest idea, a product of the Swedish IM Wedberg’s imagination.



The rook move aims to win structural advantages by means of tactical skirmishing. 11 ... 0-0-0 12 exf6 gxf6 13 Rb5

Qxa4 14 Rxc5 would be an example, and if 14 ... b6 15 Rb5 Ne5!?, 16 Rb4 Nxf3+ 17 Bxf3 with continuing chances despite the material reduction. Wedberg-Ornstein, Swedish Ch 1978 saw 11 ... fxe5 12 Rxb7 e4 13 Ng5 cxd4 (13 ... c4!?) and now Wedberg recommends 14 c4 (“! I believe he played 14 Bg4!?) 14 ... Qxa4 15 cxd5 exd5 16 Bb5 “! ±”. The assessment is a bit brash, perhaps, since after 16 ... Qxa2, 17 Rxd7 looks virtually forced (otherwise ... 0-0-0 is too strong), and after 17 ... Kxd7 White has to find a way to continue the attack. 18 Qg4+!? Kc7 19 0-0 (19 Bxc6? Qa1+ 20 Ke2 Qa6+) is obscure (19 ... Kb6!?), and 18 Bb4!? is also unclear after 18 ... Qb2 19 Bxc6+ Nxc6 20 Qg4+ Kc7 21 Ne6+ Kb6 22 Bc5+ or 18 ... Kc7 (18 ... h5? 19 Qxd4! Qb1+ 20 Kd2! ±). Perhaps this line went unrepeated more because of something like 16 0-0(!), e.g. 16 ... 0-0-0 17 Qb1 or 16 ... h6? 17 Bb5 Qa2 18 Rxd7! etc., or 16 ... d3 17 Bg4 0-0-0 18 Rxd7 with a very strong attack.

At any rate, Ornstein avoided 11 ... fxe5 in a second meeting with Wedberg (Sweden 1979) and turned to 11 ... Qc7, but after 12 Bf4 Nc8? 13 Qc1 f5 14 dxc5 ±, White had control of

d4 and the dark squares. The correct sequence here is 12 ... Ng6! 13 Bg3 and now:

(c1) 13 ... f5!? 14 h4 cxd4 15 cxd4 Na5 16 h5 Ne7 17 h6 g6 18 Bh4 (18 ... Qd2!?) 18 ... Bxa4 (18 ... Ng8!?) 19 Bf6 0-0 20 Qd2 Nac6 21 Rh3 Rab8 22 Nh4 Rf7 23 Rg3 b5(?) 24 Bh5 b4 25 Qg5 Kf8 26 Nxc6+ and White broke through, winning in a few moves, Wedberg-Roos, Copenhagen 1981.

(c2) 13 ... fxe5! 14 0-0 (14 Bb5 cxd4 intending ... Qa5+) 14 ... cxd4 (14 ... 0-0 15 Bb5 Qc8? was ill-timed due to 16 Bxc6 Bxc6 17 Nxe5 Nxe5 18 Bxe5 ± Tcheshkovsky-Farago, Sochi 1981, since 18 ... cxd4 19 Qxd4! or 18 ... Bxa4 19 Qg4 and 20 dxc5 favour White. But 15 ... cxd4 transposes 14 ... Qc8!? is a recent novelty, e.g. 15 dxe5 0-0 16 c4!? Nce7! 17 Qd2 Bc6 ♣ Maki-Ogaard, Oslo 1983; or 16 Qd2! h6!? 17 c4 =/unclear of Maki-Hansen, Oslo 1983) 15 cxd4 0-0 16 Bb5, and now in Wedberg-Renman, Sweden 1979, Black sacrificed unsoundly via 16 ... Rxf3? 17 gxf3 Rf8 18 Re1 Qd8 19 Bxc6 Bxc6 20 Rxe5 ±.

There are two clear improvements. Suetin gives "16 ... Qc8 with a sound position". I agree, since sacrificing the a-pawn by 17 Bxc6 Bxc6 18 Nxe5 does not

give White enough, and 17 dxe5 Nce7 or 17 ... Na5 looks equal. The option is Wedberg's "16 ... Nf4! 17 Bxc6 Bxc6 18 Nxe5 Bxa4 19 Rb4 unclear". Then 19 ... b5 looks best, with an extra pawn. On 19 Qg4 instead, 19 ... h5!? intending ... Ne2+, ... Bxc2, and ... Nxc3+ is complex, but puts pressure on White to justify his play.

11 ... Qc7  
12 exf6!?

The usual choice, but in fact 12 cxd5! is more precise, limiting Black's options. Then after 12 ... Nxd5 13 c4, 13 ... Nf4 is not an option (compare below), although 13 ... Nde7 14 exf6 gxf6 transposes, and 13 ... Ndb4 seems to also, since 14 exf6 looks best.

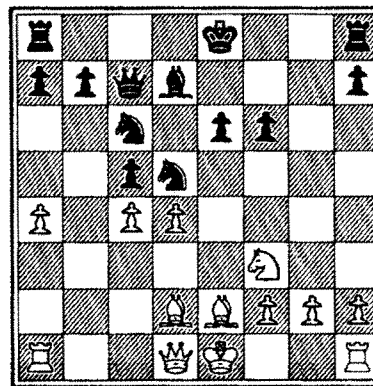
12 ... gxf6  
13 cxd5 Nxd5  
14 c4

The obvious choice. Others are slow:

(a) 14 dxc5? 0-0-0 15 0-0 (Probably better is Bouaziz' 15 a5!?. It is not clear that a6 is really a threat, e.g. 15 ... e5!? 16 a6 Bg4 17 axb7+ Kb8 with ideas such as ... Nc3, ... e4, or ... Rhg8. But in any case 15 ... Be8 16 Qc1 — ... Nc3 was threatened — 16 ... a6 looks good) 15 ... e5 16 c4 (16

c3? Rhg8 17 Kh1 Nf4! 18 Bc4 Rxc2 19 Bxf4 Rg4! ♣♣ Lederman-Korchnoi, Beersheba 1978) 16 ... Ndb4 (or 16 ... Nde7) 17 Bxb4 Nxb4 18 Qd6 Rhf8 (intending ... Na6) 19 Qxc7+ Kxc7 20 Rfd1 Na6 21 Bd3 h6 22 a5 Nxc5 23 Bc2 Be6 ♣♣ McCrory-Watson, Denver 1976.

(b) 14 c3 0-0-0 15 0-0 Rhg8 16 Re1 e5! was Spassky-Korchnoi, Belgrade 1977, which continued 17 c4 (17 dxe5? Nxc3! 18 Bxc3 Bh3) 17 ... Bh3 18 Bf1! (18 Ng5? Nc3! Timman), and here instead of 18 ... Nb6?! 19 d5 Nxc4 20 dxc6 Qxc6 =, Timman's 18 ... Nf4! 19 Bxf4 exf4 20 d5 Bg4! 21 Qb3 Bxf3 22 Qxf3 Nd4 ♣ provides a clear solution to this line.



Now 14 ... Nde7 is theory's favourite, but there are two

others which may be better! Black has:

(a) 14 ... Nde7 15 Bc3 (15 dxc5 0-0-0 16 Bc3 e5 — 16 ... Be8!? ECO — 17 Qd6 Nf5 18 Qxc7+ Kxc7 = Timman-Korchnoi, Leeuwarden 1976) 15 ... 0-0-0 16 d5! (16 0-0 Be8! ♣ Ugrinovic) 16 ... exd5 17 Bxf6 Rhg8 (17 ... Rhf8 18 Bh4 intending Bg3 at some point) 18 cxd5 Be6 19 0-0 Rxd5! 20 Qc2 Rh5 with a double-edged game, perhaps slightly better for White (he played 21 Bc4), who has two bishops and the better structure versus a centralized but not really dangerous Black position, Kanzler-Fedoruk, Daugavpils 1979. White eventually won.

(b) 14 ... Nf4(!) was my original idea when I first examined 10 ... f6, and it still looks promising, e.g. 15 Bxf4 Qxf4 16 d5 (16 dxc5 0-0-0 17 Qd6 e5 intending 18 g3? Qe4, or here 17 0-0 e5!, rather than 17 ... Rhg8!? 18 Qb3! Grefe-Watson, Berkeley 1976. Then Black has very pleasant play) 16 ... Nb4! (So as not to activate the e2 bishop) 17 dxe6 Bxe6 18 0-0 Bd7! (the point) 19 g3 Qc7 20 Qb3 0-0-0 21 Rfd1 Rhe8 22 Rd2 Bg4 ♣ Spraggett-Watson, Columbus 1977. Note White's underlying structural

problems: his weak queenside pawns and bad light-squared bishop.

(c) 14 ... Nbd4!? has several virtues as illustrated by McCrory–Watson above. Then 15 dxc5 0–0–0 intending ... e5 and ... Bf5 or simply ... Na6 is already better for Black; and the unpinning move 15 Qb1 fails to 15 ... 0–0–0 16 Bc3 Be8! with the idea ... Bg6. So critical would be 15 Bc3 cxd4 16 Nxd4 Nxd4 17 Bh5+?! (17 Bxb4 Qe5!; 17 Bxd4 0–0!? or 17 ... e5) 17 ... Kd8 18 Bxd4 e5 and ... Qxc4 will follow. Note that this ... Ndb4 option may be particularly important due to the order 12 cxd5 Nxd5 13 exf6 etc. (note to 12 exf6).

The main line with 10 ... f6 looks healthy and promising at the time of this writing.

## 10.2

### 7 a4

With proper play this will generally transpose to the main line with 7 Nf3, but there are some interesting points along the way.

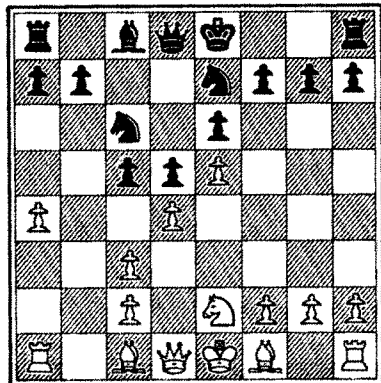
### 7 ... Nbc6

Another order is 7 ... Qa5 8 Bd2 (8 Qd2 Nbc6 9 Nf3 Bd7 is

10.131 above) 8 ... Nbc6 9 Qg4 (9 Nf3 Bd7 is 10.132 above, the main line. 9 Ne2!? will be looked at in the next note) and now 9 ... 0–0! 10 Nf3 f5 is =, and better than 9 ... Bd7!? 10 Qxg7 0–0–0 11 Nf3! h5 12 Qf6! (Slotnik).

### 8 Nf3

Very interesting is another Wedberg idea, 8 Ne2!?



Wedberg–Renman, Eksjö 1981, continued 8 ... Bd7 (by transposition; see 7 Ne2 above) 9 Ba3! cxd4 10 cxd4 f6 11 exf6 gxf6 12 g3 (12 Nf4 Qa5+) 12 ... e5 (12 ... Qa5+ 13 c3 0–0–0 or 13 ... Kf7!?) 13 Bg2 Qa5+ 14 c3 Bf5?! (14 ... 0–0–0) 15 0–0 0–0–0 16 Rc1 Be6!? (16 ... Kb8! was the last chance for equality) 17 Re1 Kb8 18 dxe5 fxe5 19 Nd4! exd4 (lest 20 Nb5) 20 Rxe6 Nf5 21

Rf6! Ng7 22 Bb4! Qc7 (22 ... Nxb4 23 cxb4 Qxb4 24 Rcc7 ±; 22 ... Qa6 23 Bf1) 23 cxd4 Rhe8 24 Qg4 with a pawn and strong attack (which soon told).

This is not overwhelming, but makes somewhat of a case against 8 ... Bd7. Another game illustrating White's ideas was Myreng–Glueck, St. Paul 1982: 8 ... Qa5!? 9 Bd2 Bd7(?) 10 g3 0–0 11 Bg2 c4?! (Illogical, since the surrender of the c4 square to Black should be a basic problem with 8 Ne2; 11 ... Qc7!) 12 0–0 Nc8 (12 ... Ng6!?, versus Nf4; 12 ... f6 13 exf6 Rxf6 14 Nf4 ±) 13 Nf4 f5 14 exf6 Rxf6 15 Re1 Nd6 16 Re2! Re8 17 Qe1 Nd8 18 Bc1 (or 18 h4! ±, intending Bh3, Ng2, Bf4–e5) 18 ... g6 19 Ba3 N8f7 20 h4 Qd8 21 Bc1! Nf5 22 Bh3 N7d6 23 Ng2 Rf7 24 Bg5 Qc8, and here 25 Bf4! with the idea Be5 and Nf4 was strong.

I feel that there is a simpler solution, however, in 8 ... Qa5 9 Bd2 Qc7!. Then White can hardly abandon his d-pawn by moving the knight from f3 to e2, yet 10 g3 b6 11 Bg2 Ba6 and 10 Bf4 Ng6 (or 10 ... b6 or 10 ... Bd7) 11 Bg3 Qa5 12 Qd2 f6 both look fine for the second player.

### 8 ... Qa5

8 ... Bd7 is naturally also playable, with the interesting

sideline 9 Bb5!? Qc7 10 0–0 b6 (10 ... 0–0 11 Ba3 Slotnik) 11 Ba3 Na5 Tcheshkovsky–Gulko, USSR Ch 1976, and 12 dxc5 Bxb5 13 cxb6 axb6 14 axb5 0–0 with a sharp, approximately equal contest (Gulko) was better than 12 Bxd7+?! Qxd7! 13 dxc5 Nc4 14 cxb6 axb6 15 Bxe7 Qxe7 ♣, as played.

### 9 Qd2

9 Bd2 Bd7 is 10.132 again.

### 9 ... b6!?

9 ... Bd7 is the 10.131 main line. The text is an option, not quite as aggressive but safer.

### 10 Bb5

Else 10 ... Ba6, e.g. 10 Bd3 Ba6 11 0–0 cxd4?! (11 ... Bxd3! first is fully equal) 12 Bxa6 Qxa6 13 cxd4 0–0 14 Ba3 Ristoja–Ornstein, Helsingfors 1982, and now best was 14 ... Qb7! (Ornstein), intending ... Na5–c4 and keeping ... f6 as a response if White moves his knight from f3 to attack via f4, g4, etc. But 11 ... Bxd3! was easier, and perhaps objectively better.

### 10 ... Bd7

### 11 Bd3

11 Ba3! ± (Uhlmann), based on the trick 11 ... cxd4? 12 Bb4! etc. But Black also has 11

... a6 12 Be2 0-0, or here 12 ... cxd4 13 cxd4 Qxd2ch 14 Kxd2 Nf5 15 c3 Na5 unclear.

### 11 ... f6!

Improving upon 11 ... cxd4 12 cxd4 Nb4?! (but 12 ... Qxd2+ 13 Kxd2 f6 looks okay, with perhaps ... 0-0, ... Be8-g6 or ... Bh5 to follow) 13 0-0 Bxa4 14 Be2! b5 15 c3 Nbc6 16 Ba3 ± Darga-Wood, Bognor 1961.

### 12 exf6

12 0-0 cxd4 13 cxd4 Qxd2 14 Bxd2 fxe5 =.

### 12 ... gxf6

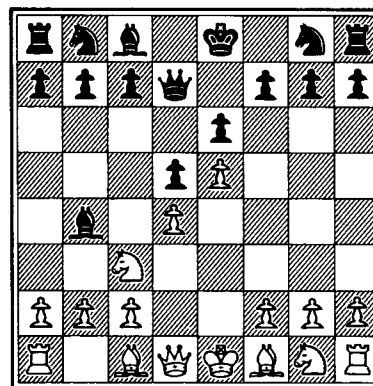
And Black has fair play, e.g. 13 0-0 cxd4 14 cxd4 Qxd2 and 15 ... e5, or 13 dxc5 bxc5 14 c4 Qxd2+ 15 Bxd2 d4.

This finishes our analysis of the Main Line Positional Winner. We have dealt with some rather dense material, but much of it covers irregular lines, i.e. ones requiring a basic familiarity only. We have also spent time on options for Black which are supplementary to the main recommended moves and not necessary for a repertoire. All in all, these ... Nbc6, ... Qa5 systems do not require a great deal of memorization; they do provide the player of Black a reliable, active method of play. Keep in mind that the long-term positional factors tend to favour the second player in the endgame.

If the variations outlined here are too loose or dangerous for the reader, he is urged to investigate Chapter 11, where a closed system is discussed.

## 11 Winawer: 4 e5 Qd7

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bb4 4 e5 Qd7



What if Black wishes to avoid the central confrontation that 4 ... c5 implies? Then he must deal with two major problems: his passive bishop on c8 and the threat of Qg4 (forcing kingside weaknesses). 4 ... Qd7 addresses both of these difficulties by preparing 5 ... f5 in response to 5 Qg4 and by helping

to control key light squares in anticipation of ... b6 and ... Ba6 or ... Bb7. This, and Black's determination to keep the position relatively closed, justifies a move which would otherwise be suspect on the grounds that it neglects space and development. Leading players have shown ongoing confidence in 4 ... Qd7 and 4 ... b6 (its companion move, to which it frequently transposes) ever since Bronstein and Petrosian first won beautiful victories with them in the late fifties and sixties. Other notable adherents of the ... Qd7/... b6 complex have been Andersson, Korchnoi, Hübner, Hort and Seirawan.

A preliminary word on move order seems appropriate. I myself have played 4 ... b6 instead of 4 ... Qd7, but as a matter of taste rather than from theoretical preference. Here I give

4 ... Qd7 because it requires much less learning (4 ... b6 5 Qg4 Bf8 opens up a Pandora's box, with practically endless variations and subvariations). Also, I know of no reason why 4 ... Qd7 should be in any way inferior to 4 ... b6; generally they transpose. Nevertheless, 4 ... b6 has been played more frequently in the last two or three years than the previously more popular queen move. For the record then: most of the lines below can be played with 4 ... b6 first as well as with 4 ... Qd7, and a player of Black who objects to the latter move can equally well employ the former.

From the diagram, White's critical moves are: 11.1 5 a3; 11.2 5 Qg4; 11.3 5 Bd2 11.4 5 Ne2.

He has plenty of options:

(a) 5 Nh3!? can transpose to 4 ... b6 5 Nh3 Qd7 after 5 ... b6, e.g. 6 Nf4 Nc6!? 7 Be2 Bb7 8 0-0 0-0-0 9 Na4 (9 Bg4!?!; 9 Ncxd5? Bf8! ♣) 9 ... Bf8 10 c3 f6 11 b4 Nh6 unclear, Ivanovic-Planinc, Yugoslavian Ch 1978. But 4 ... Qd7 allows other approaches too, e.g. 5 ... f6 with the idea 6 f4 b6; or perhaps 5 ... c5, when 6 a3 Bxc3+ 7 bxc3 f6 is interesting, and 6 Bd2 Ne7 probably does not improve

upon 4 ... c5 5 Bd2 Ne7 of Chapter 8.

(b) 5 h4 is more pointed, and insufficiently explored. It can likewise transpose to 4 ... b6 5 h4 Qd7, e.g. 5 ... b6!? 6 h5 Ba6 (or 6 ... h6 7 f4 Ne7 8 Nf3 Westerinen-Sahovic, Vurmala 1978; 8 ... Ba6 unclear) 7 Bxa6 Nxa6 8 Qg4 Bf8 unclear, or here perhaps 8 ... f5!? 9 Qe2 Bxc3+ 10 bxc3 Qa4.

Black can also play in the centre by 5 ... c5!? with a normal Winawer except for the odd trade-off of h4 for ...Qd7, which seems all right for Black after 6 Bd2 Ne7 (no improvement on 4 ... c5 5 Bd2) or 6 a3 and now 6 ... Bxc3+!? 7 bxc3 Qa4!? or (less risky) 6 ... Ba5(!), which is like the 4 ... c5 5 a3 Ba5 Winawer, but probably better for Black than that line in view of 6 b4 cxd4 7 Qg4!? f5!, or here 7 Nb5 Bc7 (7 ... Bb6!? is also not bad since after 8 Nd6+ Kf8, the queen on d7 defends f7) 8 f4 Ne7 and a coming ... Nf5 (e.g. after 9 Nf3 Nf5) will threaten ... Ng3-e4, which does not happen in the 4 ... c5 5 a3 Ba5 Winawer.

(c) 5 Bd3 b6 6 Qe2 tries to stop ... Ba6, but then 6 ... c5! (threatening ... c4 and ... cxd4) 7 Bb5 Nc6 of Saidy-Lorenz, Dresden 1969 already favours

Black, who intends to win the bishops by ... Ne7 and ... a6. Here 6 Nf3 Ba6 is the next note.

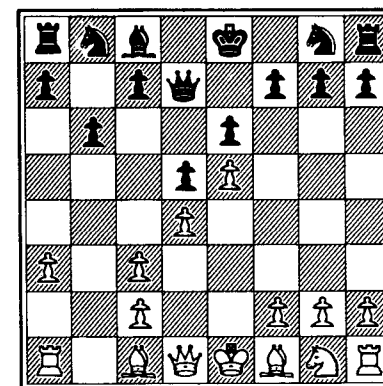
(d) 5 Nf3 b6 6 Bd2 is a common move order, transposing to 11.3 below. Also possible is 6 Bd3 Ba6 7 0-0 Bf8 intending ... c5 or (better?) 6 ... c5, e.g. 7 0-0!? c4!? 8 Be2 Na6 9 Ne1 b5 = Winiwarter-Haag, 1959.

(e) 5 f4 tries for the f5 break, but risks making White's light squares still weaker and his c1 bishop a prisoner. After 5 ... b6 (5 ... c5!?) 6 Nf3 Ne7, two samples of play are 7 a3 Bxc3+ 8 bxc3 Ba6 9 Bxa6 Nxa6 10 a4 Nb8 (Or 10 ... Nc6!? planning ... Na5 and an eventual ... c5) 11 0-0 (11 a5 Nbc6 =, or 11 ... Qc6!?) 11 ... Nbc6 12 Nd2 Na5 13 Qf3 Rc8 14 Ba3 c5 =; and 7 Bd3 Ba6 8 0-0 h5!? 9 Bxa6 Nxa6 10 Qd3 Nb8 11 Nh4 (else ... Nf5) 11 ... Bxc3!? (11 ... Nbc6) 12 bxc3 (12 Qxc3 looks more natural) 12 ... g6 13 f5 (!? But otherwise White's pawn structure is miserable) 13 ... exf5 14 Bg5 Nbc6 15 Bf6 Rf8 16 Nf3 Na5?! (Unnecessary; 16 ... 0-0-0!) 17 e6! fxe6 18 Ne5 Rxf6! 19 Nxd7 Kxd7 Panchenko-Gofstein, Vilnius 1970. Despite a nominal material disadvantage (two pieces and two pawns for the queen),

White's terrible pawn structure and Black's outpost on c4 guarantee him at least equal chances.

## 11.1

5 a3            Bxc3+  
6 bxc3         b6



Long a controversial position. White has the usual king-side attacking chances, but these are severely restricted by Black's intended ... Ba6, which will eliminate White's king's bishop and establish control over c4. White therefore turns to one of two strategies: attack on the dark squares, e.g. after Qg4 (forcing ... f5, when counterplay by ... f6 is no longer a threat); or attack on the queenside, e.g. by a4-a5 and possibly c4. Black will in

any case try to exploit his hold on the light squares (... Qd7!) and work for the best possible outposts for his minor pieces (e.g. c4 and f5 for his knights) to exploit White's dubious queen's bishop.

There are three main branches: 11.11 7 Qg4; 11.12 7 Nh3; 11.13 7 a4.

The only other idea that makes sense is 7 Bd3 Ba6 8 Nf3 (or 7 Nf3 Ba6 8 Bd3; for 8 Nh3, see 11.12 below), when one response would be 8 ... Qa4!?, e.g. 9 0-0 Ne7 10 Ng5 Bxd3 11 cxd3 (11 Qxd3 h6 12 Nh3 Nbc6 with a fine game) 11 ... Qxd1 12 Rxd1 Nbc6 12 a4 Na5 13 Ba3 h6 14 Nf3 Nec6 15 Rac1 0-0-0 (=). Another approach was 8 ... Ne7 9 0-0 c5 10 dxc5 bxc5 11 Bxa6 Nxa6 12 Qe2 Qc6!? (12 ... Qa4! looks good) 13 c4 d4 14 Bb2 Rb8!? (Or 14 ... 0-0 =, e.g. 15 c3 dxc3 16 Bxc3 Rad8 17 Rfd1 Qa4!) 15 Rab1 0-0 16 c3 d3!? 17 Qxd3 Rfd8 18 Qe2 Rd7 19 Rfd1 Rbd8 20 Rxd7 Qxd7 with easy equality, Svensson-Witmanovicz, Skopje 1972.

### 11.11

7 Qg4 f5  
8 Qg3

Probably best. Giving Black too much lead in development is 8 exf6 Nxf6, e.g. 9 Qh3 0-0 10 Nf3 Grigorian-Demirkhennian, Baku 1966, but now Black should have played 10 ... Qa4(!) threatening ... e5 as well as capture on c2, one line going 11 Ne5 Qxc2 12 Bd2 Ne4 13 Rd1? Qxd1+!

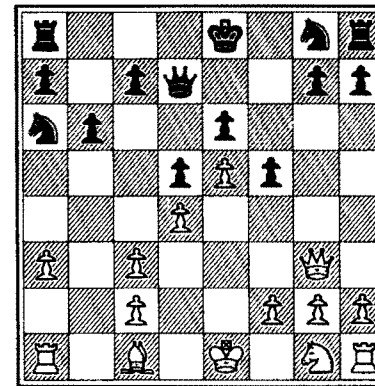
Theory does not say much about 8 Qh5+, but after 8 ... Qf7 9 Qf3 Ne7 10 h4 of Gligoric-Smederevac, Belgrade 1961, 10 ... Ba6! looks better than 10 ... Bb7, e.g. 11 Bxa6 Nxa6 12 a4 Nb8 13 a5 Nbc6 =. More interesting is 8 ... g6(!) 9 Qd1 and now as Moles and Wicker point out, 9 ... Ba6! resembles the play which follows in the text as well as the play in 11.12 and 11.13 below. Black actually gets an extra tempo in several instances. Worth noting too is that 8 ... g6 9 Qd1 Nc6!? 10 h4 ("!") 10 ... h6 11 g4 ("!") Nge7 12 h5 ("±") of Kavalek-Csom, Szombathely 1966, does not really impress after 12 ... g5 13 f4 gxf4 14 Bxf4 fxf4! 15 Qxg4 Nf5 and Black is okay, e.g. 16 Bd3 Nce7.

8 ... Ba6

A good alternate plan is simply ... Nc6 and ... Bb7 aiming for ... Na5-c4, e.g. 8 ...

Nc6 9 Nh3 Bb7 10 Nf4 0-0-0 11 a4 Tolush-Troianescu, 1958, and here 11 ... Na5 or 11 ... Kb8 was easier than 11 ... g6 12 Qh4 Qf7 13 Ba3 h6 14 Bd3, as played, although then 14 ... Rh7! would be equal.

9 Bxa6 Nxa6



10 Ne2(!)

The toughest move. The options show what Black is up to, however:

(a) 10 Qd3?! Qa4! 11 Nf3 Ne7 12 Ng5 Kd7 (a typical French idea) 13 h4 Nb8 14 Rg1 Nbc6 15 g4 Na5 16 Rb1 Nc4 ♣/♠ Atkinson-Cooke, England 1965.

(b) 10 h4!? 0-0-0 11 Ne2 Nb8 (the standard manoeuvre) 12 h5 Nc6 13 Bg5? (too slow) 13 ... Re8 14 Nf4 Na5 ♣/♠ Dura-sevic-Taimanov, USSR-Yugoslavia 1964.

(c) 10 a4 Nb8 11 a5!? (11 Ne2 transposes to 10 Ne2) 11 ... Nc6 12 axb6 cxb6 13 Ne2 Panchenko-Lebrede, Lublin 1977, and here 13 ... 0-0-0 14 Nf4 g6 intending ... Nge7 and ... Rdg8 with ... h6 etc., or at some point ... Na5-c4 was equal.

10 ... Nb8(!)

Thought to be dubious, but the examples have been misleading. 10 ... 0-0-0 11 a4 Kb7 12 Nf4! or here 11 ... Nb8 12 Qd3 Nc6 13 Bg5! and 10 ... Kf7 11 a4 are difficult for Black.

11 Nf4

11 a4 is not dangerous after 11 ... Nc6 12 Ba3 (12 0-0 Na5 13 Nf4 0-0-0 14 Ba3 g6 — or 14 ... Nc4 — 15 Bb4 Nc4 = Richter-Zagorovsky, correes 1965-8) 12 ... Na5 13 0-0 Medina-Portisch, Beverwijk 1965; and 13 ... 0-0-0 = was simplest, as after 13 ... Nc4 14 Nf4 Nh6!? 15 Nh5 Rg8 16 Bcl 0-0-0, 17 Bxh6 would have been unclear.

The text threatens 12 Nxe6 Qxe6 13 Qxg7.

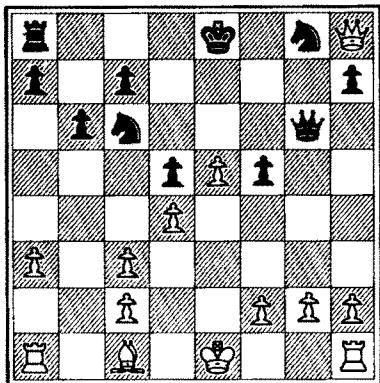
11 ... Nc6!

Anyway! 11 ... g6!? 12 h4 and 11 ... Qf7? 12 Nxe6! are much worse.

12 Nxe6!?

The only critical move. 12 0-0 0-0-0 13 a4 Na5 14 Ba3 of Samarian-Bengstrom, corres 1944/5, should be harmless after 14 ... Nc4!, so that after 15 Bb4 comes 15 ... a5 (Moles and Wicker). This is an improvement upon 14 ... Qf7?! 15 Bb4 Nc4 16 a5 Rd7 17 Ra4!, when 17 ... Nh6 and ... Rg8 was best.

12 ... Qxe6  
13 Qxg7 Qg6  
14 Qxh8



A remarkable position where Black has four ways to try to win material or trap Black's queen. 14 ... Qxg2? 15 Rf1 0-0-0 16 Qxh7 or Gaprindashvili-Ranniku, USSR 1968, was not good enough, and 14 ... Nd8 15 e6! creates an escape on e5, as Moles points out, giving 15 ... Nf7!? 16 exf7+ Kxf7 17

0-0 Re8 18 Bg5! Nh6 19 Qf6+ etc. as a possible line.

Furthermore, Moles' suggestion of 14 ... Ke7!? does not work, I think, if only because of some brilliant lines, e.g. 15 h4 Ke6 16 h5 Qxg2 and now instead of Moles' 17 Rf1 Qe4+, the clever 17 Rh4! may win, e.g. 17 ... f4!? 18 Qxh7 Qg1+ 19 Ke2 f3+ 20 Kxf3 Rf8+ 21 Rf4 Rxf4+ 22 Bxf4! 23 Qxg8+ and mates.

But all is not lost! In fact, after 14 ... 0-0-0(!), White may be in grave trouble. Note first that 15 h4 Qxg2 16 Rf1 Qe4+ is too slow now, due to 17 Be3 f4 or 17 Kd1 Nxd4! etc.

So Moles gives 15 Be3! "followed by the rapid advance of the h-pawn appears to solve the problem". Here, however, Black has an ingenious move, 15 ... Rd7!!. This threatens 16 ... h5 and 17 ... Rh7, and the obvious reply 16 e6 does not succeed due to 16 ... Rd8! when White's queen lacks f6, so 17 Bg5 is forced (Otherwise 17 ... Nge7 or 17 ... Nf6 follows), but then 17 ... Qxg5 18 Qxh7 Qxg2 19 0-0-0 Nge7 ♣ (and 16 ... Qxe6 17 0-0 Qg6 may also suffice).

What else can White do? 16 Bh6 Nd8! or 16 0-0-0 h5 lose, and 16 h4 h5 17 Rh3 f4! 18 Bxf4 Rh7 19 Rg3 Qe4+ 20 Re3

Qxe3+ ♣ does not give White enough for his piece down, since he cannot get his kingside pawns rolling.

Barring future improvements, then, 7 Qg4 f5 8 Qg3 looks satisfactory for Black provided he chooses ... Nb8 on the 10th move of the main line.

## 11.12

### 7 Nh3

Leaving a path for the queen to g4 open and in some cases intending Nf4-h5 (this would be the response to 7 ... Ne7). In return, Black gets time to develop his forces.

7 ... Ba6  
8 Bxa6

8 Bd3!? is interesting, and recommended by *ECO*, but Black has no lack of ideas. Maric suggests 8 ... Bxd3 9 cxd3 Nc6 intending ... 0-0-0, ... Kb7, ... Na5 and ... c5 (with ... Rc8 first, presumably). If 10 Nf4, 10 ... Ne7, to meet 11 Nh5 with 11 ... Rg8 should be interpolated. A good alternative to this seems just 8 ... Ne7(!), and now 9 Qg4 Ng6 = is a mediocre (for White) version of the old 4 ... Ne7 5 a3 Bxc3+ 6 bxc3 b6 7 Qg4 Ng6 line, whereas 9 a4 (9

Nf4 Qa4!? or 9 ... Ng6) 9 ... Bxd3 (9 ... Bc4!?) 10 cxd3 Nbc6 gives Black an extra ... Ne7 for the less useful a4 in comparison to 8 ... Bxd3.

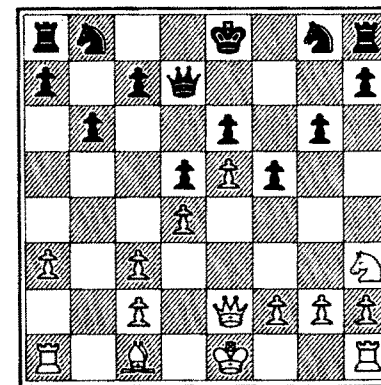
8 ... Nxa6  
9 Qg4

9 Qd3?! Qa4! ♣.

9 ... f5  
10 Qh5+ g6  
11 Qe2

11 Qh4 h6 12 g4 Qf7! 13 Rg1 Nb8 worked out nicely for Black in Zuidema-T. Timman, Dutch Ch 1972, after 14 gxf5 Qxf5 15 Nf4 g5! 16 Qh5+ Kd7 17 Ne2 Nbc6(♣) 18 Rxcg5? hxg5 19 Qxh8 Qf3! 20 Kf1 Rf8 with a winning attack.

11 ... Nb8



12 c4!

Trying to prevent Black from consolidating. 12 0-0 Nc6 13 a4

(13 c4!? Nxd4 14 Qd3 dxc4 15 Qxc4 c5 did not give White enough for his pawn in Bogdanovic–Maric, Yugoslavia 1974) 13 ... Na5 14 Rd1 Nc4 15 Rd3 h6 16 Nf4!? Qf7 17 Rh3 g5 18 Nh5 0–0–0 19 a5 Kb8! ♣ Bednarski–Andersson, Lund 1972; Black has everything in such a position: a knight on c4, king safety, and a ready-made attack after ... f4 and ... Ne7.

12 ... Nc6  
13 Bb2

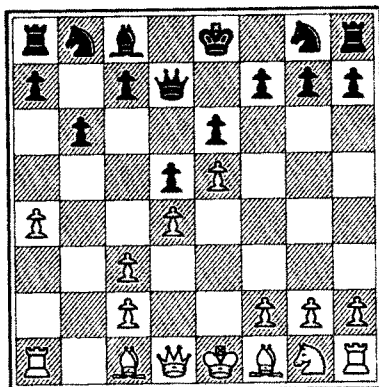
Best. 13 cxd5? Qxd5 is awful, and 13 c3 Nge7 (or 13 ... dxc4 14 Qxc4 Na5 ♣ Bednarski) has led to Black advantage in two games: 14 cxd5 (14 Bg5!? dxc4 15 Bxe7 Nxe7 16 Qxc4 Qd5! 17 Qxd5 Nxd5 18 c4 Ne7 19 Ng5 Kd7! 20 f4 h6 21 Nf3 g5! ♣ Gibbs–Despotovic, *corres* 1974–76, since 22 fxf5 hxg5 23 Nxf5 Rdg8 etc. favours Black) 14 ... Nxd5 15 Bb2 b5! 16 Qxb5 Rb8 17 Qe2 Na5 18 0–0 Qc6 19 a4 Qc4 ♣ Ciocaltea–Hecht, Budapest 1973. The light squares are key again.

13 Bb2 is Hecht's suggested improvement. He gives 13 ... dxc4 14 Qxc4 Nge7 15 Qd3 Rd8 16 Rd1 Na5 17 Bc3 (looks ±, since 17 ... Qa4? fails to 18 Ng5!). Here *ECO's* 16 ... b5!? is better and, one move earlier,

15 ... b5!? (reserving ... Rb8) looks at least =. Thus 7 Nh3 is harmless at best.

## 11.13

7 a4



White still plans Qg4, but he wants the possibility of a5 and/or Ba3 at his disposal.

7 ... Ba6

Here again 7 ... Ne7 is reasonable, since 8 Qg4 Ng6 leaves White's a4 a rather poor trade for the useful ... Qd7.

8 Bxa6 Nxa6  
9 Qg4

What else? 9 Nf3 lets Black develop unhindered, e.g. 9 ... Ne7 10 Nh4!? Nb8 11 0–0 Nbc6 12 f4 g6 13 g4?! 0–0–0 14 a5!?

Nxa5 ♣ Westerinen–Taimanov, Leningrad 1967. Note White's hurry to do something before Black established a total bind on the queenside.

9 ... f5  
10 Qh5+

10 Qg3 is 11.11 again.

10 ... g6  
11 Qe2 Nb8  
12 h4

Again trying to mix it up.

(a) 12 Nf3 is a slow approach which does very little after 12 ... Nc6, e.g. 13 c4 Na5 (or 13 ... dxc4 14 Qxc4 h6 15 0–0 Nge7 16 Bb2 g5 17 Rfd1 g4! Tringov–Spiridinov, Varna 1973) 14 cxd5 Qxd5 15 0–0 h6 16 Bd2 Nc4 with control of key squares and ... g5 to come, Smailbegovic–Ivkov, Sarajevo 1962.

(b) 12 a5!? Nc6 13 axb6 cxb6 14 Ba3 Nh6(!) 15 h4 Nf7 guards d6 and g5, with ... 0–0–0 to come, followed by a kingside advance.

12 ... h6  
13 Nh3 Nc6  
14 Nf4 Nge7

A key position for 7 a4. After 15 Ba3!? Rg8 16 Bb4?! (16 g4 Szabo; compare 15 g4), 16 ... Nxb4 17 cxb4 a5! 18 b5 Rc8 intending ... c6 gave Black a

little edge in Velimirovic–Szabo, Amsterdam 1976.

15 g4! presses harder. Then Spassky–Petrosian, USSR 1974, continued 15 ... Rg8 16 Rg1 (Kotov's 16 Nd3! is a problem, but White may not have anything better than repetition by 17 Nf4 after 16 ... Rh8, as 17 h5 g5 18 f4 gxf4 looks fine for Black) 16 ... 0–0–0 17 a5!? (“±” *ECO*, incorrectly) 17 ... fxf4 (or 17 ... Kb8!?!; even after 18 axb6 cxb6 19 Ba3 fxf4 20 Bd6+ Ka8 or 19 gxf5 gxf5, White has no attack) 18 Nd3 (18 Qxg4 Nf5 19 h5 Kotov; 19 ... g5 20 Nd3 Nxa5 Moles. Or here 19 Nxf6? h5! 20 Qxh5 Qf7 etc.) 18 ... h5! 19 Nc5 bxc5 20 Qa6+ Kb8 21 Rb1+ Nb4 22 cxb4 Qc6! ♣.

Strange but playable was (15 g4:) 15 ... 0–0–0 16 gxf5 Nxf5!?! of Razuvayev–Lebre-do, Cienfuegos 1975, which continued 17 Nxf6 Rhg8 18 h5 Na5 19 Qb5 (“?!”) Qxb5 20 axb5 c6 “with compensation” (Moles). The outside passed pawn and better minor pieces give Black active play. Although this game could be ignored due to White's apparently weak 19th, it is difficult to improve in view of the powerful Black knights and White's crippled a- and c-pawns (e.g. Where does the bishop go?).

To all appearances, the main line with 5 a3 grants Black equal play.

## 11.2

### 5 Qg4

The move 4 ... Qd7 was designed to meet.

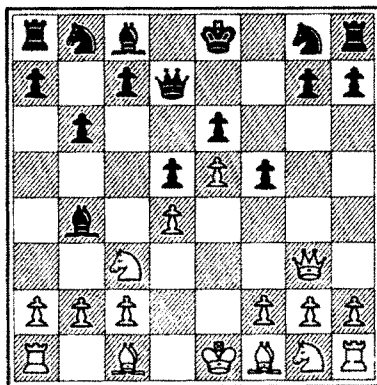
5 ... f5

5 ... Bf8 will usually transpose to 4 ... b6 5 Qg4 Bf8, which is reasonable but not analysed here.

### 6 Qg3

6 Qh5+ g6 (or 6 ... Qf7 =) 7 Qf3 can be met by 7 ... b6 8 a3 Bf8 9 h4 h6 unclear, e.g. 10 Nh3 c5 11 Bb5 Nbc6 12 Nf4 Nge7 13 Be3 cxd4 14 Bxd4 a6 15 Bxc6 Nxc6 16 0-0-0 Rg8.

6 ... b6



## 7 Bd2

Several alternatives:

(a) 7 h4 Bb7!? (or 7 ... Ba6 =) 8 Bd3!? Nc6 9 Ne2 0-0-0 10 Bd2 Nh6! 11 a3?! (11 0-0-0 =) 11 ... Be7! 12 Bb5 Rdg8 13 Qd3 Nf7 (A typical Black build-up on the kingside) 14 0-0-0 Kb8 15 Nf4 Qc8! 16 Nce2 Ncd8! 17 Qb3 c6 18 Bd3 c5 19 dxc5 Bxc5 ♣ Olafsson-Petrosian, Bled 1961.

(b) 7 Ne2 Ba6 8 a3 Bf8 9 h4 c5!? (or 9 ... Nc6 = intending ... 0-0-0) 10 Be3 Nc6 11 Rd1 Blatny-Fabian, Czechoslovakian Ch 1962; 11 ... 0-0-0 = or 11 ... Rc8!?

(c) 7 a3 Bxc3+!? (7 ... Bf8 is okay, e.g. 8 Nh3 Ba6 9 Bxa6 Nxa6 10 Qd3 Nb8 11 Ne2 Ne7 12 Nef4 h6!? = Medyanikova-Ostrovskaya, Moscow 1972; or 8 Nf3 Ba6 9 Bxa6 Nxa6 10 h4 0-0-0 11 b4 Nh6 12 b5 Nb8 = Arlauskas-Nyman, *corres* 1963) 8 Qxc3 (8 bxc3 Ba6 = is 11.11 above) 8 ... Ba6 9 Bxa6 Nxa6 10 Ne2 Ne7 = (Pachman); probably true, since White's queen's bishop is nothing special and Black has the natural break ... c5.

(d) 7 Nh3 Nc6!? (or 7 ... Ba6 =) 8 Bb5 Bb7 9 a3 Bf8 10 Ne2 a6 11 Bd3 0-0-0 12 0-0 h6 13 f4 Kb8 = (at least) Izvosnikov-Demin, Sevastopol 1976.

Black's queenside is perfectly secure and attack on the other wing can be prepared almost at leisure.

(e) 7 Nf3 Ba6 8 Bxa6 Nxa6 9 0-0 and here 9 ... Bxc3!? 10 bxc3 Nb8 is interesting, whereas 9 ... 0-0-0 10 Ne2 Bf8 has been tried, with approximate equality.

7 ... Ba6  
8 Bxa6 Nxa6  
9 0-0-0

An instructive game went 9 Nge2 Bf8!? 10 h4 Nb4! 11 0-0-0 0-0-0 12 Qh3 c5 13 g4?! fxg4 14 Qxg4 Nc6 15 dxc5 Bxc5 ♣ Tringov-Bronstein, Amsterdam 1964.

9 ... 0-0-0

Equal. For example, after 10 h4 of Klovan-Listengarten, Moscow 1967, Moles and Wicker's 10 ... Nh6(!) intending ... Rdg8 and ... Nf7 is satisfactory, since after 11 Bxh6 gxf6, the dark-squared bishop can defend f6 while ... Kb7 and ... c5 strikes back on the queenside.

## 11.3

### 5 Bd2

This unambitious move seems to be the new main line

after 4 ... Qd7. White renounces any claim to a large advantage, but hopes to consolidate and use his extra space on the kingside.

5 ... b6  
6 Nf3

The important move, although a lot of others have been tried:

(a) 6 Nb5 Bf8 7 Nf3 c5!?, or 7 ... Ba6 8 a4 c6 9 Na3 Bxf1 10 Kxf1 Ne7 11 c3 c5 12 b4 Nbc6! 13 g3 Ng6 14 Nc2 Be7 15 h4 h5 16 Kg2 f6!? with complications, Mecking-Andersson, Hastings 1971/2.

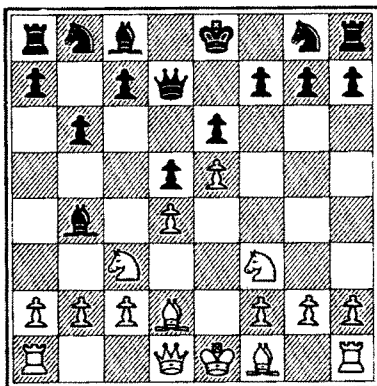
(b) 6 Nh3 Nc6 hits the d-pawn: 7 a3 Bf8 8 Be3 Bb7 (=; a tempo up on a normal ... Nc6, ... Bb7 position) 9 f4!? h5 10 Be2 g6 11 0-0 Nh6 = Dementiev-Donchenko, USSR Ch 1971.

(c) 6 a3 Bf8 7 Nf3 Ne7 (! A little temporizing, tempting White's king's bishop out before ... Ba6) 8 Bd3 Ba6 9 Bxa6 (9 0-0 c5 =) 9 ... Nxa6 10 Qe2 Nb8 11 Nd1 c5 12 dxc5 bxc5 13 c4 Nbc6 14 0-0 Rb8 15 Rb1 Nf5! 16 cxd5 Qxd5 17 Nc3 Nfd4 18 Nxd4 Qxd4 = Hartston-Andersson, Hastings 1971/2.

(d) 6 Qg4 f5 (6 ... Bf8) 7 Qh5+ g6 8 Qf3 Ba6 9 Bxa6 Nxa6 10 Nge2 Bf8 = Petrusiak-Dobosz, Poland 1973.

(e) 6 Nce2 Bf8 (or 6 ... Bxd2+ 7 Qxd2 Ba6 8 Nf3 Nc6 9 g3 Nge7 = followed by ... Nf5 ... h5, ... 0-0-0, and ... f6, Konstantinopolsky-Aratovsky, *corres* 1957) 7 a4!? a5 (7 ... Ba6!?) 8 f4 Ba6 9 Nf3 h5 (9 ... Ne7) 10 f5!? exf5 11 Nf4 Bxf1 12 Rxf1 Nc6 (with ... Nd8-e6 in mind), about equal, Sahovic-Forintos, Mladenovac 1975.

(f) 6 f4 as usual weakens the light squares, e.g. 6 ... Ba6 7 Bxa6 Nxa6 8 Nf3 Nh6 9 Ne2 Nf5 = Puc-Maric, Yugoslavia 1957, or 6 ... Ne7 7 Qg4 Nf5 = (Moles).



6 ... Ne7

An interesting juncture. The text has a fundamental logic, i.e. that now White must make a move which, in the case of 7 Bd3 Ba6 (7 ... a5!?) or 7 a3

Bxc3, may lead to positions a tempo up on other lines. An obvious drawback to 6 ... Ne7 is that retreat to f8 is cut off for Black's bishop, but in view of the line 4 ... Ne7 5 Nf3 b6 6 Bd2 Bxc3!? 7 Bxc3 a5, played with success by e.g. Lein and Seirawan, Black need not be afraid here.

6 ... Bf8!? has been the rage for a few years now, but only Petrosian seems able to handle it! Best after 7 Be2 Ba6 8 0-0 looks 8 ... c5 (8 ... Ne7 9 Bxa6 Nxa6 10 Ne2! ± is only one good line), but probably White has some edge. Interesting too is 7 Bd3 Ba6 8 Qe2 (±), an idea of Stean's, or here 7 ... c5 8 dxc5 bxc5 9 0-0 and White's 5 extra tempi in development (!) may count for something even with this pawn structure.

Theoretically at least, 6 ... Nc6 is as good as anything, when 7 a3 Bf8 8 b4 Bb7 9 Bd3, as given by *ECO*, should be met by 9 ... 0-0-0 and an early ... f6, perhaps following ... Nge7-f5 and ... h5. It is not easy for White to break through on the queenside, as shown by some old Bronstein and Petrosian games.

7 a3

7 h4!? succeeded in Sigurjonsson-Matsumado, Buenos

Aires 1978, after 7 ... Ba6 8 Bxa6 Nxa6 9 h5 h6 10 Qe2 ±; yet after 7 ... h5, Black has been helped at least as much as White, since he wants to play ... Nf5 anyway.

Nor does White achieve much by 7 Nb5 Bxd2+ 8 Qxd2 a6 9 Na3 (9 Nc3 a5 = Korchnoi) 9 ... a5 10 Nb5 Ba6 11 a4 Nbc6 (=) 12 Bd3 h6! 13 c3 0-0 (different!) 14 Bb1 f6 15 exf6 (15 Qd3 fxe5!) 15 ... Rxf6 16 Qc2 Ng6 17 0-0 Raf8 ♣ West-erinen-Korchnoi, Palma de Mallorca 1968.

Finally, 7 Ne2 Bxd2+ 8 Qxd2 Ba6 equalizes, e.g. 9 Nf4 Bxf1 10 Rxf1 c5 11 0-0-0 Nbc6 = Rhodin-Platz, 1957; or 9 h4 Nbc6!? (9 ... h5) 10 h5 0-0-0!? (10 ... h6) 11 h6 gxh6 12 Rxh6?! (12 Nf4) 12 ... Nf5 13 Rh5 Rdg8 14 0-0-0 f6! ♣ Levine-Thompson, St. Paul 1982; or 9 a4 Nbc6 planning 10 b4 Bc4.

7 ... Bxc3  
8 Bxc3 a5

Or just 8 ... Ba6 =. 8 ... a5 was Harandi-Vaganian, Rio de Janeiro 1979, which went 9 a4 Nf5 10 Bd3 Ba6 11 0-0 Bxd3 12 Qxd3 h5 13 Bd2 and now 13 ... Nbc6 is safer than 13 ... c5!? 14 dxc5! bxc5 15 Qb5! c4! 16 Bxa5 Nc6, which would have been unclear after 17 Bc3 in-

stead of 17 Bb6?! 0-0 with mating threats.

## 11.4

5 Ne2

A line advocated by Craig Pritchett, who has shown that the old solution 5 ... b6 6 a3 Bxc3+(?) 7 Nxc3 Ne7 is lacking after 8 Qg4!

5 ... b6  
6 a3

6 Nf4 is logically met by 6 ... c5, e.g. 7 a3 Bxc3+ 8 bxc3 Ba6 9 Bxa6 Nxa6 10 Qg4 g6 11 h4? (11 a4 cxd4!; 11 0-0) 11 ... h5 12 Qe2 Qa4 ♣ West-erinen-U. Geller, Netanya 1971.

6 ... Bf8!

Better than 6 ... Bxc3+, as given in the note to 5 Ne2. Black prepares ... Bb7 and ... Nc6, or ... c5 if allowed.

7 g3

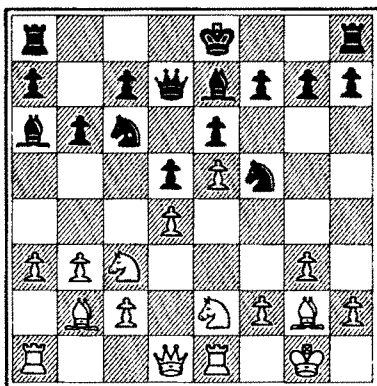
R. Byrne-Andersson, Hastings 1971/2, saw the weaker 7 Be3!? Ba6 8 g4? c5! 9 Bg2 Nc6 ♣.

7 ... Ba6

Most active. The ... Nc6, ... Bb7 plan should also be considered; with White's bishop off

the f1–a6 diagonal, queenside attack could be even less effective.

8 Bg2	Ne7
9 0–0	Nbc6
10 Re1!	Nf5
11 b3	Be7
12 Bb2	



The battle lines are drawn, with White intending Qd2 and Nd1–e3 or Na2–b4 (Pritchett). In Pritchett–Lieb, West Berlin 1980, Black played 12 ... g5!? 13 Qd2 Na5!? and got the worst of things; 13 ... g4 and 13 ... h5

are possible improvements (Pritchett).

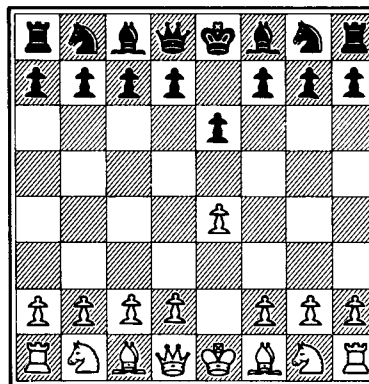
More appropriate than 12 ... g5!?, however, seems simple development aiming for ... f6, e.g. 12 ... 0–0 (12 ... 0–0–0 13 Na2!? f6 14 Nb4 Bb7 may be okay too) 13 Qd2 (13 Nf4!? would intend 13 ... f6? 14 Nxe6 or 13 ... Nfxd4 14 Ncxd5 exd5 15 Bxd4 Nxd4 16 Qxd4. 13 ... Rad8 planning ... Nfxd4 or ... f6 as appropriate would be correct) 13 ... Rad8 14 Nd1!? (Now 14 Nf4 Nfxd4 15 Ncxd5 Nf5! 16 Nxe7+ Qxe7 and ... Ncd4 looks at least =) 14 ... f6 15 Ne3 (15 exf6 Bxf6; 15 f4? Bxe2! followed by 16 ... Ncxd4) 15 ... fxe5 16 dxe5, and now 16 ... Bc5 or 16 ... Kh8 looks reasonable. This is an experimental variation which deserves a closer look.

We have just scratched the surface of 4 ... Qd7, but theory has not advanced much beyond surface-scratching anyway. All the better for the player who might wish to use it as a part of his repertoire.

## 12

### Second Move Odds and Ends

1 e4 e6



A nice aspect of the French Defence is that Black need not rack his brains over moves other than 2 d4, possibly excepting 2 d3 or 2 Nf3. Indeed, some masters who play the French have never bothered to look at the theory of other second moves, assuming (not too inaccurately) that the positions pretty much play themselves. After all, if White does

not establish himself in the centre, Black intends not just ... d5, but in some cases ... c5 with good variations of the Sicilian Defence. Nevertheless, an introductory look at White's other second moves is desirable, so as to clarify the kind of play which follows should White "do nothing". As the French is essentially a counter-attacking defence, and these are non-confrontational options, one should expect the interesting aspects of the game to develop only slowly, often past the opening stage proper. These are the only lines of the book, therefore, for which I will outline one rather than two methods of defence for Black.

We look at: 12.1 2 e5; 12.2 2 g3; 12.3 2 b3; 12.4 2 Qe2; 12.5 2 Nf3.

Others are of less interest:

(a) 2 Ne2 d5 3 exd5 exd5 4 Ng3 (for 4 d4, compare the Ex-

change Variation of Chapter 2)  
 4 ... Nf6 (4 ... Qh4!? ECO;  
 4 ... c5! is also logical) 5 d4 Bd6  
 (5 ... c5!?) 6 Bd3 0-0 7 0-0  
 Re8 = Tartakower–Fine,  
 Kemerer 1937.

(b) 2 Nc3 d5 (or 2 ... c5 =) 3  
 f4!? (For 3 Nf3, see 12.5 below)  
 3 ... dxe4 4 Nxe4 and 4 ... Nf6  
 5 Nxf6+ Qxf6 = or 4 ... Nbd7  
 intending ... Nf6 is fully satis-  
 factory, White's pawn on f4  
 being somewhat of a liability.

(c) 2 c4 d5 (or 2 ... c5 with a  
 Sicilian) has long been consid-  
 ered harmless since White al-  
 ready has to worry about a  
 possible isolated queen's pawn.  
 Play can go 3 cxd5 cxd5 4 exd5  
 (4 Qa4+ Bd7! 5 Qb3 Nc6! 6  
 Qxd5 Nf6 7 Qc4 Be6 8 Qa4 Bc5  
 ♣ ECO, or here 6 exd5 Nd4 7  
 Qe3+ Qe7; 4 ... Nd7 and 4 ...  
 Qd7 are also okay) 4 ... Nf6 5  
 Bb5+ (5 Qa4+ Nbd7 6 Nc3  
 Be7 7 d4 0-0 ♣; 5 Bc4 Nxd5 6  
 Qb3!? Qe7+! 7 Ne2 Nb6 ♣  
 Nimzowitsch–Rubinstein, Han-  
 over 1926) 5 ... Nbd7 6 Nc3  
 Be7 7 Nge2 (7 Qf3!? 0-0 8  
 Bxd7 Qxd7 9 Nge2 Rd8 10 Nf4  
 Bd6 = Keres) 7 ... 0-0 8 0-0 a6  
 9 Bxd7 (9 Bc4 b5 and ... Bb7)  
 9 ... Qxd7 10 Nf4 b5 11 Qf3  
 Bb7 12 a3 a5! ♣ Grob–Johner,  
 Zurich 1941. Two bishops,  
 development, and attack.

(d) 2 f4 d5 (or 2 ... c5 =) 3 e5  
 c5 4 Nf3 Nc6 5 c3 (5 c4 d4 6 d3

Nh6! = Laroche–Morphy,  
 Paris 1859) 5 ... d4 (or 5 ...  
 Nh6 =) 6 d3 Nh6 7 Nbd2 Qa5!?  
 (7 ... Nf5!) 8 Be2 Nf5 9 0-0  
 Be7! = (9 ... Ne3 10 Nc4!)  
 Weiss–Maroczy, Budapest  
 1895.

## 12.1

### 2 e5

Of historical interest only,  
 this time-consuming advance  
 was frequently used in the 19th  
 century, particularly by Stein-  
 itz.

### 2 ... c5

Positionally consistent (cut-  
 ting off defence of the e-pawn),  
 although of course 2 ... d6 3  
 exd6 Bxd6 4 d4 is also equal,  
 e.g. 4 ... Nc6 5 Nf3 Nge7 6 Bd3  
 e5 = Seyboth–Lebedev, St.  
 Petersburg 1895.

### 3 f4 Nc6 4 Nf3 Nh6

Or 4 ... d6 =. The text was  
 played in Steinitz–Mason,  
 Vienna 1882. After 5 g3 b6!? 6  
 Bg2 Nf5 7 c3 Rb8 8 Qe2 Bb7  
 Black had equality, and of  
 course 5 ... Nf5 6 Bg2 d6 was  
 also satisfactory.

## 12.2

### 2 g3 d5

2 ... c5 can transpose to a  
 King's Indian Attack if White  
 plays d3 and Ngf3 (see Chapter  
 3), or to a Closed Sicilian if  
 White chooses Nc3 or, finally,  
 to some kind of reverse Dutch  
 ("Big Clamp" — Day) if White  
 plays c3 with f4. None of these  
 systems should discourage a  
 defender, and 2 ... c5 is a good  
 alternative to the text.

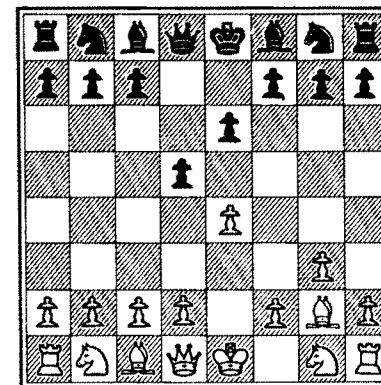
### 3 Bg2

3 Nc3 dxe4 4 Nxe4 Nf6 (for  
 4 ... Bd7!? 5 Bg2? Bc6! ♣, see  
 3 Bg2 dxe4 4 Nc3 Bd7 5 Nxe4.  
 But 5 Nf3 Bc6 6 Qe2 = im-  
 proves) 5 Nxf6+ Qxf6 6 Bg2  
 Bc5 7 Qf3!? Qe7 8 Ne2 e5 9 0-0  
 0-0 10 d3 Nc6 11 Be3 Be6 ♣  
 Suttles–Uhlmann, Palma de  
 Mallorca 1970. A good example  
 of how White's slow strategy  
 can lose the centre for him.

(see following diagram)

### 3 ... Nf6!?

Why not just 3 ... c5? Black  
 would intend ... Nc6 and  
 ... Nf6, whereas White gets  
 nothing from 4 exd5 exd5 5 Nc3  
 Nf6 or here 5 d4 cxd4 6 Qxd4  
 Nf6.



A third alternative, 3 ...  
 dxe4, breaks up the centre and  
 thus equalizes, but is a little  
 dull: 4 Nc3 (4 Bxe4?! Nf6 5 Bg2  
 Nc6!?) Tartakower–Colle,  
 Kecskemet 1927, or here  
 5 ... c5 or even 5 ... e5, to con-  
 trol d4) 4 ... Bd7! 5 d3! (5  
 Nxe4? Bc6! 6 f3 — otherwise  
 6 ... f5 — 6 ... e5 7 Ne2 f5 8  
 Nf2 Bc5 9 Nd3 Bd6 10 0-0 Nf6  
 ♣ Riumin–Rauzer, USSR Ch  
 1929; 5 Bxe4 Bc6, at least  
 equal) 5 ... Bc6 6 dxe4 Qxd1+  
 7 Nxd1 Nf6 8 f3 Bb4+ 9 Kf2 =  
 (ECO).

### 4 e5

4 Nc3 d4 5 Nb1 d3! (or  
 5 ... e5) 6 cxd3 Nc6 7 Ne2 e5 ♣  
 Tartakower–Bogoljubov, San  
 Remo 1930.

### 4 ... Nfd7 5 d4

Or White could “clamp” by 5 f4 c5 6 Nf3 Nc6 7 0–0, but then 7 ... f6 8 exf6 Nxf6 equalizes.

5 ... c5  
6 c3 Qb6

With counterplay. *ECO* gives 7 Nf3 Nc6 8 0–0 Be7 = intending ... 0–0 and ... f6. If 7 f4 Nc6 8 Nf3, 8 ... f6! discourages castling (9 0–0 cxd4 10 cxd4 fxe5 11 fxe5 Ndx5!) and makes it awkward for White to develop — compare the 3 ... Nf6 4 e5 Nfd7 5 f4 Tarrasch of Chapter 5.

## 12.3

2 b3

Here White’s idea is to control the central dark squares, at least a more challenging strategy than 2 e5 or 2 g3. But b3 and e4 are not complementary moves, and Black can easily claim his share of the play.

2 ... b6

A simpler solution than 2 ... d5 3 Bb2 dxe4 4 Nc3. White will have problems deciding how to defend e4, since d3 weakens the dark squares and Nc3 blocks off the b2 bishop. Similar is 2 ... c5 (a 2 b3 Sicilian) and now 3 Bb2 b6

(or 3 ... d5 =) 4 Nf3 Bb7 5 Nc3 transposing to the text, or 3 Nf3 b6 4 d4 cxd4 5 Nxd4 Bb7 6 Bd3 Nf6! intending 7 e5 Nd5 with ... d6 to come or 7 Qe2 Bc5! 8 c3 0–0 9 e5 Ne8! etc.

3 Bb2 Bb7  
4 Nc3 c5

Or 4 ... d5 =, but this is more interesting.

5 Nf3 Nc6  
6 d4 cxd4  
7 Nxd4 Nxd4  
8 Qxd4 Nf6

With equality, at least, since ... Bc5 puts White’s position under pressure. Bury–Watson, Leominster 1977, continued 9 f3 Bc5 10 Qd2 0–0 11 Na4 Be7 12 0–0–0? (But Black is better) 12 ... Nxe4! ♣ (13 fxe4? Bg5).

## 12.4

2 Qe2

The most popular option of this chapter apart from 2 Nf3. White discourages ... d5 directly (2 ... d5 3 exd5 Qxd5 4 Nc3), thus inducing Black to deviate (at least temporarily) from his favourite structure. Aside from this, however, 2 Qe2 has little to recommend it, as the queen is committed early and White’s

development is restricted by her placement.

2 ... c5  
3 g3

The most common. Others:

(a) 3 d3 Nc6 4 c3 Nf6 5 g3 d5 6 Nd2 Be7 7 f4!? (7 Bg2 =) 7 ... 0–0 8 Bg2 b5! 9 Ngf3 c4! 10 e5 (10 d4 dxe4 ♣) 10 ... cxd3 11 Qxd3 Nd7 12 Nb3 (12 Qxb5? Nc5!! intending ... Ba6) 12 ... b4 13 Nbd4 Na5! 14 0–0 bxc3 15 b3?! (15 Qxc3 Ba6 16 Rd1 Nc5 ♣) 15 ... Nc5 16 Qc2? (16 Qxc3 Ba6 ♣) 16 ... Ne4 17 Ng5 Nxe5 18 fxe5 Ba6 19 Rf4 Rc8 ♣♣ Bellon–Uhlmann, Madrid 1973.

(b) 3 Nf3 Nc6 4 g3 will transpose, and here 3 ... b6!? is also possible, e.g. 4 b3 Bb7 5 Bb2 Nf6 6 d3 d5 7 Nbd2 Be7 8 g3 Nc6 9 0–0–0 (9 exd5 Qxd5!; 9 Bg2 dxe4 10 dxe4 Nb4) 9 ... 0–0 10 e5 ½–½ Hoffman–Watson, New York 1979 (10 ... Nd7 11 h4 b5!).

(c) 3 b3 b6!? (Of course 3 ... Nc6 4 Bb2 Nf6 is fine, too) 4 Bb2 Bb7 5 f4 (5 Nf3 is (b)) 5 ... Nf6 6 Nc3 d5 7 e5 (7 exd5 Nxd5 8 Nxd5 Qxd5 9 Nf3 Nc6 10 0–0–0 0–0–0!) 7 ... d4! 8 exf6 dxc3 9 Bxc3 (9 gxf7 Bxg7 10 Bxc3 Bxc3 11 dxc3 Qf6 12 Qe3 Nc6 13 Nf3 Nb4!) 9 ... gxf6 10 Nf3 Nc6 11 0–0–0 Rg8 (=, intending ... Qc7 and

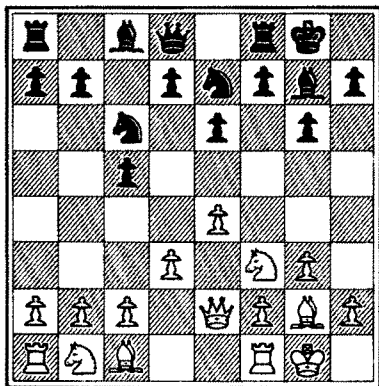
... 0–0–0) 12 d4 cxd4 13 Nxd4 Nxd4 14 Rxd4 Qc7 15 Rc4 Ba3+ 16 Kb1 Qe7.

(d) 3 f4!? is a rather absurd form of Sicilian, i.e. 1 e4 c5 2 f4 e6 3 Qe2!?. Naturally this is not too fearsome, and a simple solution is 3 ... Nc6 (3 ... b6!?!; 3 ... g6) 4 Nf3 Nge7 5 g3 d5 (or 5 ... g6 =, intending the typical ... Bg7, ... d6, ... b6 pawn structure, against which White’s queen is not so well placed) 6 d3 g6 7 Bg2 Bg7 8 0–0 b6 (or 8 ... 0–0 with the idea ... Rb8 and ... b5) 9 Nc3 0–0 10 Bd2 Nd4 (or 10 ... Ba6 11 e5 Nf5) 11 Nxd4 cxd4 = Solmanis–Chistiakov, USSR 1949.

3 ... Nc6  
4 Nf3

4 Bg2 can transpose after 4 ... Nge7 5 Nf3, since 5 Nc3 g6 6 d3 Bg7 is a good Closed Sicilian (e.g. 7 Be3? d5! 8 exd5 Nd4 9 Qd2 exd5 ♣ Stolz–Botvinnik, Groningen 1946). But also of interest is 4 Bg2 Nf6 5 c3?! d5 6 d3 (6 exd5 Nxd5 ♣ Pytel) 6 ... dxe4 7 dxe4 Ne5! 8 Na3 (8 Bf1 c4) 8 ... Nd3+ 9 Kf1 Nxc1 10 Rxc1 Be7 11 Nf3 0–0 ♣ Filipowicz–Pytel, Polish Ch 1972.

4 ... g6  
5 Bg2 Bg7  
6 0–0 Nge7  
7 d3 0–0



### 8 Nbd2

8 c3 b6!? (8 ... d5!? Kura-jica) 9 h4!? h6 10 Nbd2 Bb7 11 Re1 d6 is very comfortable for Black, e.g. 12 Nh2?! b5! 13 Ndf3 Kh7 14 Be3 b4 ♣ Smyslov–Kurajica, Bar 1980.

8 ... d6  
9 Re1!?

9 a4 h6 10 Nc4 d5 = (ECO); compare the text. Or here 9 ... Rb8 10 Nc4 b6 11 c3 e5 12 Nh4 Ozsvath–Prandstetter, Tbilisi 1972, and now 12 ... d5 =.

9 ... e5  
10 c3 h6  
11 a4 Be6

Van der Weide–Watson, London 1979. Black has potential breaks on both wings (... f5 and ... b5) and already stands

better. The game went 12 Nc4 Qd7 13 Nfd2 Rae8 14 Nf1 f5 with pressure.

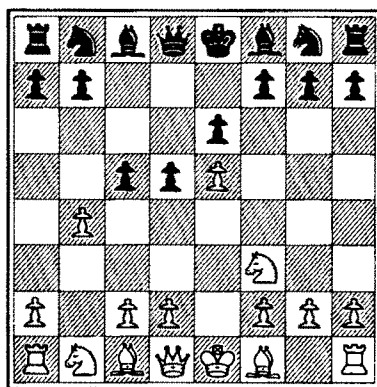
## 12.5

### 2 Nf3

Coupled with 3 Nc3, this is a meaningful attempt to influence the central situation without creating targets. 2 Nf3 has gone through waves of popularity, but at the moment it is not highly regarded.

2 ... d5  
3 Nc3

Mention should be made of the “French Wing Gambit” (so called by Dorsch), 3 e5 c5 4 b4!?



After 4 ... cxb4 5 d4 (to avoid the complications of 5 a3 d4!?, although Black can also simply transpose with 5 ... Nc6 or 5 ... bxa3; analogous to what follows would be 5 ... Nc6 6 axb4 Bxb4 7 c3 Ba5!? 8 d4 f6) 5 ... Nc6 6 a3, simple capture by 6 ... bxa3 is certainly not bad, e.g. 7 Bxa3 Nge7 8 Bd3 Bd7 9 0–0 Nc8! 10 Bxf8 Kxf8 and ... Nb6, ... Rc8 etc. follows. Another idea is 6 ... f6, e.g. 7 axb4 Bxb4+ 8 c3 Ba5!? and now White can either give up the centre by 9 exf6 Nxf6 10 Ba3 Bc7(!), or try to maintain it by 9 Ba3 fxe5 10 fxe5 Nh6!? (or 10 ... Nge7) 11 Bb5 Nf7 12 0–0 Bd7 13 Qe2 Qc7 14 Re1 0–0–0!, but in either case Black’s position is fundamentally sound.

3 ... Nf6

3 ... d4 is also okay, but this is more double-edged.

4 e5 Nfd7  
5 d4 c5  
6 dxc5

Not 6 Nb5?! Nc6 7 c3 a6 ♣ Shirazi–Watson, New York 1980, but 6 Bb5!? is a logical alternative: 6 ... Nc6 (6 ... a6!? 7 Bxd7+ Bxd7?! — 7 ... Nxd7 — 8 Be3! ±) 7 0–0 Be7 (Or 7 ... Qb6!?, but 7 ... a6?! 8 Bxc6 bxc6 has landed Black in

trouble after both 9 Na4 Qc7 10 c3 ± and 9 Re1 Be7 10 dxc5! Nxc5 11 Nd4 Bb7 12 Qg4 ± Dorfman–Kuindzi, USSR 1978) 8 dxc5 (What else? 8 Re1 0–0 9 Nd2 Qb6 10 Ba4 cxd4 11 Nxd4 Nc5 Gurgenedze–Henley, Goglidze 1983) 8 ... 0–0 9 Bf4 Nxc5 = Ubilava–Furman, USSR 1971. White’s pieces are not really doing much, and the sequence 10 Bxc6 bxc6 11 Nd4 Qb6 12 Qg4 Kh8 or here 12 Rb1 a5 does not make progress due to Black’s strong centre.

6 ... Nc6

To sidestep 6 ... Bxc5 7 Bd3 Nc6 8 Qe2. The alternative is 6 ... Nxc5, but it does not hurt to delay this until move seven.

7 Bf4 Bxc5

The dynamic choice. 7 ... Nxc5 has also done reasonably well, e.g. 8 a3!? f5 9 exf6 Qxf6 10 Bg3 (10 Qd2 Ne4!) 10 ... a6 11 Bd3 Nxd3+ = Ostojic–Pytel, Bucharest 1972/3. Or 8 Bb5!? Be7 9 Nd4 Bd7 10 Bxc6 bxc6 11 Qg4 g5! 12 Bd2 Rb8 13 0–0!? Rb4 ♣ Sollid–McCambridge, Gausdal 1981. Or 8 Bd3 Be7 9 0–0 0–0 10 Re1 f6 (10 ... Bd7!? intending ... Rc8) 11 exf6 Bxf6, about equal, Kopylov–Doroskevich, USSR 1963.

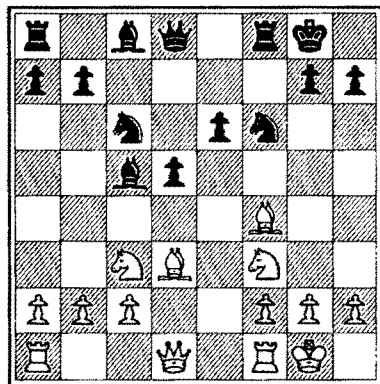
8 Bd3 f6!

Liquidating White's last centre pawn. Sznapiak-Pytel, Lublin 1973, went 8 ... f5!? 9 0-0 0-0 10 Re1(?) Be7! (intending ... g5-g4) 11 Qd2 Nc5 12 Ne2 Ne4 ♣, but since White had 9 exf6 the whole idea is unnecessary.

9 exf6

Forced, in view of 9 Bb5 fxe5 10 Nxe5 0-0! or 9 Qe2 fxe5 10 Nxe5 Ndx5 11 Bxe5 0-0 etc.

9 ... Nxf6!  
10 0-0 0-0



At first glance White might seem to be ahead in development and in control of e5, thus restraining Black's e-pawn. In fact, due to the f-file, White's exposed bishop on f4, and the lack of White centre pawns, Black is at least equal with many nice tactical possibilities.

11 Ne5!?

By far the most common move, but its recent results have been pretty bad. What else? Since 11 Bg3 Nh5 fails to solve the problem of his bishop, these are the main alternatives:

(a) 11 Qe2?! Nh5 12 Bg5 Nf4! 13 Qd2 Qc7 14 Nb5 Qb8 15 c4 Nxd3 16 Qxd3 Ne5 17 Nxe5 Qxe5 18 Bh4 a6! 19 Nc3 (15 Bg3 Qxb2 ♣) 19 ... Qf4 ♣ Larsen-Spassky, Stockholm 1969.

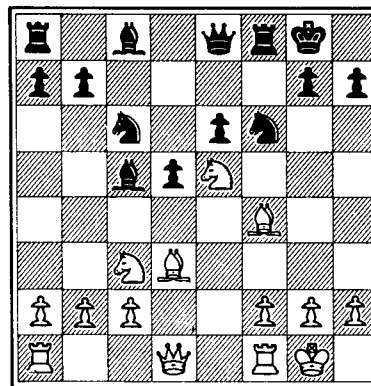
(b) 11 Qd2!? would attempt to improve upon Larsen's strategy, since now 11 ... Nh5 12 Bg5 Qd6!? 13 Nb5 Qb8 14 c4 would be unclear. But here 12 ... Be7 13 Bxe7 Qxe7 is safely equal, planning ... Nf4. A more ambitious approach would be 11 ... a6, e.g. 12 Rae1 Nh5 13 Bg5 Qd6 with good play. Finally, for the true believer, there is 11 ... Ng4!? (threatening ... e5), e.g. 12 h3 Nxf2 13 Rxf2 Bxf2+ 14 Kxf2 e5 15 Bg5 Qb6+ 16 Kg3 Be6 with great complications.

(c) 11 Ne2!? also protects f4, but 11 ... Nh5!, as given by *ECO* is clearly okay (12 Bg5 Qd6), and Barden's 11 ... Qe7 12 Ne5 Nxe5 13 Bxe5 Ng4 14 Bg3 e5 is also good; after 15 h3, there is 15 ... Nf6 =, 15 ... Nh6!?, or possibly 15 ... e4!? 16 hxg4 Bxg4!? 17 Bb5 Qg5!

with an unclear attack for a piece, e.g. 18 Qc1 (... a6 and ... Bxe2 followed by ... Qxg3 was the threat) 18 ... e3 19 f3 Be6 with the idea ... h5-h4.

11 ... Bd7

This has had great success thus far, but another move worth considering is 11 ... Qe8(!)



Black threatens 12 ... Nh5, which is difficult to prevent (12 Be2 Nd4 or even 12 ... Ng4!?), so counterattack by 12 Nb5 is indicated. But then Black has three good replies. In Dunne-Thibault, Burlington 1976, 12 ... Qh5 succeeded after 13 Nc7 Rb8 14 Nxd5? exd5 15 Be2 (15 Nxc6 Bg4!; 15 Qxh5 Nxh5 16 Nxc6 Nxf4 17 Nxb8 Nxd3 18 cxd3 Bf5 ♣ Thibault) 15 ... Qf5 16 Nxc6 Qxf4 17 Nxb8 Qxb8 18

Bf3 Qe5 19 Re1 Ne4 ♣♣. Better was 14 Nxc6 bxc6 15 Nxd5! Qxd1 16 Raxd1 Rxb2 (Thibault); this is equal.

He also gives 12 ... Bb6!? and now 13 Nd6 Qh5 14 Be2 Qh4 15 g3 Qh3 16 Nxc8 Nxe5 17 Ne7+ Kf7 18 Bxe5 Kxe7 unclear.

A third candidate is just 12 ... Qe7(!), now that the knight is off centre on b5, e.g. 13 Nxc6 bxc6 14 Nc7 e5! ♣ or 13 Re1 a6 14 Nxc6 bxc6 15 Nc3 (15 Nc7? Ra7) 15 ... e5! 16 Rxe5 Qa7 etc. Best play is 13 c3! Bd7, e.g. 14 Bg3!? (14 b4 Nxe5 15 Bxe5 Bxb5 16 Bxb5 Bb6 unclear) 14 ... Nxe5 15 Bxe5 Bxb5 16 Bxb5 Ne4 17 Bd4 e5 18 Be3 Rad8 19 Qd3! with obscure equality, Paolozzi-Watson, Los Angeles 1983.

12 Nxc6!?

12 Qe2 is more solid, e.g. 12 ... Qe7 13 Rae1 Rae8 14 a3 a6 15 Kh1 Bd4! 16 Nxd7 Qxd7 17 Bd2 e5 18 f3 Kh8 19 Nd1 1/2-1/2 Ljubojevic-Petrosian, Las Palmas 1973.

12 ... Bxc6  
13 Qe2

13 Be5?! Qb6 14 Qe2 Rae8 ♣ intending ... h6 and ... Nd7 (Suba). After 13 Qe2, there are three examples:

(a) 13 ... Qe7 14 Rae1 Rae8

15 Bg3 a6 16 a3 Qf7 17 b4 Bd4 18 Be5 (18 Nd1 e5! 19 c3 Ba7  $\bar{f}$ ) 18 ... Bxe5 19 Qxe5 Nd7 20 Qg3 e5 = Spassky–Petrosian, match 1966.

(b) 13 ... Ne4 14 Be3?! (14 Bg3 Nxf3 15 Qxe6+ Kh8 16 hxg3 Rf6 17 Qh3 Qg8 intending ... Raf8 with attack — Speelman) 14 ... Bxe3 15 Qxe3? (15 fxe3  $\bar{f}$  Vogt) 15 ... d4 16 Qe2 dxc3 17 Bxe4 cxb2 18 Rab1 Qf6 19 c4 Rab8  $\bar{f}$  Bellon–Speelman, Amsterdam 1978.

(c) 13 ... Ne4 14 g3! Nxf2 15 Rxf2 Bxf2+ 16 Kxf2 Qb6+ (16 ... g5!? 17 Qxe6+ Kh8? 18 Qh6!  $\pm$ ; 17 ... Kg7 unclear — Vogt) 17 Kg2 (17 Qe3? g5) 17 ... e5 (17 ... Qxb2 18 Qe1

Vogt) 18 Qh5?? (White could still hold the balance by 18 Qxe5! d4+ 19 Nd5! Rae8 20 Qh5 g6 21 Bxg6 with a perpetual) 18 ... h6 19 Bxe5 Qe3! 20 Qg6 Rf2+ 0–1 Vogt–Farago, Kecskemet 1979.

So neither the main line with 11 ... Bd7 nor that with 11 ... Qe8 gives White any advantage. Black's various wins with this line are ample proof that he can have complications when he wants them, with White struggling to keep a tactical balance intact.

We may confidently conclude that only 2 d4 poses a genuine challenge to the French Defence.

## Bibliography

Numerous books were consulted in the compilation of this project. The following are those most frequently referred to in the text:

Bickford, J. and Salome, E. *The Advance Variation of the French Defence*.

Gligoric, S. *The French Defence* (R.H.M., 1975).

Harding, T. *French: MacCutcheon and Advance Lines* (B.T. Batsford, 1979).

Keene, R. and Taulbut, S. *French Defence: Tarrasch Variation* (B.T. Batsford, 1980).

Keres, P. *Spanisch bis Französisch* (Sportverlag, 1977).

Matanovic, A. *Encyclopaedia of Chess Openings C* ("ECO") (Chess Informant, 1974, 1981).

Moles, J. *The French Defence Main Line Winawer* (B.T. Batsford, 1975).

Moles, J. and Wicker, K. *French Defence: Modern and Auxiliary Lines* (B.T. Batsford, 1979).

Richmond, P.A. *French Defence: Tarrasch Variation* (The Chess Player Ltd., 1980).

Slotnik, B. *Französische Verteidigung* (Schaachverlag Rudi Schmaus, 1982).

Weinstein, N. *The King's Indian Attack* (Chess Digest, 1976).

Winters, J. *The French Defence Tarrasch Variation*.

Among periodicals, by far the most useful were:

*Safarovski Informator* (Chess Informant, Belgrade), Vols. 1–34.

*The Players Chess News* (Players Chess Association, Los Angeles), Vols. 1–4.

*Tournament Chess* (Pergamon Press, Oxford), Vols. 1–8.

## Index of Variations\*

Chapter 1: 1 <i>e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 c5</i>	4.231 13 ... 0-0
1.1 4 dxc5	4.232 13 ... Qxb2
1.2 4 Qg4	4.24 12 Bd2
1.3 4 Nf3	4.25 12 b3
1.4 4 c3 Nc6 5 Nf3	4.26 12 Nf4
1.41 5 ... Bd7	4.27 12 Nc3 0-0 13 Be3 Bd7
1.411 6 dxc5	4.271 14 Re1
1.412 6 a3	4.272 14 Rc1
1.413 6 Be2	4.273 14 a3
1.42 5 ... Qb6	Chapter 5: 1 <i>e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nd2 Nf6 4 e5 Nfd7 5 f4 c5 6 c3 Nc6 7 Ndf3 Qb6</i>
1.421 6 Bd3	5.1 8 Ne2
1.422 6 a3 c4	5.2 8 g3
1.4221 7 Nbd2	5.21 8 ... f5
1.4222 7 g3	5.22 8 ... f6
1.423 6 Be2	5.23 8 ... Be7
Chapter 2: 1 <i>e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5</i> (and 3 Others) 3 ... <i>exd5</i>	Chapter 6: 1 <i>e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nd2 c5 4 exd5 Qxd5 5 Ngf3 cxd4 6 Bc4 Qd6 7 0-0 Nf6 8 Nb3 Nc6 9 Nbx4 Nxd4 10 Nxd4</i>
2.1 4 Nf3	6.1 10 ... Bd7
2.2 4 Bd3	6.2 10 ... a6
Chapter 3: 1 <i>e4 e6 2 d3</i>	6.21 11 b3
3.1 2 ... c5 3 Nf3 Nc6 4 g3 g6 5 Bg2 Bg7 6 0-0 Nge7	6.22 11 Bb3
3.11 7 Re1	6.23 11 Re1
3.12 7 c3	Chapter 7: 1 <i>e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bb4 7.1 4 a3 Bxc3+ 5 bxc3 dxe4 6 Qg4 Nf6 7 Qxg7 Rg8 8 Qh6 7.11 8 ... Nbd7 7.12 8 ... c5 7.2 4 Qg4 7.3 4 Bd2 dxe4 5 Qg4 Nf6 6 Qxg7 Rg8 7 Qh6 7.31 7 ... Rg6 7.32 7 ... Qxd4 7.4 4 Ne2 dxe4 5 a3 7.41 5 ... Bxc3+</i>
3.2 2 ... d5 3 Nd2 c5 4 Ngf3 Nc6 5 g3 Bd6 6 Bg2 Nge7 7 0-0 0-0	
3.21 8 Re1	
3.22 8 Nh4	
Chapter 4: 1 <i>e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nd2 Nf6 4 e5 Nfd7 5 Bd3 c5 6 c3 Nc6</i>	
4.1 7 Ngf3	
4.2 Ne2 Qb6 8 Nf3 cxd4 9 cxd4 f6 10 exf6 Nxf6 11 0-0 Bd6	
4.21 12 a3	
4.22 12 Re1	
4.23 12 Bf4 Bxf4 13 Nxf4	

\* Alternatives not listed here may be found in notes to the main moves.

7.42 5 ... Be7	9.21 13 Rb1
7.5 4 Bd3	9.22 13 Nxc3
7.51 4 ... c5	9.23 13 Ng3
7.52 4 ... dxe4 5 Bxe4	9.24 13 Qxc3
7.521 5 ... Nf6	9.25 13 h3
7.522 5 ... c5	9.26 13 h4
7.6 4 exd5 exd5	Chapter 10: 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bb4 4
7.61 5 Qf3	e5 c5 5 a3 Bxc3+ 6 bxc3 Ne7
7.62 5 Bd3	10.1 7 Nf3 Bd7
Chapter 8: 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bb4 4	10.11 8 dxc5
e5 c5	10.12 8 h4
8.1 5 Bd2 Ne7	10.13 8 a4 Qa5
8.11 6 a3	10.131 9 Qd2
8.12 6 Nb5 Bxd2+ 7 Qxd2 0-0	10.132 9 Bd2
8.121 8 c3	10.2 7 a4
8.122 8 f4	Chapter 11: 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bb4 4
8.123 8 dxc5	e5 Qd7
8.124 8 Nf3	11.1 5 a3 Bxc3+ 6 bxc3 b6
8.2 5 dxc5	11.11 7 Qg4
8.21 5 ... Nc6	11.12 7 Nh3
8.22 5 ... Ne7	11.13 7 a4
8.3 5 Qg4 Ne7	11.2 5 Qg4
8.31 6 dxc5	11.3 5 Bd2
8.32 6 Nf3	11.4 5 Ne2
Chapter 9: 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bb4 4	Chapter 12: 1 e4 e6
e5 c5 5 a3 Bxc3+ 6 bxc3 Ne7 7 Qg4 Qc7	12.1 2 e5
8 Qxg7 Rg8 9 Qxh7 cxd4	12.2 2 g3
9.1 10 Kd1	12.3 2 b3
9.2 10 Ne2 Nbc6 11 f4 Bd7 12 Qd3	12.4 2 Qe2
dx3	12.5 2 Nf3